

THIRD EDITION

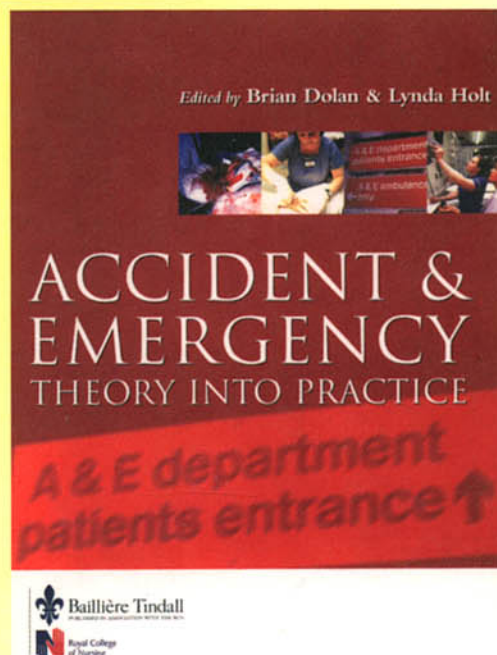
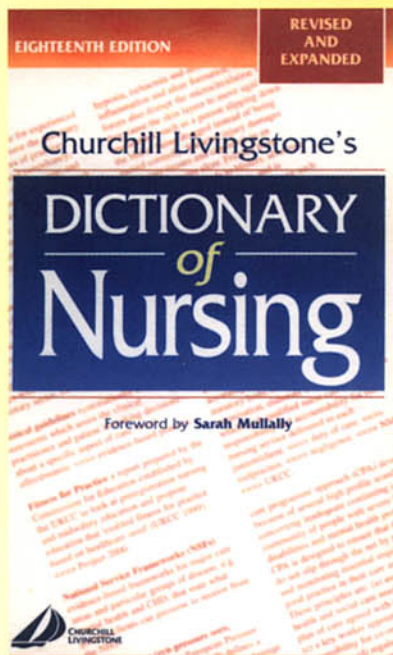
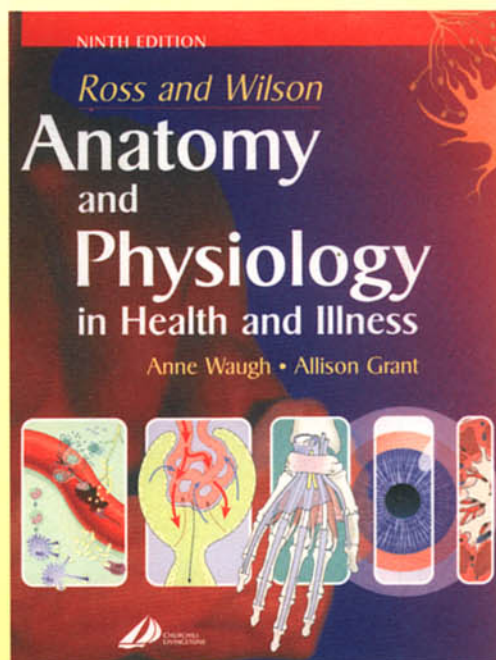
AN INTRODUCTION TO

MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY FOR HEALTH CARE

A SELF-TEACHING PACKAGE

Andrew R. Hutton

Also available...



You can order these, or any other Elsevier Science title (Churchill Livingstone, W.B. Saunders, Mosby, Baillière Tindall, Butterworth-Heinemann), from your local bookshop, or, in case of difficulty, direct from us on:

EUROPE, MIDDLE EAST & AFRICA
Tel: +44 (0) 20 8308 5710
www.elsevierhealth.com

AUSTRALIA
Tel: +61 (0) 2 9517 8999
Email: service@harcourt.com.au

CANADA
Tel: +1 800 387 7278
Email: cs_canada@harcourt.com

USA
Tel: +1 800 545 2522
www.wbsaunders.com

ELSEVIER
SCIENCE



An Introduction to Medical Terminology for Health Care

A SELF-TEACHING PACKAGE

For Churchill Livingstone:

Senior Commissioning Editor: Sarena Wolfaard

Project Development Manager: Derek Robertson

Project Manager: Andrea Hill

Design Direction: Judith Wright

An Introduction to Medical Terminology for Health Care

A SELF-TEACHING PACKAGE

Andrew R. Hutton

BSc MSc
Lecturer in Life Science
Edinburgh's Telford College, Edinburgh, UK

THIRD EDITION



The right of Andrew R. Hutton to be identified as the author of this work has been asserted by him in accordance with the Copyright, designs and Patents Act 1988

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without either the prior permission of the publishers or a licence permitting restricted copying in the United Kingdom issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency, 90 Tottenham Court Road, London W1T 4LP. Permissions may be sought directly from Elsevier's Health Sciences Rights Department in Philadelphia, USA: phone: (+1) 215 238 7869, fax: (+1) 215 238 2239, e-mail: healthpermissions@elsevier.com. You may also complete your request on-line via the Elsevier Science homepage (<http://www.elsevier.com>), by selecting 'Customer Support' and then 'Obtaining Permissions'.

First edition 1993

Second edition 1998

Third edition 2002

Reprinted 2002 (twice), 2003, 2004

ISBN 0 443 07079 2

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress

Note

Medical knowledge is constantly changing. As new information becomes available, changes in treatment, procedures, equipment and the use of drugs become necessary. The author and the publishers have taken care to ensure that the information given in this text is accurate and up to date. However, readers are strongly advised to confirm that the information, especially with regard to drug usage, complies with the latest legislation and standards of practice.

ELSEVIER your source for books,
journals and multimedia
in the health sciences
www.elsevierhealth.com

The
publisher's
policy is to use
paper manufactured
from sustainable forests

Contents

Introduction *I*

UNIT 1	Levels of organization	5
UNIT 2	The digestive system	13
UNIT 3	The breathing system	27
UNIT 4	The cardiovascular system	41
UNIT 5	The blood	55
UNIT 6	The lymphatic system and immunology	65
UNIT 7	The urinary system	75
UNIT 8	The nervous system	89
UNIT 9	The eye	107
UNIT 10	The ear	123
UNIT 11	The skin	135
UNIT 12	The nose and mouth	147
UNIT 13	The muscular system	161
UNIT 14	The skeletal system	169
UNIT 15	The male reproductive system	181
UNIT 16	The female reproductive system	193
UNIT 17	The endocrine system	213
UNIT 18	Radiology and nuclear medicine	225
UNIT 19	Oncology	235
UNIT 20	Anatomical position	243
UNIT 21	Pharmacology and microbiology	257

Abbreviations 307

Glossary 319

About this book

This book is designed to introduce medical terms to students who have little prior knowledge of the language of medicine. Included in the text are simple, nontechnical descriptions of pathological conditions, medical instruments and clinical procedures.

The medical terms are introduced within the context of a body system or medical specialty and each set of exercises provides the student with the opportunity to learn, review and assess new words. Each unit includes a case history exercise that outlines the presentation, diagnosis and treatment of a specific medical condition. Once complete, the exercises will form a valuable reference text.

No previous knowledge of medicine is required to follow the text and, to ensure ease of use, the more complex details of word origins and analysis have been omitted. The book will be of great value to anyone who needs to learn medical terms quickly and efficiently.

Edinburgh 2002

Andrew Hutton

Acknowledgements

We are grateful to Aesculap Ltd incorporating Downs Surgical for permission to reproduce Figures 17, 18, 56 and 57. Figure 23 was redrawn from a catalogue supplied by A.C. Cossor & Son (Surgical) Ltd.

How to use this book

Before you begin working through the units, read through the introduction which explains the basic principles of reading, writing and understanding medical terms.

Once you have understood the elementary rules of medical word building, complete Units 1–21, which are based on different medical topics. The units can be studied in sequence or independently.

For ease of use each unit has the same basic plan and is arranged into:



WORD EXERCISES



AN ANATOMY EXERCISE



A CASE HISTORY



A WORD CHECK



A SELF-ASSESSMENT

The different parts of each unit are indicated by icons.



The word exercise icon indicates a written exercise that can be completed using the Exercise Guide at the beginning of each unit or knowledge acquired during this course of study. The answers to the word exercises are on p. 275.



The anatomy exercise icon indicates you should complete the anatomy exercise relating to a body system. In this exercise you relate combining forms of medical roots to their position in the body. Check the meanings of the root words using the Quick Reference box.



The case history icon indicates an account of a medical case history. The purpose of this exercise is to understand the medical terms associated with disease presentation, investigation and treatment. Some of the case histories may seem difficult to follow because of the terminology used when doctors write formal reports. To assist your understanding, a Word Help box is included with each case listing the meanings of difficult or unfamiliar words. In each case history, try to gain an overall picture of the health care required for successful treatment of the patient.

Answers to the exercise that accompanies each case can be found with the answers to the word exercises on p. 275.



The word check icon indicates you should complete the Word Check that lists all prefixes, combining forms and suffixes used in a unit. Try to do this from memory and then correct any errors you have made. Errors can be corrected using the Exercise Guide or the Quick Reference box that follows each Case History. The glossary on p. 319 can also be used.



The self-assessment icon indicates a series of self-assessment tests. Aim to complete the tests using knowledge gained from studying each unit and record your score in the boxes provided with each test. Check your answers on p. 299.

Introduction

Objectives

Once the introduction is complete you should be able to:

- name and identify components of medical words
- split medical words into their components
- build medical words using word components.

Students beginning any kind of medical or paramedical course are faced with a bewildering number of complex medical terms. Surprisingly it is possible to understand many medical terms and build new ones by learning relatively few words that can be combined in a variety of ways. Even the longest medical terms are easy to understand if you know the meaning of each component of the word. For example, you may never have heard of **laryngopharyngitis** but if you learn that **-itis** always means inflammation, **laryng/o** refers to the larynx or voice box and **pharyng/o** refers to the throat or pharynx, its meaning becomes apparent, i.e. inflammation of the pharynx and larynx. Laryngopharyngitis is an inflammation of the upper respiratory tract with symptoms of sore throat and loss of voice.

Most doctors, however, do not use precise medical terminology when conversing with patients. If patients hear a complex medical description of their illness, they may become frightened rather than reassured. Precise medical terms are used when medical records and letters are completed. They are also used when doctors discuss a patient and when medical material is published.

The terms you will use in this book describe common diseases and disorders, instruments, diagnostic techniques and therapies.

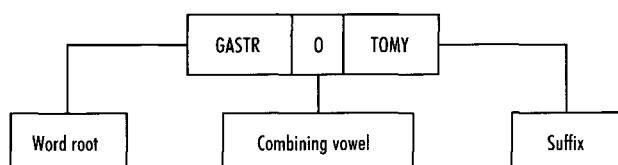
The components of medical words

In this introduction you will learn how to split medical terms into their components and deduce their meanings. Skills developed here will enable you to derive the meanings of unfamiliar medical words and improve your ability to understand medical literature.

Let us begin by using a medical word associated with an organ with which you are familiar, the stomach:

Example 1 GASTROTOMY

First we can split the word and examine its individual components:



The word root

Roots are the basic medical words. Most are derived from Greek and Roman (Latin) words. Others have their origins in Arabic, Anglo-Saxon and German. Some early Greek words have been retained in their original form whilst others have been latinized. In their migrations throughout Europe and America many words have changed their spelling, meaning and pronunciation.

In our first example we have used the root **gastr** which always means stomach.

The combining vowel

Combining vowels are added to word roots to aid pronunciation and to connect the root to the suffix. In our first example the combining vowel **o** has been added to join the root and suffix. All the combining vowels a, e, i, o and u are used but the most commonly used is o.

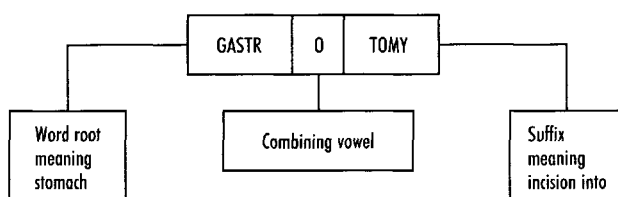
In our first example we have added the combining vowel **o** to the root **gastr**.

The suffix

The suffix follows the word root and is found at the end of the word. It also adds to or modifies the meaning of the word root.

In our first example we have used the suffix **-tomy** which always means to form an incision.

We can now fully understand the meaning of our first medical word:



The meaning of gastrotomy is – incision into the stomach. Gastrotomy is a name used by surgeons to describe an operation in which a cut is made into the wall of the stomach.

The combining form

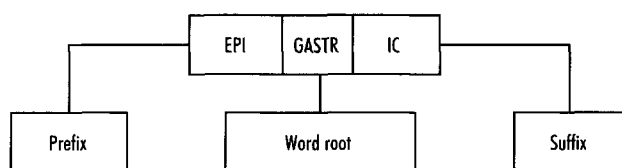
In our first example the root **gastr** can be combined with the vowel **o** to make **gastro**. This word component is called a **combining form** of a word root, i.e.

Word root + combining vowel = combining form
 gastr + o = gastro

Most combining forms end in o and we will be using many of them in the exercises that follow.

Now we have learnt the meaning of our first root we can use it again with a new word component:

Example 2 EPIGASTRIC

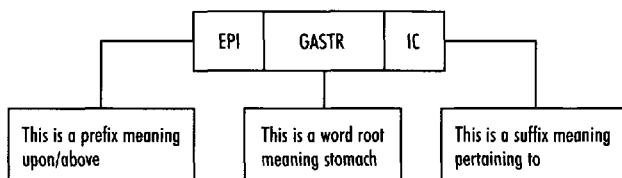


Here we have split the word into its components and we can see it begins with a prefix that appears before the root **gastr**.

The prefix

The prefix precedes the word root and changes its meaning. The prefix **epi-** means upon and so it modifies the word to mean upon or above the stomach. Prefixes, like roots and suffixes, are also derived from Greek and Latin words.

The suffix **-ic** meaning pertaining to was also used in our second example so we can now write the full meaning of epigastric:



The full meaning of epigastric is – pertaining to above or upon the stomach.

Key Point

The components of medical words are:

- prefixes
- roots
- suffixes
- combining vowels
- combining forms.

The use of prefixes, combining forms and suffixes

There are certain simple 'rules' which need to be applied when building and analysing medical words. To practise using these rules, some new combining forms are introduced. Don't worry about their meanings at the moment, we will study them in a later unit.

Rule 1: Joining a combining form to a suffix

If we add the suffixes **-logy**, meaning study of, and **-algia**, meaning condition of pain, to the combining form **gastr/o** we can make two new words:

gastr/o + -logy = gastrology (study of the stomach)
 gastr/o + -algia = gastralgia (condition of pain in the stomach)

Notice that in gastrology the combining vowel o has been left in place whilst in gastralgia it has been dropped. The o has been dropped in gastralgia because -algia begins with a, a vowel. Gastroalgia is not used and it would be more difficult to pronounce.

Key Point

When a combining form of a root is joined to a suffix, the combining vowel is left in place if the suffix begins with a letter other than a vowel.

Here are some more examples where the vowel is left in place because the suffix begins with a letter other than a vowel:

gastr/o + -tomy = gastrotomy (incision into the stomach)
 gastr/o + -scope = gastroscope (instrument to view the stomach)

Here are some examples where the vowel is dropped:

gastr/o + -itis = gastritis (inflammation of the stomach)
 gastr/o + -ectomy = gastrectomy (removal of the stomach)



WORD EXERCISE 1

Use Rule 1 to join the combining forms of word roots and suffixes to make medical words. The meanings of the words will be studied in following units. The first has been completed for you.

Combining form of word root		Suffix		Medical word
(a) gastr/o	+	-pathy	=	gastropathy
(b) gastr/o	+	-scopy	=	_____
(c) hepat/o	+	-itis	=	_____
(d) hepat/o	+	-megaly	=	_____
(e) hepat/o	+	-oma	=	_____

Rule 2: Joining the combining forms of two word roots

Some medical words contain two or more combining forms of roots, as in Example 3.



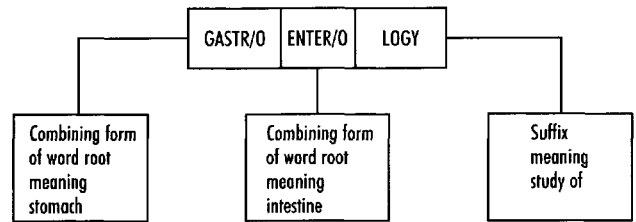
WORD EXERCISE 2

Use Rules 1 and 2 to join the combining forms of two roots with suffixes to make medical words. The meanings of the words will be studied in following units. The first has been completed for you.

Combining form of word root		Combining form of word root		Suffix		Medical word
(a) duoden/o	+	jejun/o	+	-stomy	=	duodenojejunoscopy
(b) trache/o	+	bronch/o	+	-itis	=	_____
(c) gastr/o	+	enter/o	+	-stomy	=	_____
(d) laryng/o	+	pharyng/o	+	-ectomy	=	_____
(e) oste/o	+	arthr/o	+	-pathy	=	_____

Note. There are a few exceptions to this rule which are hyphenated e.g. pharyngo-oral.

Example 3 GASTROENTEROLOGY



The full meaning of gastroenterology is the study of the intestines and stomach. Notice that the vowel between the two roots **gastr** and **enter** is left in place.

Key Point

When the combining forms of two roots are joined, the combining vowel of the first root is kept in place.

Here are some more examples:

pylor/o + gastr/o + ectomy = pylorogastrectomy
 duoden/o + enter/o + stomy = duodenoenterostomy

Rule 3: Joining a prefix to a root

When a prefix that ends in a vowel is added to a root that begins with a vowel or 'h', the vowel of the prefix is dropped.

If we examine our second example, **epigastric**, again, here the vowel 'i' of **epi-** was retained because the root **gastr** begins with 'g' which is not a vowel.

Consider another example, which may be familiar to you – antacid, a drug used to neutralize stomach acid. This word is made from:

anti + acid = antacid
(prefix meaning (root meaning
against) acid)

The 'i' is dropped because acid begins with the vowel 'a'.

Here are some more examples, we will learn their meanings later.

Here the vowel of the prefix is retained:

hemi + col/o + ectomy = hemicolectomy

Here the vowel of the prefix is dropped:

endo + arter/i + ectomy = endarterectomy

anti + helminth + ic = anthelmintic

Note. This is not a strict rule and there are many exceptions to it, e.g. periosteitis.

Key Point

When a prefix that ends in a vowel is joined to a root, the vowel of the prefix is dropped if the root begins with a vowel or 'h'.



WORD EXERCISE 3

Use the rules we have just described to join prefixes, combining forms of roots and suffixes to make medical words. The meanings of the words will be studied in following units. The first has been completed for you.

Prefix	Combining form of word root	Suffix	Medical word
(a) endo-	+ odont/o	+ -ic	= endodontic
(b) prostho-	+ odont/o	+ -ist	= _____
(c) para-	+ rect/o	+ -al	= _____
(d) mono-	+ ocul/o	+ -ar	= _____
(e) peri-	+ splen/o	+ -itis	= _____

Reading and understanding medical words

Now you have learnt the basic principle of building medical words, you should be able to deduce the meaning of an unfamiliar word from the meaning of its components. To illustrate this we will use two examples.

Example 1: Gastroenterology

First

Split the word into its components gastro/entero/logy.

Then

Think of or look up the meaning of these components.

Finally

Read the meaning of the word *beginning with the suffix and reading backwards*:

e.g. gastr/o³, enter/o², -logy¹

1 study of

2 the intestines and

3 the stomach.

We read the full meaning of gastroenterology as – the study of the intestines and stomach.

Example 2: Pararectal

Here the prefix *para-* has modified the meaning of the root *rect/* to mean beside the rectum.

First

Split the word into its components para/rect/al.

Then

Think of or look up the meaning of these components.

Finally

Read the meaning of the word *beginning with the suffix followed by the meaning of the modified root*

e.g. pararect², al¹

1 pertaining to

2 beside the rectum.

We read the full meaning of pararectal as pertaining to beside the rectum.

Key Point

When deducing the meanings of compound medical words, begin with the meaning of the suffix followed by those of the root(s) and prefix (from right to left).

Once you have an understanding of these simple rules you should be able to complete the exercises in Units 1–21. Each unit introduces different medical terms associated with a body system or medical specialty. The units can be completed in an order that complements your studies in anatomy, physiology and health care.

Levels of organization

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 2 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the digestive system
- build medical words relating to the digestive system
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the digestive system.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

a-	without
endo-	inside/within
epi-	upon/above
mega-	large
para-	beside
peri-	around

Suffixes

-aemia	condition of blood
-al	pertaining to
-algia	condition of pain
-clysis	infusion/injection into
-ectomy	removal of
-emia (Am.)	condition of blood
-gram	X-ray/tracing/recording
-graphy	technique of recording/making X-ray
-ia	condition of
-iasis	abnormal condition
-ic	pertaining to
-ist	specialist
-itis	inflammation of
-lith	stone
-lithiasis	abnormal condition of stones
-logist	specialist who studies ...
-logy	study of
-lysis	breakdown/disintegration
-megaly	enlargement
-oma	tumour/swelling
-pathy	disease of
-scope	instrument to view/examine
-scopy	technique of viewing/examining
-stomy	formation of an opening into ...
-tomy	incision into
-toxic	pertaining to poisoning
-uria	condition of the urine

Levels of organization

The human body consists of basic units of life known as **cells**. Groups of cells similar in appearance, function and origin join together to form **tissues**. Different tissues then interact with each other to form **organs**. Finally groups of organs interact to form body **systems**. Thus there are four levels of organization in the human body: cells, tissues, organs and systems. Let us begin by examining the first level of organization.

Cells

The cell is the basic unit of life and the bodies of all plants and animals are built up of cells. Your body consists of millions of very small specialized cells. It is interesting to note that all non-infectious disorders and diseases of the human body are really due to the abnormal behaviour of cells.

Body cells are all built on the same basic plan. Figure 1 represents a model cell.

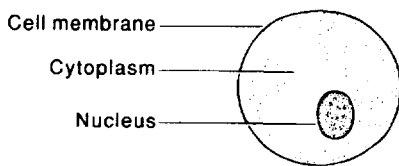


Figure 1 A cell

Most cells have the same basic components as are shown in the model but they are all specialized to carry out particular functions within the body. In your studies you will come across many terms that relate to different types of cell. Now we will examine our first word root which refers to cells:

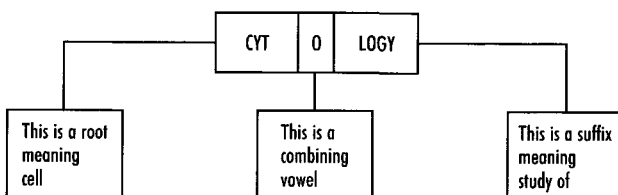
Root

Cyt

(From a Greek word **kytos**, meaning cell.)

Combining forms **Cyto.**, also used as the suffix **-cyte**
(Remember from our introduction that combining forms are made by adding a combining vowel to the word root.)

Here we have a word that contains the root cyt:



Reading from the suffix back, cytology means the study of cells.

(Remember when trying to understand medical words, first split the word into its components, then think of the meaning of each component and finally write the meaning beginning with the suffix.)

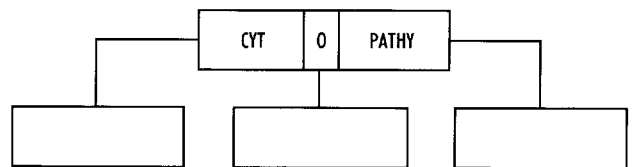
Cytology is a very important topic in medicine as many diseases and disorders can be diagnosed by studying cells. Cells removed from patients are sent for cytological examination to a hospital cytology laboratory where they are examined with a microscope. (In the word cytological, *-ical* is a compound suffix meaning pertaining to or dealing with.)

The exercises that follow rely on the use of the Exercise Guide which appears at the beginning of this unit; use the guide to look up the meaning of path/o and -pathy and then try Word Exercise 1.



WORD EXERCISE 1

- (a) Name the components of the word and give their meanings:



- (b) Reading from the suffix back, the meaning of cytopathy is:

The root **-path-** can be used at the beginning and in the middle of a compound word as in the next two examples. Write the meaning of these words:

- (c) path/o/logy
(d) cyt/o/path/o/logy

Using the Exercise Guide again find the meaning of **-ic**, **-ist**, **tox/o**, and **-lysis** and write the meaning of the words below. Remember to read the meaning from the suffix back to the beginning of each word:

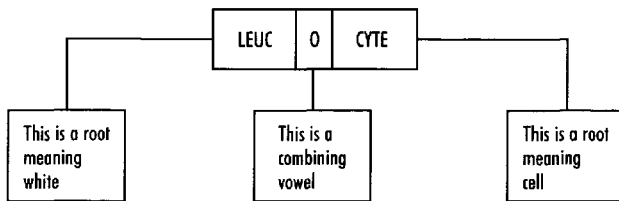
- (e) cyto/lysis
(f) cyto/tox/ic
(g) cyto/logist

In the above examples, **cyt/o** was used at the beginning of words. It can also be used at the end of words in combination with other roots, its meaning remaining the same. Remember, when two roots are joined the combining vowel remains in place.



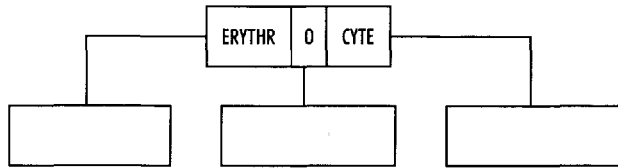
WORD EXERCISE 2

Here we have an example of two roots joined to make a compound word:



The meaning of leucocyte is therefore: white cell (actually a type of blood cell) (Am. leukocyte).

- (a) Name the components of the following word and use your Exercise Guide to find their meanings.



- (b) The meaning of erythrocyte is:



WORD EXERCISE 3

Figure 2 and Figure 3 show two specialized cells, each one carrying out a different function.

- (i) This cell produces the pigment melanin that gives the dark colour to black or brown skin.

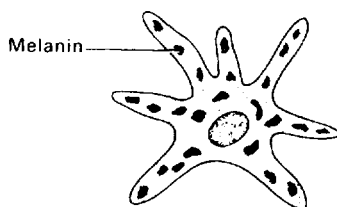


Figure 2

A pigment cell

- (ii) This cell produces white collagen fibres that give the skin support.



Figure 3

A fibre cell

Use your Exercise Guide to find the combining forms of melanin and fibre to build words that name these cells.

- (a) A cell containing melanin
- (b) A cell that produces fibres
- (c) Complete the table by looking up the combining forms of the following roots in your Exercise Guide and building words that refer to cell types.

Root	Combining form	Name of cell
oste	osteo	osteocyte (bone cell)
lymph
spermat
oo
granul
chondr

All of the above examples show how the combining vowel is retained when two roots are joined.

Now we will examine another root that also refers to cells:

Root

Blast

(A Greek word meaning bud or germ. It is used to denote an immature stage in cell development or a cell that is forming something.)

Combining forms **Blast/o**, also used as the suffix **-blast**



WORD EXERCISE 4

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) osteo/**blast**
- (b) fibro/**blast**

Using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) haemo/cyto/**blast**
(Am. hemo/cyto/blast)

Tissues

As cells become specialized, they form groups of cells known as tissues. A definition of a tissue is a group of cells similar in appearance, function and origin. There are four basic types of tissue: epithelial, muscle, connective and nervous tissue; these form the second level of organization in the body. Figure 4 illustrates how cells form a tissue. Here we can see a cuboidal epithelium from the kidney.

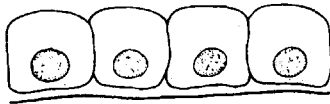


Figure 4 Cuboidal epithelium

The study of tissues is known as histology, the combining form coming from a Greek word *histos* meaning web (web of cells). Histology is an important branch of biology and medicine because it is used to identify diseased tissues. The histology and cytology laboratories are usually sections of the pathology laboratory of a large hospital.

Root

Hist

(From a Greek word **histos**, meaning web. It is used to mean the tissues of the body.)

Combining forms **Hist/i/o**



WORD EXERCISE 5

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **histo**/chemistry

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (b) **histo**/patho/logy

- (c) **histo**/logist

- (d) **histo**/lysis

Cells and tissues are very small and need to be examined using an instrument known as a microscope.



WORD EXERCISE 6

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **micro**-

- (b) **micro**/scope

- (c) **micro**/scopy

- (d) **micro**/scop/ist

Note carefully the differences between **-scope**, **-scopy** and **-scopist**.

- (e) **micro**/bio/logy

Organs

Groups of different tissues interact to produce larger structures known as organs; these form the third level of organization. A familiar example is the heart (Fig. 5), which consists of muscle tissue, a covering of epithelium, nerve tissue and connective tissue. All these tissues interact so that the heart pumps blood.

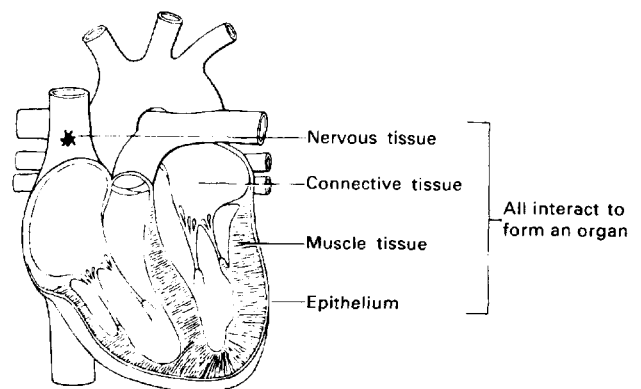


Figure 5 The heart

Root

Organ

(From a Greek word **organon**, meaning tool. Here we are using it to mean body organs).

Combining forms **Organ/o**



WORD EXERCISE 7

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **organo**/genesis
(synonymous with organogeny)
- (b) **organo**/genic
- (c) **organo**/trophic

Body systems

Groups of organs interact to form the fourth level of organization, the system, e.g. the stomach, duodenum, colon, etc. interact to form the digestive system that digests and absorbs food. Units 2–17 introduce medical terms associated with the main body systems.



CASE HISTORY 1

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on diagnosis of an AIDs related infection; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Diagnosis of an AIDs related infection

Mr A, a 34-year-old HIV positive patient with symptoms of AIDs, was admitted to the unit following a chest X-ray that revealed a left upper lobe mass.

A CT scan confirmed the presence of a mass within the peripheral aspect of the left upper lobe, and a small left pleural effusion. CT guided fine needle aspiration of the left upper lobe mass was performed and the biopsy material sent to the histology laboratory for analysis by the duty pathologist.

Cytological examination of direct smears using optical **microscopy** revealed a mucoïd background, moderate cellularity, polymorphonuclear leucocytes (Am. leukocytes), lymphocytes and histiocytes. A significant number of oval yeast-like cells were observed which appeared to be budding. No malignant cells were observed.

A sample of the biopsy material was sent for culture and sensitivity testing to the **microbiology** laboratory. The report was positive for encapsulated fungal yeast forms morphologically compatible with **pathogenic cryptococcus** species (*Cryptococcus neoformans*). Mr A's diagnosis was cryptococcosis, a condition seen mainly in AIDs patients and others with compromised immune systems.

WORD HELP

AIDs acquired immune deficiency syndrome

aspect part of a surface facing a designated direction

aspiration withdrawal by suction of a fluid

biopsy removal and examination of living tissue

budding performing asexual reproduction by producing buds that grow into new cells

cellularity state/condition of being made up of cells

compromised lacking the ability to mount an adequate immune response

cryptococcus a yeast-like fungus that causes disease in humans

cryptococcosis abnormal condition of infection with cryptococcus

CT computed tomography, a technique of using X-rays to image a slice or section through the body

culture & sensitivity testing growing microorganisms in the laboratory and testing them for sensitivity to antibiotics

effusion a fluid discharge into a part/escape of fluid into an enclosed space

encapsulated enclosed on a capsule or sheath

histiocytes the word means a tissue cell (actually a large cell found in connective tissue that helps defend against infection)

HIV-positive presence of antibodies to the human immunodeficiency virus in the blood, it indicates the virus has infected the body

lobe a division of an organ into smaller sections, here a lobe of the lung

malignant dangerous, life threatening

mass lump/collection of cohering cells

morphologically referring to the form and structure of an organism

mucoïd resembling mucus

peripheral pertaining to the periphery i.e. the surface of an organ

pleural pertaining to the pleura/pleural membranes that surround the lungs

polymorphonuclear pertaining to or having nuclei of many shapes

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) histology
- (b) pathologist

- (c) cytological _____
- (d) microscopy _____
- (e) leucocyte
(Am. leukocyte) _____
- (f) lymphocyte _____
- (g) microbiology _____
- (h) pathogenic _____

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to levels of organization:

Blast/o	immature cell/forming cell
Chondr/o	cartilage
Cyt/o	cell
Granul/o	granule
Hist/i/o	tissue/web
Lymph/o	lymph
Melan/o	pigment/melanin
Oo	egg/ovum
Organ/o	organ
Oste/o	bone
Path/o	disease
Spermat/o	sperm

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to cells and tissues are listed below. Note, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

Diff	differential blood count (of cell types)
FBC	full blood count (of cells)
GCSF	granulocyte colony stimulating factor
Histo	histology (lab)
HLA	human lymphocyte antigen
Lymphos	lymphocytes
NK	natural killer (cells)
Pap	Papanicolaou smear test (of cervical cells)
PCV	packed cell volume
RBC	red blood count/red blood cell
RCC	red cell count
WBC	white blood cell/white blood count

NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

micro- _____

Combining forms of word roots

bi/o _____

blast/o _____

chem/o _____

chondr/o _____

cyt/o _____

erythr/o _____

fibr/o _____

granul/o _____

hist/i/o _____

leuc/o _____

lymph/o _____

melan/o _____

oo- _____

organ/o _____

oste/o _____

path/o _____

spermat/o _____

tox/o _____

Suffixes

-blast	
-genic	
-genesis	
-ic	
-ical	
-ist	
-log(ist)	
-logy	
-lysis	
-pathy	
-scope	
-scop(ist)	
-scopy	
-tox(ic)	
-trophic	

Column A	Column B	Column C
(d) granul/o		4. study of
(e) hist/i/o		5. pigment (black)
(f) leuc/o		6. sperm cells
(g) -log(ist)		7. chemical
(h) -logy		8. tissue
(i) lymph/o		9. person who studies (specialist)
(j) -lysis		10. small
(k) melan/o		11. specialist who views/examines
(l) micro-		12. breakdown/disintegration
(m) oo-		13. poisonous/pertaining to poison
(n) oste/o		14. cell
(o) -pathy		15. visual examination
(p) -scope		16. disease
(q) -scop(ist)		17. lymph
(r) -scopy		18. red
(s) spermat/o		19. granule
(t) -tox(ic)		20. viewing instrument

> NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT <



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 1A

Prefixes, suffixes and combining forms of word roots

Match each word component in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) chem/o		1. egg
(b) cyt/o		2. bone
(c) erythr/o		3. white

Score

20

Test 1B

Write the meaning of:

- (a) chondrolysis
- (b) leucocytolysis
- (c) histotoxic
- (d) osteopathy
- (e) lymphoblast

Score

5

Test 1C

This type of test may seem difficult at first but as the terms become familiar you will improve.

Build words that mean:

- (a) small cell
- (b) person who specializes in the study of disease
- (c) person who specializes in the study of disease of cells
- (d) scientific study of cartilage
- (e) pertaining to disease of cells

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

The digestive system

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 2 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the digestive system
- build medical words relating to the digestive system
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the digestive system.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

micro- small

Roots/Combining forms

bi/o	life/living
chem/(istry)	chemicals (study of)
chondr/o	cartilage
erythr/o	red
fibr/o	fibre
granul/o	granule
haem/o	blood
hem/o (Am.)	blood
leuc/o	white
leuk/o (Am.)	white
lymph/o	lymph
melan/o	pigment/melanin
oo	egg/ovum
path/o	disease
spermat/o	sperm
tox/o	poisonous

Suffixes

-blast	immature germ cell/cell that forms ...
-genic	pertaining to formation/genesis
-genesis	formation of
-ic	pertaining to
-ist	specialist
-logist	specialist who studies ...
-logy	study of
-lysis	breakdown/disintegration
-pathy	disease of
-scope	instrument to view/examine
-scopist	specialist who uses viewing instrument
-scopy	technique of viewing/examining
-trophic	pertaining to nourishing

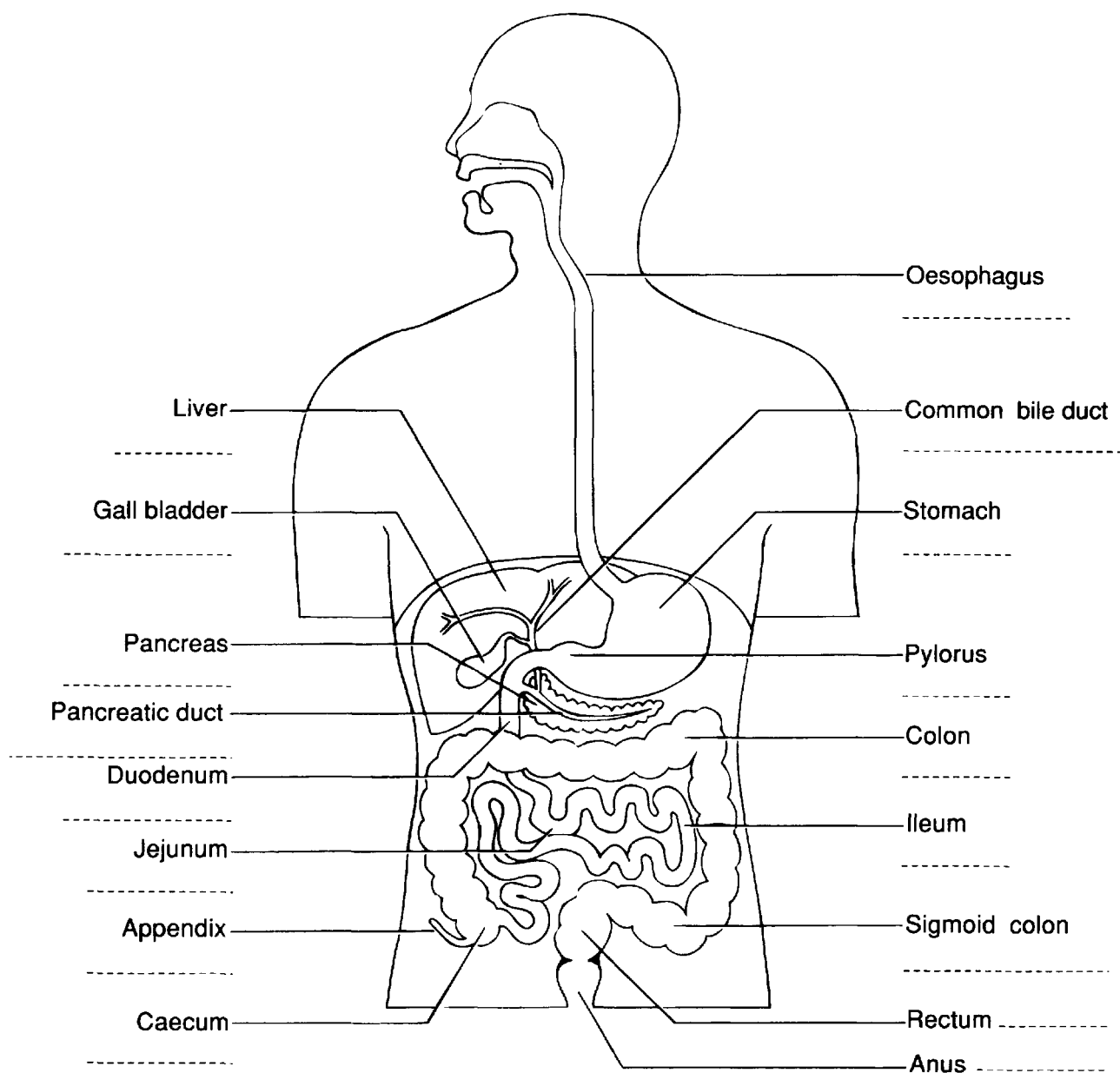


Figure 6 The digestive system



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–12, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figure 6 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on page 23.)

Appendic/o

Caec/o, Cec/o (Am.)

Cholecyst/o

Choledoch/o

Col/o

Duoden/o

Gastr/o

Hepat/o

Ile/o

Jejun/o

Oesophag/o, Esophag/o (Am.)

Pancreat/o

Pancreatic/o

Proct/o

Pylor/o

Rect/o

Sigmoid/o

The digestive system

The organs that compose the digestive system digest, absorb and process nutrients taken in as food. Materials not absorbed into the lining of the intestine form the faeces and leave the body through the anus.

Our study of the digestive system begins at the point where food leaves the mouth and enters the gullet or oesophagus.

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–12 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Oesophag

(From a Greek word **oisophagos**, meaning oesophagus or gullet.)

Combining forms

Oesophag/o

Esophag/o (Am.)



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **oesophago/scope**
(Am. esophago/scope)

Remember that, to understand the meaning of these medical terms, we read the components from the suffix towards the beginning of the word.

- (b) **oesophag/ectomy**
(Am. esophag/ectomy)
- (c) **oesophago/tomy**
(Am. esophago/tomy)
- (d) **oesophag/itis**
(Am. esophag/itis)

Once you have learnt the suffixes in Word Exercise 1, it is easy to work out the meaning of other words with similar endings. Now we will use the same suffixes again with a different word root.

Root

Gastr

(From a Greek word **gaster**, meaning belly or stomach.)

Combining forms

Gastr/o



WORD EXERCISE 2

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **gastro/scope**
- (b) **gastr/ectomy**
- (c) **gastro/tomy**
- (d) **gastr/itis**

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (e) disease of the stomach
- (f) study of the stomach
- (g) pertaining to upon/above the stomach

Remember, when building words the combining vowel is usually dropped if the suffix begins with a vowel.

Note. A naso **gastric** tube (nas/o meaning nose) that passes through the nose to the stomach can be used for suction, irrigation or feeding.

Root

Enter

(From a Greek word **enteron**, meaning intestine or gut.)

Combining forms

Enter/o



WORD EXERCISE 3

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **enter/itis**
- (b) **entero/pathy**
- (c) **entero/tomy**

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (d) **entero/stomy**

Here you need to note the difference between:

-stomy

This means a mouth or opening. Usually a stoma is formed by surgery, e.g. a colostomy is an opening or the formation of an opening into the colon. This word component is also used in anastomosis, an operation to form an opening/communication between two parts (Fig. 7). A stoma can be temporary or permanent.

-tomy

Means an incision as at the beginning of an operation.

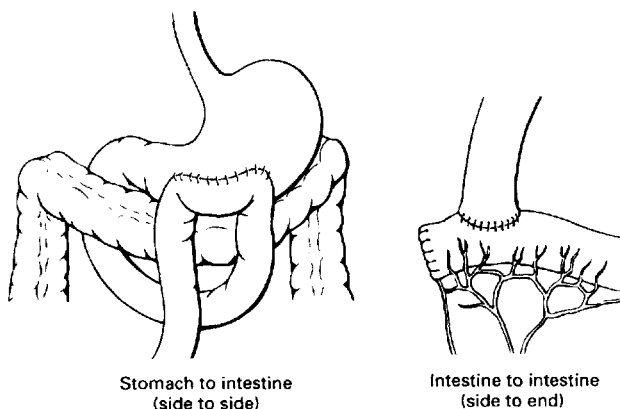


Figure 7 Surgical anastomoses

(e) **entero/lith**

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

(f) study of the intestine

(g) a person who studies the intestines

Now we can put two roots together to make a larger word. Although these words look complicated it is now quite easy to understand their meaning.

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(h) **gastro/entero/logy**

(i) **gastro/entero/pathy**

(j) **gastro/enter/itis**

(k) **gastro/entero/scopy**

Note. When the two roots **gastr/o** and **enter/o** are joined the combining vowel of the first root is retained.

Between the stomach and the small intestine there is a sphincter muscle known as the **pylorus**. This acts as a valve which opens periodically to allow digested food to leave the stomach.

Root

Pylor

(From a Greek word **pylourous**, meaning gate-keeper. It is used to mean the pylorus.)

Combining forms **Pylor/o**



WORD EXERCISE 4

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **pyloro/gastr/ectomy**

(b) **pyloro/scopy**

The small intestine

Now let us examine the small intestine which consists of three parts, the **duodenum**, **jejunum** and **ileum**. The duodenum is concerned mainly with digestion of food while the jejunum and ileum are specially adapted for the absorption of nutrients.

Note. Although the root **enter** refers generally to intestines, it is often used to mean the small intestine. However, there are special roots that describe the different regions of the intestine. We shall use these in the next three exercises.

Root

Duoden

(From a Latin word **duodeni**, meaning twelve. It refers to the duodenum, which is the first 12 inches of the small intestine.)

Combining forms **Duoden/o**

Root

Jejun

(From a Latin word **jejunus**, meaning empty. It refers to the jejunum, part of the intestine between the duodenum and ileum approx 2.4 m in length.)

Combining forms **Jejun/o**

Root**Ile**

(From a Latin word **ilia**, meaning flanks. We use it here to mean the lower three-fifths of the small intestine.)

Combining forms **Ile/o**

**WORD EXERCISE 5**

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **duodeno/entero/stomy**

(b) **jejuno/jejuno/stomy**

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(c) **duodeno/jejun/al**

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

(d) formation of an opening into the ileum

(e) inflammation of the ileum

(Exception – two vowels together.)

A permanent opening or **ileostomy** is made when the whole of the large intestine has been removed. This acts as an artificial anus. The ileum opens directly on to the abdominal wall and the liquid discharge from it is collected in a plastic **ileostomy bag** (Fig. 8).

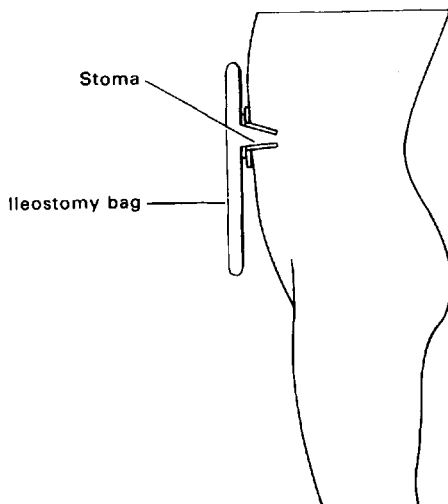


Figure 8 Ileostomy

After passing through the small intestine, any remaining material passes into the large intestine or large bowel.

The large intestine

The large intestine has a wider diameter than the small intestine and it is shorter. Its main function is to absorb water from the materials that remain after digestion and eject them from the body as faeces (Am. feces) during defaecation. The large intestine is made up of the **caecum** (Am. cecum), **appendix**, **colon**, **rectum** and **anus** (Fig. 9).

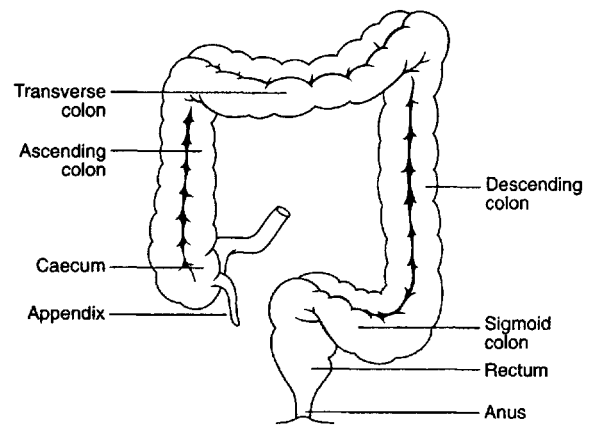


Figure 9 The large intestine

The next six roots refer to the large intestine:

Root**Caec**

(From a Latin word **caecus** meaning blind. It refers to a blindly ending pouch, the caecum attached to the vermiform appendix and separated from the ileum by a valve, the ileocaecal valve.)

Combining forms **Caec/o**
Cec/o (Am.)

Root**Append**

(From a Latin word **appendix**, meaning appendage, the root refers to the appendix, a blindly ending sac attached to the caecum.)

Combining forms **Appendic/o**
Append/o (Am.)

Root**Col**

(From a Greek word **kolon**, meaning colon, the large bowel extending from caecum to rectum.)

Combining forms **Col/o**, **colon/o**



WORD EXERCISE 6

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) mega/colon

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (b) appendic/itis

- (c) col/ectomy

- (d) colo/stomy
(see Fig. 10)

A colostomy may be temporary or permanent and its effluent is discharged into a **colostomy bag** attached to the surface of the abdomen.

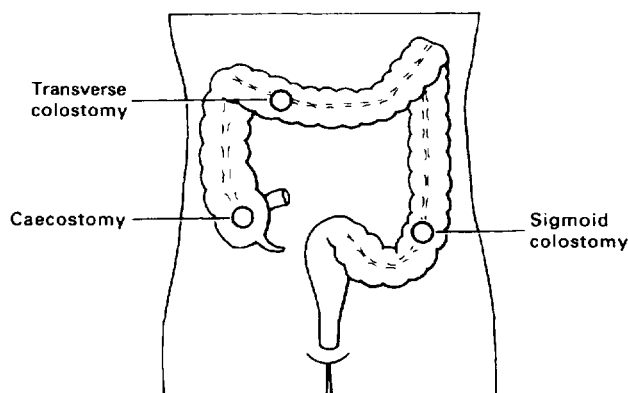


Figure 10 Common sites of stomas of large bowel

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (e) formation of an opening into the caecum (Am. cecum)
- (f) removal of the appendix
- (g) formation of an opening (anastomosis) between the colon and stomach

Root

Sigm

(From a Greek word **sigma**, meaning the letter S. It refers to the last part of the descending colon that resembles an S-shape and is called the sigmoid colon.)

Combining forms **Sigmoid/o**

Root

Rect

(From a Latin word **rectus**, meaning straight. Here it refers to the last part of the large intestine, the rectum, which is straight.)

Combining forms **Rect/o**

Root

Proct

(From a Greek word **proktos**, meaning anus. It is used to mean the anus or rectum.)

Combining forms **Proct/o**



WORD EXERCISE 7

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) sigmoido/scopy

- (b) para/rect/al

- (c) peri/proct/itis

- (d) procto/clysis

- (e) proct/algia

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (f) instrument to view anus/rectum

- (g) formation of an opening between the caecum and anus

- (h) formation of an opening between the sigmoid colon and caecum

Sometimes the lining of the intestine develops enlarged pouches or sacs. Each is known as a **diverticulum** (pl. **diverticulae**). These can become inflamed as in **diverticulitis** and may have to be removed by **diverticulectomy**.

The outer layer of the intestines and the lining of the cavity in which they lie consist of serous membrane. This secretes a serum-like fluid, serous fluid, that acts as a lubricant. A film of serous fluid allows organs to slide over each other as they move by peristalsis.

Root**Peritone**

(From Greek words **peri**, meaning around, and **teinein**, meaning to stretch. It refers to the peritoneum, the serous membrane lining the abdominal and pelvic cavities and covering all abdominal organs.)

Combining forms **Periton/e/o**

**WORD EXERCISE 8**

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **periton/itis**
 (b) **peritoneo/clysis**

Accessory organs of the digestive system

The pancreas

This gland is found beneath the stomach (see Fig. 6). Its function is to produce **pancreatic juice** that is passed to the duodenum where it neutralizes acid and digests food. It can also produce the hormones **insulin** and **glucagon** which are secreted directly into the blood.

Root**Pancreat**

(From a Greek word **pankreas**, meaning the pancreas.)

Combining forms **Pancreat/o**
 A combining form **pancreatic/o** is also derived from this root. It is used to mean pancreatic duct. This duct transfers pancreatic juice containing digestive enzymes from the pancreas to the duodenum.

The liver

The liver is the largest abdominal organ (Fig. 11). It is located just beneath the diaphragm. It processes nutrients which it receives from the intestine, stores materials and excretes wastes in the form of **bile** back into the intestine.

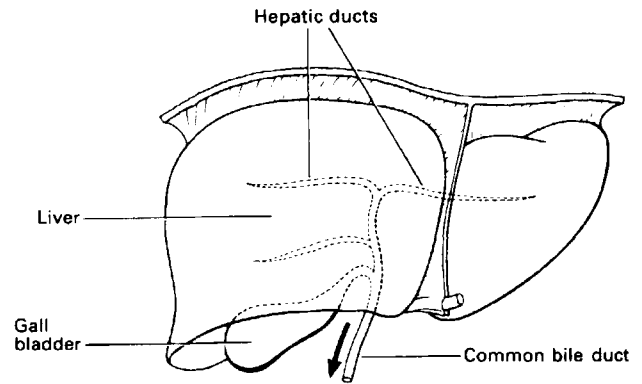


Figure 11 The liver and bile ducts

Root**Hepat**

(From a Greek word **hepatos**, meaning the liver.)

Combining forms **Hepat/o**
 A combining form **hepatic/o** is also derived from this root and is used to mean the hepatic duct.

**WORD EXERCISE 9**

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **pancreato/lysis**
 (b) **hepato/megaly**
 (c) **hepat/oma**
 (d) **hepato/toxic**

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (e) **hepatico/gastro/stomy**
 (f) **pancreatico/duoden/al**

Root**Chol**

(From a Greek word **chole**, meaning bile.)

Combining forms **Chol/e**

Liver cells produce a yellowish-brown waste known as bile. This drains through small canals and hepatic ducts

into a sac known as the gall bladder. Bile leaves the gall bladder through the common bile duct and enters the intestine. Although bile is a waste product, the bile salts it contains help to emulsify lipids (fats) in the intestine. The structures in which bile is transported are referred to as the **biliary** system (*bili-* meaning bile, *-ary* meaning pertaining to).



WORD EXERCISE 10

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) a/**chol**/ia
- (b) **chole**/lith
- (c) **chole**/lith/iasis
- (d) **chol**/aemia (Am. chol/emia)
- (e) **chol**/uria

A word root commonly combined with **chol/e** is **cyst/o**, meaning bladder. **Cholecyst/o** refers specifically to the bile bladder, commonly called the gall bladder.

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (f) **cholecysto**/tomy
- (g) **cholecyst**/ectomy
- (h) **cholecysto**/lithiasis

A second word root often combined with **chol/e** is **angi/o** meaning vessel. **Cholangi/o** therefore refers to the bile vessels/ducts.

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (i) **cholangio**/gram
- (j) **cholangio**/graphy

A third word root often combined with **chol/e** is **doch/o**, meaning to receive. **Choledoch/o** refers to the common bile duct, i.e. that which receives the bile.

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (k) **choledoch**/lithiasis
- (l) **choledoch**/litho/tomy

Here we need to distinguish between three suffixes that often cause some confusion:

-gram

This refers to a tracing. In practice in medicine it usually refers to an X-ray picture, paper recording or to a trace on a screen.

-graphy

This refers to the technique or process of making a recording, e.g. an X-ray or tracing. It can also refer to a written description.

-graph

This means a description or writing but more often it is used in medicine for the name of an instrument that carries out a recording. Occasionally it is used to mean the recording itself.

Root

Lapar

(From a Greek word **lapara**, meaning soft part between the ribs and hips, i.e. the flank/abdomen.)

Combining forms **Lapar/o**



WORD EXERCISE 11

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **laparo**/scopy
- (b) **laparo**/tomy

Laparotomy is an exploratory operation performed when the diagnosis of an abdominal problem is uncertain. With advances in diagnostic procedures such as CT scanning, ultrasonography and laparoscopy, it has become less common.

Laparoscopy is performed using a laparoscope, a device consisting of a thin tube containing a lens system that can be passed through a small hole into the abdominal cavity. The laparoscope allows the internal organs (viscera) to be viewed and manipulated by a surgeon.

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

In this unit we have named several instruments. Let us review their names:

gastroscope
gastroenteroscope
sigmoidoscope

colonoscope
proctoscope
laparoscope

All of these instruments are used to view various parts of the digestive system. Now fibreoptic endoscopes have replaced some of the original viewing instruments. Endoscope means an instrument to view inside (**endo-** within/inside).

Endoscopes utilize flexible/fibreoptic tubes (Fig. 12) that can be inserted into body cavities or into small incisions made in the body wall. Each is provided with illumination and a system of lenses which enables the operator to view the inside of the body. The inclusion of electronic chips at the end of the fibreoptic tube allows the view to be transmitted to a video screen. Sometimes the endoscope is used for photography and it is then known as a photoendoscope.

The endoscope can be adapted to view particular areas of the body. In the case of the digestive system, the fibreoptic tube can be passed into the mouth to examine the oesophagus, stomach and intestine. Alternatively it can be passed into the anus to view the rectum and colon. Note that when an endoscope is adapted to examine the stomach it may be referred to as a gastroscope.

Often endoscopes are used to examine the oesophagus, stomach and duodenum at the same examination. This procedure is **panendoscopy** (**pan-** means all, i.e. all the

upper digestive system). Similarly, panendoscopy could be performed on all of the large intestine via the anus.

In addition to viewing cavities, endoscopes can be fitted with a variety of attachments, such as forceps and catheters, and they can then be used for special applications. One such procedure is:

ERCP or endoscopic, retrograde, cholangiopancreatography

Let us examine the words separately:

endoscopic	referring to an endoscope
retrograde	going backwards
chol	bile
angio	vessel
pancreato	pancreas
graphy	technique of making a tracing/X-ray recording

Although we cannot deduce the exact meaning from the words we can see why they have been used. Here is the meaning of ERCP:

A technique of making an X-ray (graphy) of the pancreatic vessels and bile duct (pancreat/chol/angio), by passing a catheter (tube) backwards (retrograde) into them using an endoscope. Dye is injected through the catheter to outline the vessels and ducts on the X-ray.



WORD EXERCISE 12

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) enteroscope	1. instrument to view rectum
(b) endoscope	2. technique of taking photographs using an endoscope
(c) enteroscopy	3. visual examination of the colon
(d) endoscopy	4. instrument to view the intestine
(e) endoscopist	5. visual examination of all cavities, e.g. oesophagus, stomach and duodenum
(f) colonoscopy	6. instrument to view body cavities
(g) proctoscope	7. visual examination of the intestine
(h) sigmoidoscopy	8. person who operates an endoscope

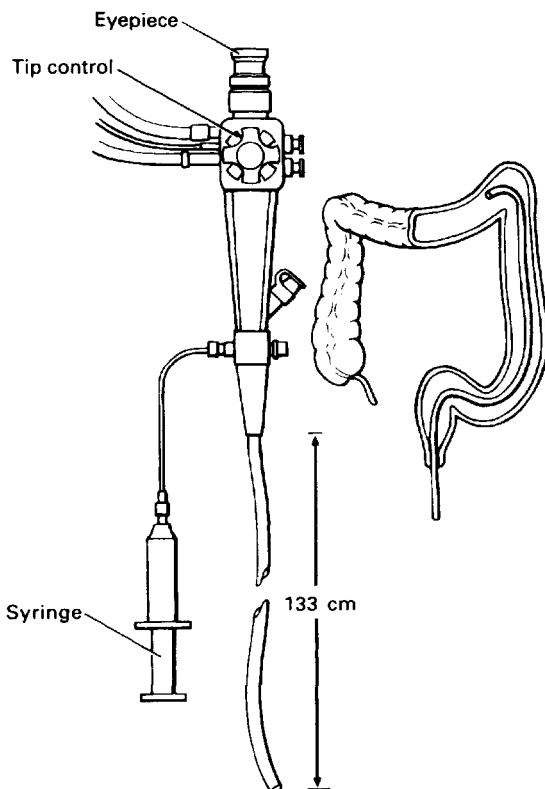


Figure 12 Fibreoptic endoscope used to view the colon

Column A	Column B	Column C
(i) panendoscopy	— — —	9. visual examination of body cavities
(j) photoendoscopy	— — —	10. visual examination of S-colon



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 14.



CASE HISTORY 2

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history. To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on gallstones; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Gallstones (Cholelithiasis)

Miss B, a 35-year-old, presented to her general practitioner complaining of pain emanating from the **epigastric** and right **hypochondrial** regions radiating to the back. The pain lasted for about 3 hours following each meal and was accompanied by nausea and occasional vomiting. Her **GP's** initial diagnosis was **biliary** colic, and he prescribed the **analgesic** pethidine. The pain did not resolve and she was admitted to the **gastroenterology** unit.

Initial **ultrasound** investigations revealed multiple stones in the gall bladder and a dilated common bile duct. A date was set for early **elective laparoscopic cholecystectomy**. Miss B was counselled on her **peri-operative** drug **regimen** and was introduced to the concept of patient controlled analgesia (PCA) using a **syringe driver**. Unfortunately, her elective procedure was delayed by an episode of acute **cholecystitis**.

Once recovered Miss B was admitted again but, due to her excessive weight, laparoscopy was deemed inappropriate by the surgeon and she was advised of the associative risks of an alternative procedure.

Vital signs on admission

Pulse 90/minute	Oral temp 37°C	BP 140/70
Height 1.52 m	Weight 85 kg	Smoker 25/day
Moderate drinker	Medication None	

An **open** cholecystectomy was performed and the inflamed gall bladder found to contain three gallstones each approximately 1.5 cm in diameter. A bile sample was sent for **culture and sensitivity testing** and a **nasogastric** tube passed. Antibiotic **prophylaxis** (cefuroxime) was administered prior to her operation and continued for 48 hours. Miss B also received low dose **subcutaneous heparin** injections as part of her **thromboembolic** prophylaxis.

The patient tolerated surgery well, PCA controlled her pain and she was **apyrexial**. In the immediate **post-operative** period she received an **intravenous** (i.v.) infusion of dextrose 4%, NaCl 0.18%, KCl 0.05% at a rate of 125 ml/hour.

On day four following her operation, the nasogastric tube and wound drains were removed and i.v. fluid replacement ceased. Miss B left the unit on day six and was provided with diclofenac 50 mg analgesic tablets to be taken up to 3 times daily when required. She agreed to an appointment with the **dietician** to discuss the desirability of reducing her weight.

WORD HELP

analgesic pain relieving drug

apyrexial absence of fever

culture and sensitivity testing growing microorganisms in the laboratory and testing them for sensitivity to antibiotics

dietician/dietitian specialist who plans and advises on diet with the approval of medical staff

elective voluntary/not an emergency/at a planned date

GP general practitioner (family doctor)

heparin an anticoagulant drug that prevents blood clotting

hypochondrial the region to the side, just below the ribs

intravenous pertaining to within a vein

open surgery via an incision (here into the abdomen)

peri-operative around the time of operation

post-operative pertaining to after/following operation

prophylaxis preventative treatment

regimen regulated scheme (e.g. of taking drugs/medication)

subcutaneous pertaining to under the skin

syringe driver motorized device that injects medication/drugs into the body

thromboembolic thrombus or clot moving and blocking another blood vessel

ultrasound using sound waves to produce an image

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

(a) cholelithiasis

- (b) epigastric
- (c) biliary
- (d) gastroenterology
- (e) laparoscopic
- (f) cholecystectomy
- (g) cholecystitis
- (h) nasogastric

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275).

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the digestive system:

Appendic/o	appendix
Bil/i	bile
Caec/o	caecum
Cec/o (Am.)	cecum
Chol/e	bile
Cholangi/o	bile vessel/duct
Cholecyst/o	gall bladder
Choledoch/o	common bile duct
Col/o	colon
Colon/o	colon
Diverticul/o	diverticulum
Duoden/o	duodenum
Enter/o	intestine
Esophag/o (Am.)	esophagus
Gastr/o	stomach
Hepat/o	liver
Hepatic/o	hepatic duct
Ile/o	ileum
Jejun/o	jejunum
Lapar/o	flank/abdominal wall
Oesophag/o	oesophagus
Pancreat/o	pancreas
Pancreatic/o	pancreatic duct
Peritone/o	peritoneum
Proct/o	anus/rectum
Pylor/o	pyloric sphincter
Rect/o	rectum
Ser/o	serous/serum
Sigmoid/o	sigmoid colon

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the digestive system are listed below. Note, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

Abdo	abdomen
CD	Crohn's disease
DU	duodenal ulcer
GI	gastrointestinal
GU	gastric ulcer
IUC	idiopathic ulcerative colitis
LLQ	left lower quadrant
pr/PR	per rectum
PU	peptic ulcer
RE	rectal examination
UC	ulcerative colitis
UGI	upper gastrointestinal

NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

- a-
- endo-
- epi-
- mega-
- pan-
- para-
- peri-
- retro-

Combining forms of word roots

angi/o

appendic/o

bil/i

caec/o

(Am. cec/o)

chol/e

choledoch/o

col/o

colon/o

cyst/o

diverticul/o

duoden/o

enter/o

gastr/o

hepat/o

hepatic/o

ile/o

jejun/o

lapar/o

nas/o

oesophag/o

(Am. esophag/o)

pancreat/o

pancreatic/o

peritone/o

proct/o

pylor/o

rect/o

ser/o

sigmoid/o

tox/o

Suffixes-aemia
(Am. -emia)

-al

-algia

-ary

-clysis

-ectomy

-grade

-gram

-graph

-graphy

-ia

-iasis

-ic

-ist

-itis

-lith

-lithiasis

-logist

-logy

-lysis

-megaly

-oma

-pathy

-scope

-scopy

-stomy

-tomy

-toxic

-uria



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 2A

Below are some combining forms that refer to the anatomy of the digestive system. Indicate which part of the system they refer to by putting a number from the diagram (Fig. 13) next to each word. You can use a number more than once.

- (a) pylor/o
- (b) gastr/o
- (c) proct/o
- (d) hepat/o
- (e) appendic/o
- (f) choledoch/o
- (g) col/o
- (h) pancreat/o
- (i) sigmoid/o
- (j) oesophag/o
(Am. esophag/o)
- (k) cholecyst/o
- (l) ile/o
- (m) caec/o
(Am. cec/o)
- (n) duoden/o
- (o) rect/o

Score

15

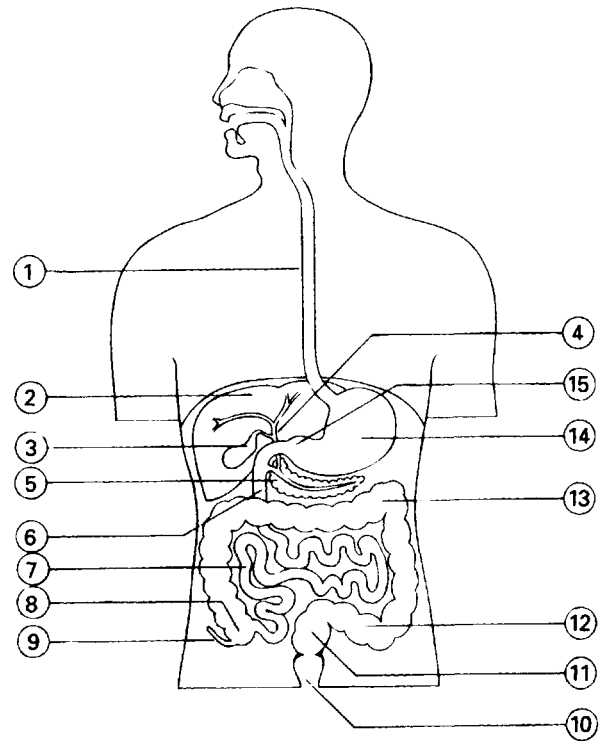


Figure 13 The digestive system

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) a-	1. enlargement
(b) -aemia (Am. -emia)	2. condition of pain
(c) -algia	3. study of
(d) -clysis	4. around
(e) -ectomy	5. injection/infusion
(f) endo-	6. X-ray/tracing
(g) -gram	7. inflammation
(h) -graph	8. condition of urine
(i) -graphy	9. within/inside
(j) -itis	10. beside/near
(k) -lithiasis	11. tumour
(l) -logy	12. abnormal condition of stones
(m) mega-	13. all
(n) -megaly	14. without

Test 2B

Prefixes and suffixes

Match each prefix or suffix in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(o) -oma	15. technique of making an X-ray/tracing/record
(p) pan-	16. large
(q) para-	17. instrument which records
(r) peri-	18. incision into
(s) -tomy	19. removal of
(t) -uria	20. condition of blood

Score

20

Test 2C

Combining forms of word roots

Match each combining form of a word root from Column A with a meaning from Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) angi/o	1. pylorus
(b) appendic/o	2. sigmoid colon
(c) caec/o (Am. cec/o)	3. peritoneum
(d) chol/e	4. jejunum
(e) choledoch/o	5. intestine
(f) colon/o	6. vessel
(g) cyst/o	7. duodenum
(h) duoden/o	8. colon
(i) enter/o	9. rectum
(j) gastr/o	10. rectum/anus
(k) hepat/o	11. bladder
(l) jejun/o	12. stomach
(m) lapar/o	13. oesophagus
(n) oesophag/o (Am. esophag/o)	14. bile

Column A	Column B	Column C
(o) pancreat/o	15. abdomen/flank
(p) peritone/o	16. common bile duct
(q) proct/o	17. caecum
(r) pylor/o	18. pancreas
(s) rect/o	19. liver
(t) sigmoid/o	20. appendix

Score

20

Test 2D

Write the meaning of:

- (a) gastroenterocolitis
 (b) hepatography
 (c) ileorectal
 (d) proctosigmoidoscope
 (e) pancreatomegaly

Score

5

Test 2E

Build words that mean:

- (a) inflammation of the duodenum
 (b) condition of pain in the stomach
 (c) incision into the liver
 (d) study of the anus/rectum
 (e) formation of an opening/anastomosis between the anus and the ileum

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

The breathing system

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 3 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the breathing system
- build medical words relating to the breathing system
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the breathing system.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

a-	without
dys-	difficult/painful
hyper-	above/excessive
hypo-	below/low
inter-	between
tachy-	fast

Roots/Combining forms

chondr/o	cartilage
esophag/o (Am.)	esophagus
gastr/o	stomach
haem/o	blood
hem/o (Am.)	blood

hepat/o	liver
myc/o	fungus
oesophag/o	oesophagus
radi/o	radiation/X-ray

Suffixes

-al	pertaining to
-algia	condition of pain
-ary	pertaining to
-centesis	surgical puncture to remove fluid
-desis	fixation/bind together by surgery/sticking together
-dynia	condition of pain
-eal	pertaining to
-ectasis	dilatation/stretching
-ectomy	removal of
-genic	pertaining to formation/originating in
-gram	X-ray/tracing/recording
-graphy	technique of recording/making X-ray
-ia	condition of
-ic	pertaining to
-itis	inflammation of
-logy	study of
-meter	measuring instrument
-metry	process of measuring
-osis	abnormal condition/disease of
-pathy	disease of
-plasty	surgical repair/reconstruction
-pexy	surgical fixation/fix in place
-plegia	condition of paralysis
-rrhaphy	suture/stitch/suturing
-rrhea (Am.)	excessive discharge/flow
-rrhoea	excessive discharge/flow
-scope	an instrument to view/examine
-scopy	technique of viewing/examining
-spasm	involuntary contraction
-stenosis	abnormal condition of narrowing
-stomy	formation of an opening into ...
-tomy	incision into
-us	thing/a structure (indicates an anatomical part)

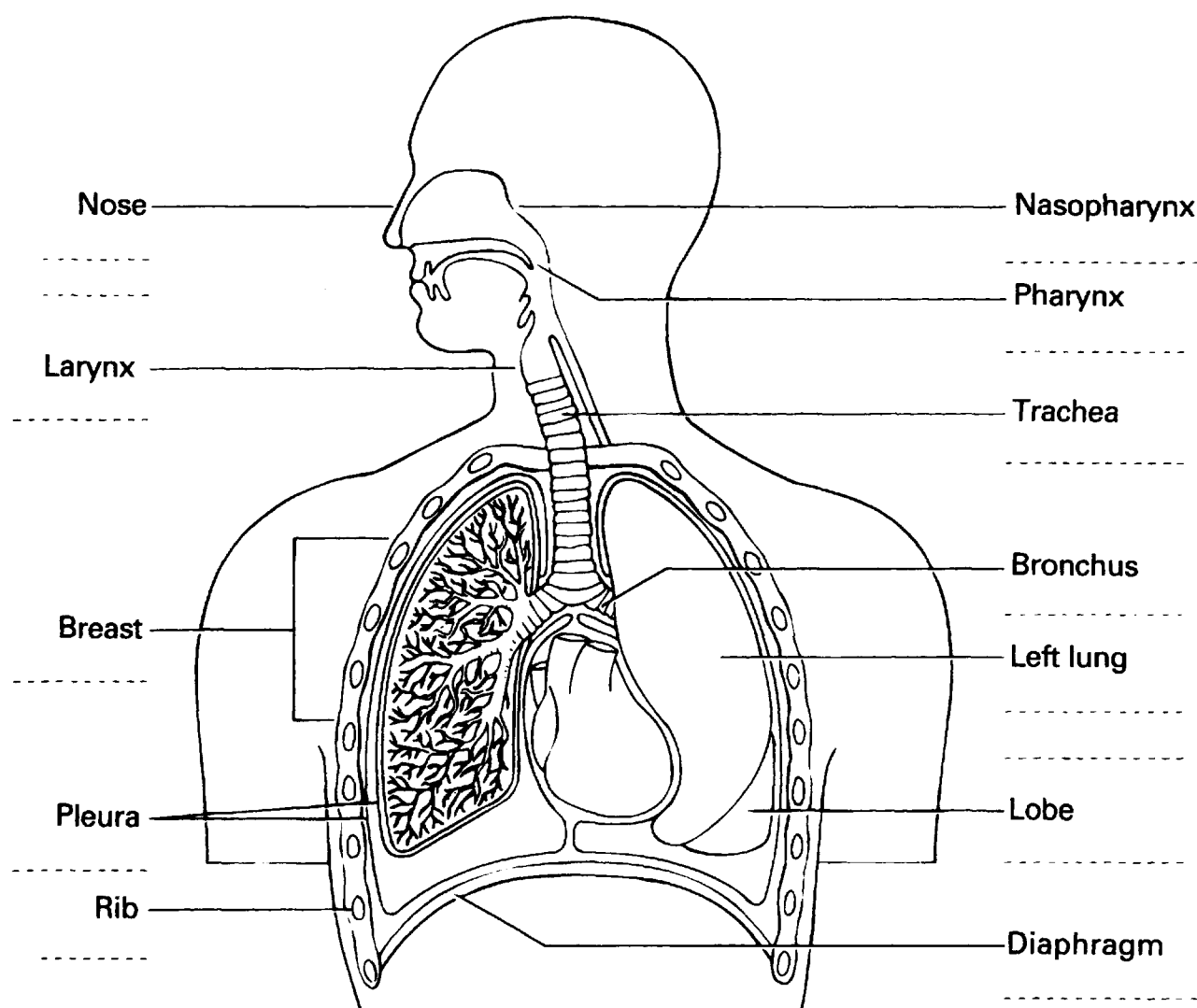


Figure 14 The breathing system



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–16, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figure 14 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line – more than one component may relate to the same position. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 35.)

Bronch/o
Cost/o
Laryng/o
Lob/o
Nas/o

Nasopharyng/o
Pharyng/o
Phren/o
Pleur/o
Pneumon/o

Pulmon/o
Rhin/o
Steth/o
Trache/o

The breathing system

Humans breathe air into paired lungs through the nose and mouth during inspiration. Whilst air is in the lungs gaseous exchange takes place; in this process oxygen

enters the blood in exchange for carbon dioxide. During expiration, air containing less oxygen and more carbon dioxide leaves the body. The oxygen obtained through gaseous exchange is required by body cells for cellular respiration, a process that releases energy from food.

Our study of the breathing system begins at the point where air enters the body, the nose.

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–16 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Rhin

(From a Greek word **rhinos**, meaning nose.)

Combining forms **Rhin/o**



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **rhino**/scopy
- (b) **rhino**/pathy
- (c) **rhin**/algia
- (d) **rhin**/itis
- (e) **rhino**/rrhoea
(Am. rhino/rrhea)
- (f) **rhino**/plasty

Root

Nas

(From a Latin word **nasus**, meaning nose.)

Combining forms **Nas/o**



WORD EXERCISE 2

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **naso**/gastr/ic tube
- (b) **naso**-oesophag/eal tube
(Am. naso-esophag/eal)

Root

Pharyng

(From a Greek word **pharynx**, meaning throat, here it is used to mean the pharynx.)

Combining forms **Pharyng/o**



WORD EXERCISE 3

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **pharyng**/algia
- (b) **pharyngo**/rrhoea
(Am. pharyngo/rrhea)

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (c) surgical repair of the pharynx
- (d) inflammation of the nose and pharynx (use rhin/o)

Root

Laryng

(From a Greek word **larynx** that refers to the voice box, here it is used to mean the larynx.)

Combining forms **Laryng/o**



WORD EXERCISE 4

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **laryngo**/logy
- (b) **laryngo**/pharyng/ectomy

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (c) technique of viewing the larynx
- (d) the study of the nose and larynx
(use rhin/o).

When swallowing, food is prevented from falling into the larynx by the **epiglottis**, a thin flap of cartilage lying above the glottis and behind the tongue. When the epiglottis moves, it covers the opening into the larynx and sound-producing glottis. **Epiglott/o** is the combining form derived from epiglottis; inflammation of the epiglottis may produce **epiglottitis** and tumours may be removed by **epiglottectomy**.

Root

Trache

(From Greek **tracheia**, meaning rough. Note that it refers to the rough appearance of the rings of cartilage in the windpipe. It is used to mean trachea or windpipe.)

Combining forms **Trache/o**



WORD EXERCISE 5

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **tracheo**/tomy
- (b) **tracheo**/stomy (operation used to maintain the airway; see Fig. 15)

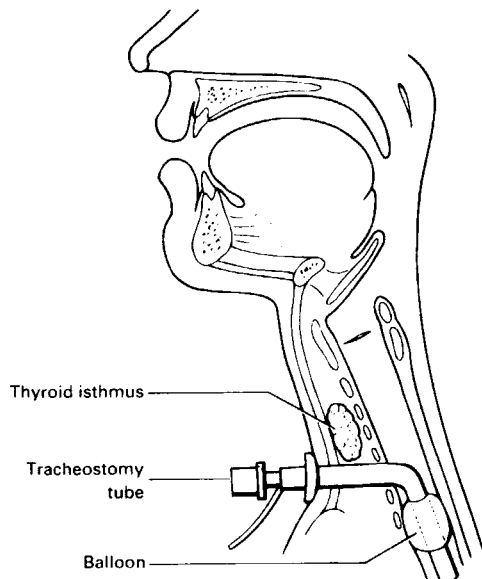


Figure 15 Tracheostomy

Root

Bronch

(From a Greek word **bronchos**, meaning bronchus or windpipe.)

Combining forms **Bronch/i/o**



WORD EXERCISE 6

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) discharge/excessive flow of mucus from bronchi
- (b) an X-ray of the bronchus

- (c) technique of making an X-ray of the bronchi
- (d) an instrument for the visual examination of the bronchi

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (e) **bronch**/us
- (f) **broncho**/plegia
- (g) **broncho**/rrhaphy
- (h) **bronchi**/ectasis
- (i) **broncho**/myc/osis
- (j) **broncho**/genic
- (k) **broncho**/spasm
- (l) tracheo/**bronchi**/al

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (m) laryngo/tracheo/**bronch**/itis
- (n) **bronch**/oesophago/stomy (Am. bronch/esophago/stomy)

Note. The combining form **bronchiol/o** is used when referring to the very small subdivisions of the bronchi known as **bronchioles**, e.g. **bronchiolitis** for inflammation of the bronchioles.

The smallest bronchioles end in microscopic air sacs known as **alveoli** (from Latin *alveus*, meaning hollow cavity). Alveoli form a large surface area of the lungs across which the gases oxygen and carbon dioxide are exchanged and therefore play an essential role in maintaining life. The combining form is **alveol/o**, but few terms are in use, e.g. **alveolitis**.

At the alveolar surface oxygen diffuses into the blood from the cavities of the alveoli, carbon dioxide diffuses in the opposite direction and is lost from the body in expired air. Disorders of the breathing and cardiovascular systems can affect gaseous exchange and therefore the concentration of these gases in the blood. **Hypoxia** is a condition of deficiency of oxygen in the tissues (*hypo*- meaning below/low, *-oxia* meaning condition of oxygen). **Hypercapnia** is a condition of too much carbon dioxide in the blood (*hyper*- meaning above/excessive, *-capnia* meaning a condition of carbon dioxide).

Poor oxygenation also results in the presence of large amounts of unoxygenated haemoglobin

(Am. hemoglobin) in the blood. This produces **cyanosis**, an abnormal condition in which unoxygenated haemoglobin gives a blue tinge to the skin, lips and nail beds (*cyan/o* meaning blue, *-osis* meaning abnormal condition).

Root

Pneumon

(A Greek word, meaning lung.)

Combining forms **Pneumon/o**



WORD EXERCISE 7

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **pneumono**/tomy
- (b) **pneumono**/rrhaphy
- (c) **pneumon**/osis

Note. **Pneumonia** means a condition of the lungs. It refers to an inflammation of the lungs with exudation caused by infection. (The exudate is a fluid that has escaped from capillaries lining the lungs).

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (d) removal of a lung
- (e) disease of a lung

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (f) **pneumono**/centesis
- (g) **pneumono**/pexy

Root

Pneum

(From a Greek word **pneumatōs**, meaning breath, air, gas and lung. Here we are using it to mean gas/air.)

Combining forms **Pneum/a/o, Pneumat/o**

At this point we need to introduce the word **pneumothorax**. The components of this word refer to air and thorax (chest) but the meaning of the word is not obvious. It means air or gas in the pleural cavity, i.e. the space between the wall of the thorax and the lungs.

A pneumothorax is formed by puncture of the chest wall; this can be caused by a stab wound or made as part of a surgical procedure.



WORD EXERCISE 8

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **pneumo**/haemo/thorax
(Am. pneumo/hemo/thorax; see Fig. 16)

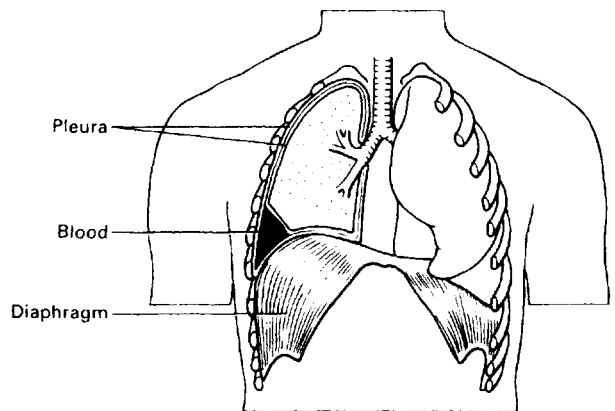


Figure 16 Haemothorax (Am. hemothorax)

- (b) **pneumo**/radio/graphy
(This term does not refer specifically to the breathing system. It is a technique used to enhance the contrast of X-rays of body cavities by injecting air into them.)

A combining form **-pnoea**, meaning breathing, is also derived from this root (Am. -pnea).

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (c) a/**pnoea**
(Am. a/pnea)
- (d) dys/**pnoea**
(Am. dys/pnea)
- (e) hyper/**pnoea**
(Am. hyper/pnea)
- (f) hypo/**pnoea**
(Am. hypo/pnea)
- (g) tachy/**pnoea**
(Am. tachy/pnea)

Root

Lob

(From a Greek word **lobos**, meaning a rounded section of an organ. In the lungs, lobes are formed by fissures or septa that divide the right lung into three lobes and the left lung into two. Note that other organs in the body are lobar.)

Combining forms **Lob/o**



WORD EXERCISE 9

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) incision into a lobe
- (b) removal of a lobe

Root

Pulmon

(From a Latin word **pulmonis**, meaning lung.)

Combining forms **Pulmon/o**



WORD EXERCISE 10

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **pulmon/ic**
- (b) **pulmon/ary**

Root

Pleur

(From a Greek word **pleura**, meaning rib or side. It is used to mean **pleura**, the shiny membranes covering the lungs and internal surfaces of the thorax. The space in between the membranes is the **pleural cavity**.)

Combining forms **Pleur/o**



WORD EXERCISE 11

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **pleur/itis** (also called pleurisy)
- (b) **pleuro/centesis**

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (c) technique of making an X-ray of pleural cavity

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (d) **pleuro/dynia**
- (e) **pleuro/desis**

Root

Phren

(A Greek word, meaning midriff or diaphragm.)

Combining forms **Phren/o**



WORD EXERCISE 12

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **phreno/gastr/ic**
- (b) **phreno/hepat/ic**
- (c) **phreno/pleg/ia**

Root

Thorac

(From a Greek word **thorax**, meaning chest.)

Combining forms **Thorac/o**, also **-thorax** used as a suffix



WORD EXERCISE 13

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) any disease of thorax
- (b) incision into chest

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) **thoraco/centesis**
- (d) **thoraco/scope**

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(e) **thoraco/stenosis** _____

Cost

(From a Latin word **costa**, meaning rib.)

Combining forms **Cost/o**



WORD EXERCISE 14

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(a) **inter/cost/al** _____

(b) **costo/genic** _____

(c) **costo/chondr/itis** _____

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

In this unit we have named several instruments used to examine the breathing system. Some of those mentioned may be modified fiberoptic endoscopes. Let us review their names:

rhinoscope
pharyngoscope
laryngoscope
bronchoscope
thoracoscope

The nose and pharynx can be superficially examined using a source of illumination with a tongue depressor and a nasal speculum (Figs 17 and 18).

Image Not Available

Image Not Available

Figure 18 Nasal speculum

Note. The word **speculum** refers to an instrument used to hold the walls of a cavity apart so that the interior can be examined visually.

Other instruments used to investigate the breathing system include:

Stethoscope

(From a Greek word **stethos**, meaning breast, and **skopein**, meaning to examine.) Although this word ends in scope, which usually refers to an instrument for visual examination, it is used to listen to the sounds from the chest.

Spirograph

(From a Latin word **spirare**, meaning to breathe.) An instrument that records breathing movements of lungs.

Spirometer

An instrument that measures the capacity of the lung. The technique for using this instrument is spirometry (synonymous with pneumatometry).

We also need to distinguish between the suffixes:

-meter

an instrument that measures.

-metry

the technique of measuring, i.e. using a measuring instrument.

Now revise the names and uses of all instruments and examinations mentioned in this unit and then try Exercises 15 and 16.



WORD EXERCISE 15

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A

Column B

Column C

- | | | |
|------------------|-------|--|
| (a) bronchoscope | _____ | 1. person who may use a nasal speculum |
|------------------|-------|--|

Figure 17 Tongue depressor

Column A	Column B	Column C
(b) laryngoscopy	_____	2. instrument to examine the vocal cords
(c) rhinoscope	_____	3. instrument to examine the bronchi
(d) pharyngoscope	_____	4. visual examination of the vocal cords
(e) bronchoscopy	_____	5. device used to allow air through the tracheal wall
(f) rhinologist	_____	6. instrument to view the back of the mouth
(g) tracheostomy tube	_____	7. visual examination of the bronchi
(h) laryngoscope	_____	8. instrument to view nasal cavities



WORD EXERCISE 16

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) thoracoscope	_____	1. instrument to open the nostrils
(b) stethoscope	_____	2. technique of making an X-ray of pleura
(c) spirometer	_____	3. technique of recording breathing movements
(d) spirometry	_____	4. technique of measuring lung capacity
(e) nasal speculum	_____	5. instrument to view the thorax
(f) nasogastric tube	_____	6. instrument that measures lung capacity
(g) pleurography	_____	7. instrument to examine/listen to the breast
(h) spirometry	_____	8. tube inserted into the stomach via nose



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 28.



CASE HISTORY 3

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease

Mr C is 56 years of age and has a long history of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). He began smoking at the age of 14 and until 6 years ago smoked approximately 25–30 cigarettes per day but now only smokes 2 or 3 per week. Five years ago he developed a squamous cell carcinoma and had a right upper **lobectomy**.

Mr C has had two acute exacerbations of bronchitis in the past year. His wife says that over the last few days he has become increasingly out of breath and has difficulty in walking, speaking and eating. He was seen in casualty with increasing **dyspnoea**, **cyanosis** and a productive, purulent sputum.

Vital signs on admission

Pulse 100/min	Oral temp 38 °C	BP 150/95
Medication	Home oxygen therapy	salbutamol 5 mg nebulized q.i.d prednisolone 30 mg/day

Blood Gas Analysis

paCO ₂ 8.90 kPa (4.5–6.1)	Standard bicarbonate 29.2 (22–28)	PEFR 180 L/min
paO ₂ 4.5 kPa (12–15)	Blood pH 7.05 (7.32–7.42)	

On examination he had a degree of **bronchospasm** and was showing signs of **hypoxia** and **hypercapnia**. His serious condition required his immediate transfer to the intensive therapy unit (ITU) for mechanical ventilatory support. An arterial catheter for blood gas sampling was inserted via the left radial artery, and he was sedated. He was given a muscle relaxant intravenously to enable tracheal intubation and commencement of intermittent positive pressure ventilation (IPPV).

Mr C was initially diagnosed as having basal **pneumonia** in the right lung complicating his COPD.

He was administered one intravenous dose of 500 mg of ampicillin followed by 500 mg amoxicillin 8-hourly.

WORD HELP

acute	symptoms/signs of short duration
carcinoma	malignant growth from epidermal cells/a cancer
catheter	a tube inserted into the body
chronic	lasting/lingering for a long time
exacerbations	acute increased severity of symptoms
intravenous	pertaining to within a vein
intubation	insertion of a tube into a hollow organ in this case the trachea
productive	producing e.g. producing mucus/sputum
purulent	resembling pus/infected
sedated	state of reduced activity usually as a result of medication
sputum	material expelled from the respiratory passages by coughing or clearing the throat
squamous	pertaining to scale-like/from squamous epithelium

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) pulmonary
 (b) lobectomy
 (c) dyspnoea
 (d) cyanosis
 (e) bronchospasm
 (f) hypoxia
 (g) hypercapnia
 (h) pneumonia

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the breathing system:

Alveol/o	alveolus
Bronch/o	bronchus
Bronchiol/o	bronchiole
Chondr/o	cartilage

Quick Reference (contd.)

Combining forms relating to the breathing system:

Cost/o	rib
Epiglott/o	epiglottis
Laryng/o	larynx
Lob/o	lobe
Nas/o	nose
Nasopharyng/o	nasopharynx
Pharyng/o	pharynx
Phren/o	diaphragm
Pleur/o	pleura
Pneum/o	gas/air/lung
Pneumon/o	lung/air
-pnoea	breathing
-pnea (Am.)	breathing
Pulmon/o	lung
Rhin/o	nose
Spir/o	to breathe
Steth/o	breast
Thorac/o	thorax
Trache/o	trachea

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the breathing system are listed below. Note, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

BRO	bronchoscopy
COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
CXR	chest X-ray
ET	endotracheal
FVC	forced vital capacity
LLL	left lower lobe
PE	pulmonary embolism
PEFR	peak expiratory flow rate
PFTs	pulmonary function tests
RSV	respiratory syncytial virus
SOBE	shortage of breath on exertion
URTI	upper respiratory tract infection

> NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK <



WORD CHECK

This self-check lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

a-	.....
dys-	.....
hyper-	.....
hypo-	.....
inter-	.....
tachy-	.....

Combining forms of word roots

alveol/o	.....
bronch/o	.....
bronchiol/o	.....
chondr/o	.....
cost/o	.....
cyan/o	.....
epiglott/o	.....
gastr/o	.....
haem/o (Am. hem/o)	.....
hepat/o	.....
laryng/o	.....
lob/o	.....
myc/o	.....
nas/o	.....
oesophag/o (Am. esophag/o)	.....

pharyng/o	.....
phren/o	.....
pleur/o	.....
pneum/o	.....
pneumon/o	.....
pnoea (Am. pnea)	.....
pulmon/o	.....
radi/o	.....
rhin/o	.....
spir/o	.....
sten/o	.....
thorac/o	.....
trache/o	.....

Suffixes

-al	.....
-algia	.....
-ary	.....
-capnia	.....
-centesis	.....
-desis	.....
-dynia	.....
-ectasis	.....
-ectomy	.....
-genic	.....
-gram	.....
-graphy	.....
-ia	.....
-ic	.....
-itis	.....

-logy _____

-meter _____

-metry _____

-osis _____

-oxia _____

-pathy _____

-pexy _____

-plasty _____

-plegia _____

-rrhaphy _____

-rrhoea
(Am. rrhea) _____

-scope _____

-scopy _____

-spasm _____

-stomy _____

-tomy _____

-us _____

(e) pleur/o _____

(f) pneum/o _____

(g) trache/o _____

(h) laryng/o _____

(i) pharyng/o _____

(j) rhin/o _____

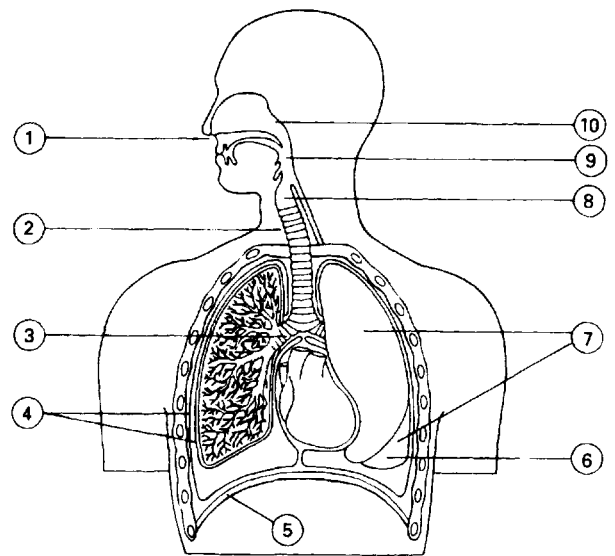


Figure 19 The breathing system

Score

10

▶ NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT ◀



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 3A

Below are some combining forms that refer to the anatomy of the breathing system. Indicate which part of the system they refer to by putting a number from the diagram (Fig. 19) next to each word. The numbers may be used more than once.

(a) bronch/o _____

(b) nasopharyng/o _____

(c) phren/o _____

(d) lob/o _____

Test 3B

Prefixes and Suffixes

Match each prefix and suffix in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) -centesis	_____	1. measuring instrument
(b) -desis	_____	2. pertaining to originating in/formation
(c) -dynia	_____	3. opening into/ connection between two parts

Column A	Column B	Column C
(d) dys-	_____	4. between
(e) -ectomy	_____	5. abnormal condition/disease of
(f) -genic	_____	6. fixation (by surgery)
(g) hyper-	_____	7. condition of pain
(h) hypo-	_____	8. removal of
(i) inter-	_____	9. excessive flow/discharge
(j) -meter	_____	10. fast
(k) -metry	_____	11. above
(l) -osis	_____	12. difficult/painful
(m) -pexy	_____	13. surgical repair
(n) -plasty	_____	14. puncture
(o) -plegia	_____	15. condition of paralysis
(p) -rrhaphy	_____	16. to bind together
(q) -rrhoea (Am. rrhea)	_____	17. incision into
(r) -stomy	_____	18. below
(s) -tachy	_____	19. technique of measuring
(t) -tomy	_____	20. suturing/stitching

Score

20

Test 3C

Combining forms of word roots

Match each combining form in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) bronch/o	_____	1. larynx
(b) cost/o	_____	2. diaphragm
(c) enter/o	_____	3. bronchus

Column A	Column B	Column C
(d) epiglott/o	_____	4. thorax
(e) gastr/o	_____	5. intestine
(f) hepat/o	_____	6. pleural membranes
(g) laryng/o	_____	7. stomach
(h) lob/o	_____	8. trachea
(i) myc/o	_____	9. breathing (wind)
(j) nas/o	_____	10. nose (i)
(k) pharyng/o	_____	11. nose (ii)
(l) phren/o	_____	12. fungus
(m) pleur/o	_____	13. lobe
(n) pneum/o	_____	14. pharynx
(o) pneumon/o	_____	15. liver
(p) pnoea (Am. pnea)	_____	16. gas/air/wind
(q) rhin/o	_____	17. lung
(r) sten/o	_____	18. epiglottis
(s) thorac/o	_____	19. rib
(t) trache/o	_____	20. narrowing

Score

20

Test 3D

Write the meaning of:

- (a) bronchogenic _____
- (b) tracheostenosis _____
- (c) pulmonologist _____
- (d) phrenograph _____
- (e) laryngoplegia _____

Score

5

Test 3E

Build words that mean:

- (a) surgical repair of the bronchus
- (b) technique of visually examining
bronchi
- (c) suturing of the trachea
- (d) study of the nose (use rhin/o)
- (e) pertaining to the diaphragm
and ribs

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

This page intentionally left blank

The cardiovascular system

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 4 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the cardiovascular system
- build medical words relating to the cardiovascular system
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the cardiovascular system.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

a-	without
brady-	slow
dextro-	right
electro-	electrical
endo-	within/inside
pan-	all
peri-	around
tachy-	fast

Roots/Combining forms

dynam/o	force
ech/o	echo/reflected sound
lith/o	stone
man/o	pressure
my/o	muscle
necr/o	death, dead
phon/o	sound/voice

Suffixes

-ac	pertaining to
-algia	condition of pain
-ar	pertaining to
-centesis	surgical puncture to remove fluid
-clysis	infusion/injection/irrigation
-ectasis	dilatation/stretching
-ectomy	removal of
-genesis	capable of causing/pertaining to formation
-gram	X-ray/tracing/recording
-graph	usually an instrument that records
-graphy	technique of recording/making X-ray
-ia	condition of
-ic	pertaining to
-itis	inflammation of
-logy	study of
-lysis	breakdown/disintegration
-megaly	enlargement
-meter	measuring instrument
-metry	process of measuring
-oma	tumour/swelling
-osis	abnormal condition/disease of
-ous	pertaining to/of the nature of
-pathy	disease of
-plasty	surgical repair/reconstruction
-pexy	surgical fixation/fix in place
-plegia	condition of paralysis
-poiesis	formation
-rrhaphy	suture/stitch/suturing
-sclerosis	abnormal condition of hardening
-scope	an instrument to view/examine
-spasm	involuntary contraction of muscle
-stasis	stopping/controlling/cessation of movement
-stenosis	abnormal condition of narrowing
-tome	cutting instrument
-tomy	incision into
-um	thing/a structure/anatomical part
-us	thing/a structure/anatomical part

Heart

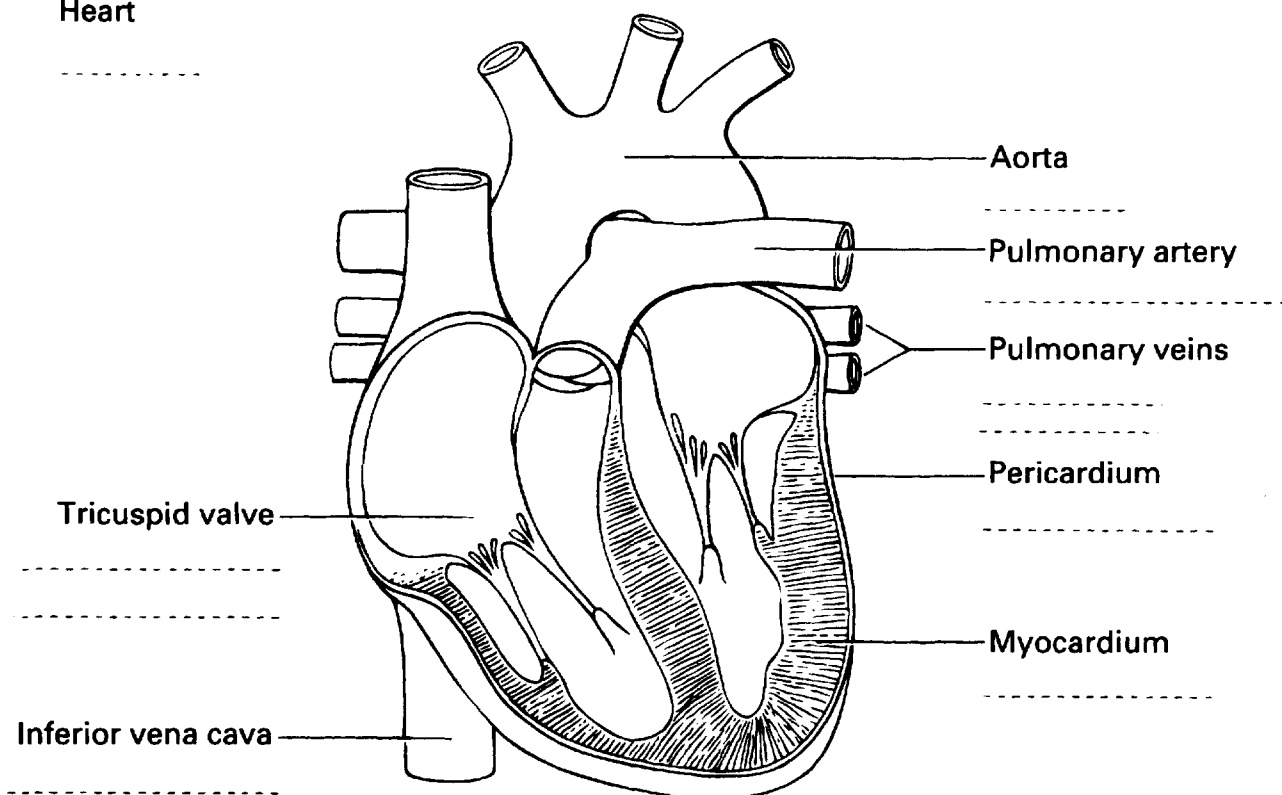


Figure 20 The heart



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–16, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figure 20 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line – more than one component may relate to the same position. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 50.)

Aort/o
Arteri/o
Cardi/o
Myocardi/o

Pericardi/o
Phleb/o
Valv/o
Valvul/o

Venacav/o
Ven/o

The cardiovascular system

In order to remain alive, cells within the body need a continuous supply of oxygen and nutrients for their metabolism. Any metabolic wastes excreted by these cells must be transported to the excretory organs where they can be removed from the body. The cardiovascular system provides a transport system for supply and removal of materials to and from the tissue cells; it consists of the heart and blood vessels.

The heart

The heart is a four chambered muscular pump that continuously pushes blood into arteries. The right and left atria (singular – atrium) form the top chambers and the right and left ventricles the lower chambers.

The atria receive blood from veins and push it into the ventricles. The right ventricle then forces blood through the pulmonary artery to the lungs where it is oxygenated. Simultaneously oxygenated blood that has

returned to the left side of the heart is forced by the left ventricle through the aorta into the systemic circulation.

The heart muscle (myocardium) that forms the walls of the chambers, is stimulated to contract rhythmically by a special patch of tissue called the sino-atrial (SA) node or 'pacemaker'. Although the SA node gives the heart the ability to contract by itself, its rate of contraction is determined by nerve impulses from centres in the brain.

The heart muscle receives a supply of fully oxygenated blood from branches of the aorta known as the coronary arteries. If coronary arteries become blocked, the muscle dies triggering a heart attack. Another common cause of death is **heart failure**, defined as the inability of the heart to maintain a flow of blood sufficient to meet the body's needs; the term is most often applied to the heart muscle of either the left or right ventricle. If both ventricles are affected, it is known as **biventricular** heart failure (bi – meaning two).

(The term **atrial** means pertaining to an atrium and **ventricular** means pertaining to a ventricle (-al and -ar both mean pertaining to.)

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–16 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Card

(From a Greek word **kardia**, meaning heart.)

Combining forms **Cardi/o**



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **cardi/ac**
- (b) **cardi/algia**
- (c) **cardio/scope**
- (d) **cardio/graph**
- (e) **cardio/gram**
- (f) **tachy/card/ia**

Using your Exercise Guide, build words using **cardi/o** that mean:

- (g) enlargement of the heart
- (h) surgical repair of the heart

- (i) disease of the heart
- (j) study of the heart

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (k) myo/**cardi**/um
- (l) **cardio**/myo/pathy
- (m) **cardio**/rrhaphy
- (n) electro/**cardio**/graph
- (o) endo/**card**/itis
- (p) pan/**card**/itis
- (q) brady/**card**/ia
- (r) dextro/**card**/ia
- (s) phono/**cardio**/graphy
- (t) echo/**cardio**/graphy
- (u) electro/**cardio**/gram

To make an electrocardiogram (ECG; Fig. 21) electrodes are attached to the skin at various sites on the body. The heart muscle generates electrical impulses that can be detected at the surface of the body, amplified and converted into a trace on a screen or paper. The P wave appears when the atria are stimulated, the QRS complex when the impulse passes to the ventricles and the T wave is generated when the ventricles contract. Abnormal electrical activity and changes in heart rate seen in coronary heart disease can be detected from the ECG.

The heart is continuously supplied with blood through coronary arteries. Narrowing of these vessels results in **ischaemia**, a deficient blood supply (*isch-* meaning to check) that produces the chest pain known as **angina**

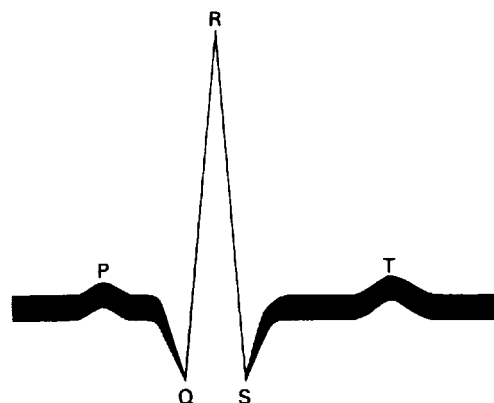


Figure 21 Electrocardiogram

pectoris. If the flow of blood to the heart muscle is interrupted, the muscle dies; this is a **myocardial infarction** or heart attack. Heart muscle deprived of oxygen produces a rapid, uncoordinated, quivering contraction known as **fibrillation**. Normal rhythm can sometimes be restored by applying an electric shock with an instrument known as a **defibrillator**.

Around the heart there is a double membranous sac known as the **pericardium** (peri-, prefix meaning around). Between the membranes is the pericardial cavity containing a small amount of fluid. The combining forms of pericardium are **pericard/o** and **pericardi/o**.



WORD EXERCISE 2

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (a) inflammation of the pericardium _____

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (b) cardio/**pericardio**/pexy _____

- (c) **pericardio**/centesis _____

- (d) **pericardi**/ectomy _____

Blood flow through the heart is controlled by **valves**. Between the right atrium and the right ventricle there is a **tricuspid valve** (with three flaps or cusps) that allows blood to flow from the right atrium to the right ventricle but not in the opposite direction. Similarly there is a valve on the left side of the heart that allows blood to flow from the left atrium to the left ventricle. This is known as the **bicuspid valve** or the **mitral valve** (with two flaps or cusps).

Root

Valv

(From Latin **valva**, meaning fold. In medicine it refers to a valve, i.e. a fold or membrane in a tube or passage permitting flow in one direction only.)

Combining forms **Valv/o**



WORD EXERCISE 3

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) surgical repair of a heart valve _____

- (b) removal of a heart valve _____

Valvul/o is a New Latin combining form also derived from *valva*; using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (c) cardio/**valvulo**/tome _____

Note. -tome comes from *tomon*, meaning cutter.

- (d) **valvul**/ar _____

- (e) **valvo**/tomy _____

The blood vessels

Blood circulates through a closed system of blood vessels throughout the body. It flows away from the heart in arteries that divide into smaller arterioles and then into capillaries. Blood flows back to the heart through venules and then into larger vessels known as veins. The system that supplies blood to the tissues is known as the **arterial system** and that which takes it away the **venous system**. Now we will look at some of the terms concerned with blood vessels.

Root

Vas

(A Latin word, meaning **vessel**. Here it refers to blood vessels of any type.)

Combining forms

Vas/o

Vascul/o, also derived from *vas*, has the same meaning.



WORD EXERCISE 4

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **vaso**/spasm _____

Blood vessels can widen (**vasodilatation**) and they can narrow (**vasoconstriction**) because of the activity of smooth muscle in their walls. If a vessel widens then the blood pressure within it falls. Some drugs are designed to stimulate this action, i.e. reducing blood pressure, and are known as **vasodilators** and antihypertensives.

- (b) a/**vascul**/ar _____

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words using **vascul/o** that mean:

- (c) inflammation of blood vessels _____

- (d) disease of blood vessels _____

Angi

(From a Greek word **angeion**, meaning vessel, in this case a blood vessel.)

Combining forms **Angio/o**

**WORD EXERCISE 5**

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **angio**/gram
- (b) **angio**/cardio/gram
- (c) **angio**/cardio/graphy

Digital subtraction angiography

Angiography is the technique of making X-rays or images of blood vessels. Both arteries and veins can be made visible on radiographic film following the injection of a contrast medium. This results in an X-ray film on which the injected vessels cast a shadow showing their size, shape and location.

Digital subtraction angiography (DSA) is very similar, except, instead of having an X-ray film, the X-rays are detected electronically and a computer builds an image of the blood vessels on a monitor.

One problem in visualizing blood vessels is that overlying tissues cast an image on the picture. To eliminate these unwanted images, an X-ray is taken before and after dye is injected. A computer then subtracts the first image from the second, removing the interfering image. The picture produced by DSA is superior to a film-based angiogram.

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (d) study of blood vessels
- (e) surgical repair of blood vessels

A common surgical repair is a balloon angioplasty. In this procedure a catheter containing an inflatable balloon is inserted into a narrowed vessel (see Fig. 22). When the balloon is inflated and moved along the lining any fatty plaques are displaced and the flow of blood through the vessel is restored.

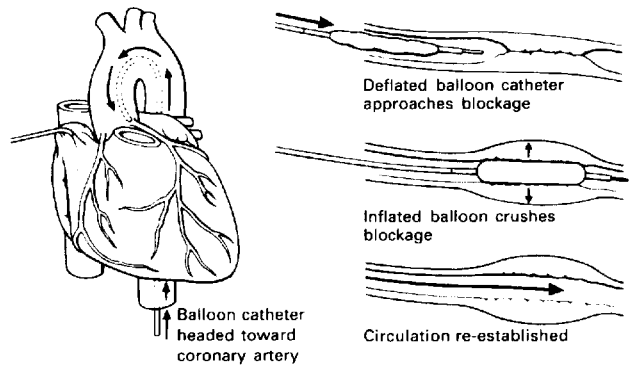


Figure 22 Balloon angioplasty

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (f) **angi**/oma
- (g) **angi**/ectasis
- (h) **angi**/poiesis
- (i) **angi**/sclerosis

The above roots refer generally to blood vessels. Now we will look at roots that refer to specific types of vessel.

Root**Aort**

(From Greek **aorte**, meaning great vessel. It refers to the largest artery in the body, the aorta. This leaves the left ventricle of the heart and divides into smaller arteries that supply all body systems with oxygenated blood.)

Combining forms **Aort/o**

**WORD EXERCISE 6**

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) any disease of the aorta
- (b) technique of X-raying the aorta

Root**Arter**

(From a Greek word **arteria**, meaning artery. The function of arteries is to move blood away from the heart. They divide into smaller arterioles and then into capillaries that exchange materials with the tissue cells.)

Combining forms **Arter/i/o**



WORD EXERCISE 7

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words using **arteri/o** that mean:

- (a) suturing of an artery _____
- (b) condition of hardening of arteries _____

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (c) **end/arter/ectomy** _____
(In this procedure fatty deposits are removed from the lining of the artery.)
- (d) **arterio/necr/osis** _____
- (e) **arterio/stenosis** _____

Root

Vena cav

(From Latin **vena cavum**, meaning hollow vein, it is used to mean **venae cavae**.)

Combining forms **Venacav/o**

Venae cavae are the great veins of the body; the **superior vena cava** drains blood from the head and the **inferior vena cava** drains blood from the lower parts of the body. They pass their blood into the right atrium of the heart.



WORD EXERCISE 8

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **venacavo/gram** _____
- (b) **venacavo/graphy** _____

Root

Ven

(From a Latin word **vena**, meaning vein. The function of veins is to transfer blood back to the heart. Capillaries are drained by small vessels called **venules**, these join and form larger veins. Unlike arteries, veins contain valves that prevent the backflow of blood.)

Combining forms **Ven/o**



WORD EXERCISE 9

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **ven/ectasis** _____
- (b) **veno/clysis** _____
- (c) **ven/ous** _____

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (d) X-ray picture of a vein
(after injection of opaque dye) _____
- (e) technique of making an
X-ray of a vein/venous system _____

Root

Phleb

(From a Greek word **phlebos**, meaning vein.)

Combining forms **Phleb/o**



WORD EXERCISE 10

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **phleb/arteri/ectasis** _____
- (b) **phlebo/clysis** _____
- (c) **phlebo/tomy** _____

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (d) **phlebo/stasis** _____
- (e) **phlebo/mano/meter** _____
- (f) **phlebo/lith** _____

Root

Thromb

(From a Greek word **thrombos**, meaning a clot. Clots are formed mainly of platelets, fibrin and blood cells. They can block blood vessels, restricting or stopping the flow of blood.)

Combining forms **Thromb/o**



WORD EXERCISE 11

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **thrombo**/poiesis
- (b) **thrombo**/phleb/itis
- (c) **thrombo**/end/arter/ectomy

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (d) abnormal condition of having a clot
- (e) removal of a clot

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (f) **thrombo**/genesis
- (g) **thrombo**/lysis

The sudden blocking of an artery by a clot is referred to as an **embolism**. Emboli can be caused by thrombi as well as other foreign materials, such as fat, air and infective material. The combining form **embol/o** is used when referring to an **embolus**, e.g. as in **embolectomy**.

Thrombolytic therapy

Recently developed enzymes are being used to dissolve blood clots in situ. The drug streptokinase, extracted from bacteria, can be injected into the coronary vessels to lyse a clot and thereby restore blood in the coronary system. The thrombolytic drugs streptokinase, alteplase and anistreplase have been shown to reduce mortality when given by the intravenous route following a heart attack (acute myocardial infarction).

Root

Ather

(From a Greek word **athere**, meaning porridge. Used to mean fatty plaques on walls of vessels.)

Combining forms **Ather/o**

Atheroma is used to refer to another very common disorder of the blood vessels. The meaning of this word is a porridge-like tumour but it is used to describe the

yellow plaques of fatty material which are deposited in the lining of the arteries. The presence of such deposits is believed to be partly related to diets rich in certain types of fat. Atheroma in coronary arteries increases the chance of their becoming blocked, thus predisposing the heart to myocardial infarction (death of heart muscle due to lack of oxygen, i.e. a heart attack).



WORD EXERCISE 12

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **athero**/genesis
- (b) **athero**/embolus

Atherosclerosis refers to the hardening of arteries and to the presence of atheroma.

Root

Aneurysm

(From Greek **aneurysma**, meaning a dilatation. Here it is used to refer to a dilated vessel, usually an artery. It is due to a local fault in the wall through defect, disease or injury. An aneurysm appears as a pulsating swelling that can rupture.)

Combining forms **Aneurysm/o**



WORD EXERCISE 13

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **aneurysmo**/plasty
- (b) **aneurysmo**/rrhaphy

Root

Sphygm

(From a Greek word **sphygmōs**, meaning pulsation. We use it to refer to the pulse that can be felt wherever an artery is near to the surface of the body. The pulsation is due to the heart forcing blood into the arterial system at ventricular systole (contraction). Pulse rate is therefore a measure of heart rate.)

Combining forms **Sphygm/o**



WORD EXERCISE 14

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **sphygmo**/dynamo/meter _____
- (b) **sphygmo**/mano/meter _____
- (c) **sphygmo**/metry _____

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (d) **sphygmo**/graph _____
- (e) **sphygmo**/gram
(refers to movements created
by arterial pulse) _____
- (f) **sphygmo**/cardio/graph _____

Note. Mano comes from Greek *manos*, meaning rare. Manometers were first used for measuring rarefied air, i.e. gases. The combining form **man/o** is now used to mean pressure.

Figure 23 is a drawing of an instrument that uses a manometer to measure blood pressure. Two pressures are measured: the **systolic** pressure when the ventricles of the heart are forcing blood into the circulation, and

the **diastolic** pressure which is the pressure within the vessels when the heart is dilating and refilling.

The sphygmomanometer can be used to detect **hypertension**, i.e. a persistently high arterial blood pressure, or **hypotension**, an abnormally low blood pressure. Both of these conditions have a variety of causes.

The **stethoscope** (Fig. 24) is used in conjunction with the sphygmomanometer to listen to the sounds made by blood flowing through the brachial artery when recording the blood pressure.

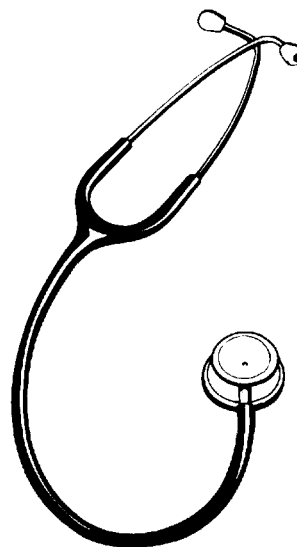


Figure 24 Stethoscope

Note. In medicine the suffix *-scope* usually refers to an instrument for visual examination. Here we are using it in stethoscope, an instrument used for listening to body sounds. We can use it in this way because *scope* comes from the Greek word *skopein* which also means to examine. **Steth/o** means breast, therefore stethoscope means an instrument to examine the breast.

Image Not Available

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

In this unit we have named many instruments used for examining the cardiovascular system. Two new combining forms have been used with them and we will revise them before completing the next exercise.

mano

means pressure. In sphygm**omanometer** it refers to the pressure of the pulse, i.e. arterial blood pressure.

dynam

means power. In sphygm**odynamometer** it refers to the force of the pulse (volume and pressure).

Figure 23 Sphygmomanometer

Note. Words ending in **-graph** usually refer to a recording instrument and those ending in **-scope** to a viewing instrument (except for the stethoscope which is used for listening).

Revise the names of all instruments mentioned in this unit and then complete Exercises 15 and 16.



WORD EXERCISE 15

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) cardioscope	1. instrument that measures arterial blood pressure (pressure of the pulse)
(b) cardiograph	2. instrument used to cut a heart valve
(c) electro-cardiograph	3. technique of X-raying heart and blood vessels after injection of radio-opaque dye
(d) cardiovalvotome	4. instrument that records heart (beat)
(e) angiocardio-graphy	5. instrument that records the electrical activity of the heart
(f) sphygmo-manometer	6. instrument to view the heart



WORD EXERCISE 16

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) echocardiography	1. recording of heart sounds
(b) sphygmocardiograph	2. instrument used to listen to sounds within the chest
(c) stethoscope	3. tracing or recording of the electrical activity of the heart

Column A	Column B	Column C
(d) phonocardiogram	4. instrument that measures the pressure within a vein
(e) electrocardiogram	5. instrument that records pulse and heart beat
(f) phlebomanometer	6. technique of recording heart using reflected ultrasound



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 42.



CASE HISTORY 4

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history. To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on cardiac failure; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Cardiac failure

Mr D, a 65-year-old male builder, was referred by his GP to the **Cardiology** Unit. He had been healthy until 8 months previously but since then he has developed fatigue, exertion dyspnoea and paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea. He also described discomfort in his chest and felt his heart was 'thumping'.

On the morning of admission he had become unwell and was pale, cold and sweating and seemed confused. Initial examination revealed tender, smooth hepatic enlargement and the presence of ascites. His jugular venous pulse was raised and pitting oedema (Am. edema) was present in his ankles. Auscultation revealed a left ventricular third sound with **tachycardia** (a gallop rhythm) and crepitations were heard at the lung bases. Mr D was connected to a 12 lead **electrocardiograph** to monitor his heart rate and rhythm. A posteroanterior chest X-ray revealed **cardiomegaly** and pulmonary oedema and he was diagnosed as having acute **biventricular** heart failure.

Mr D was treated with furosemide (frusemide) a diuretic to promote renal excretion of fluid. The loss of fluid provided symptomatic and haemodynamic (Am. hemodynamic) benefits relieving his dyspnoea and reducing ventricular filling pressure. **Cardiac** output was improved by **vasodilator** therapy with ACE inhibitors in combination with positive inotropic agents.

WORD HELP

ACE inhibitor angiotensin-converting enzyme (drug used to reduce blood pressure)

ascites free fluid in the abdominal cavity

auscultation a method of listening to body sounds for diagnostic purposes

crepitations rattling or crackling sounds

diuretic agent that increases the flow of urine

dyspnoea difficult/laboured breathing

GP general practitioner (family doctor)

haemodynamic pertaining to the force of blood

inotropic pertaining to affecting the contraction of (heart) muscle increasing or decreasing the force of contraction

jugular pertaining to the neck/throat

nocturnal pertaining to during the night

oedema (Am. edema) accumulation of fluid in a tissue

paroxysmal intensification of symptoms / an attack

posteroanterior from the back/posterior to the front

pitting when pressure on a tissue leaves a mark

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) cardiology
- (b) venous
- (c) tachycardia
- (d) electrocardiograph
- (e) cardiomegaly
- (f) biventricular
- (g) cardiac
- (h) vasodilator

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the cardiovascular system:

Aneurysm/o	aneurysm
Angi/o	vessel
Aort/o	aorta
Arteri/o	artery
Ather/o	atheroma
Atri/o	atrium
Cardi/o	heart
Embol/o	embolism
My/o	muscle
Myocardi/o	myocardium
Pericardi/o	pericardium
Phleb/o	vein
Sphygm/o	pulse
Steth/o	breast
Thromb/o	thrombus/clot
Valv/o	valve
Valvul/o	valve
Vas/o	vessel
Vascul/o	vessel
Venacav/o	vena cava
Ven/o	vein
Ventricul/o	ventricle

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the cardiovascular system are listed below. Note, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

AAA	abdominal aortic aneurysm
AF	atrial fibrillation
AMI	acute myocardial infarction
CABG	coronary artery bypass grafting
CAD	coronary artery disease
CCU	coronary care unit
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation
CT	coronary thrombosis
ECG	electrocardiogram
iv	intravenous
MI	myocardial infarction
MS	mitral stenosis



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

a-	.....
bi-	.....
brady-	.....
dextro-	.....
electro-	.....
endo-	.....
hyper-	.....
hypo-	.....
pan-	.....
peri-	.....
tachy-	.....
tri-	.....

Combining forms of word roots

aneurysm/o	.....
angi/o	.....
aort/o	.....
arteri/o	.....
ather/o	.....
atri/o	.....
cardi/o	.....
ech/o	.....
embol/o	.....
dynam/o	.....
man/o	.....

my/o	.....
necr/o	.....
pericardi/o	.....
phleb/o	.....
phon/o	.....
sphygm/o	.....
sten/o	.....
steth/o	.....
thromb/o	.....
valv/o	.....
valvul/o	.....
vas/o	.....
vascul/o	.....
venacav/o	.....
ven/o	.....
ventricul/o	.....

Suffixes

-algia	.....
-ar	.....
-centesis	.....
-clysis	.....
-ectasis	.....
-ectomy	.....
-genesis	.....
-gram	.....
-graph	.....
-graphy	.....
-ia	.....
-ic	.....
-itis	.....
-ium	.....

-lith _____

-logy _____

-lysis _____

-megaly _____

-meter _____

-metry _____

-oma _____

-osis _____

-ous _____

-pathy _____

-pexy _____

-plasty _____

-poiesis _____

-rrhage _____

-rrhaphy _____

-sclerosis _____

-scope _____

-stasis _____

-tome _____

-tomy _____

-um _____

(c) endocardi/o _____

(d) valv/o _____

(e) pericardi/o _____

(f) myocardi/o _____

Score

6

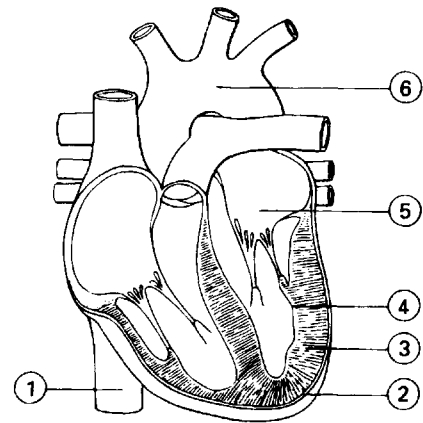


Figure 25 The heart

Test 4B

Prefixes and suffixes

Match each prefix or suffix in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) a-	_____	1. to hold back/check
(b) bi-	_____	2. formation (i)
(c) brady-	_____	3. formation (ii)
(d) -clysis	_____	4. infusion/injection
(e) dextro-	_____	5. two
(f) -ectasis	_____	6. fast
(g) electro-	_____	7. dilatation
(h) endo-	_____	8. without

▶ NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT ◀



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 4A

Below are some combining forms that refer to the anatomy of the cardiovascular system. Indicate which part of the system they refer to by putting a number from the diagram (Fig. 25) next to each word.

(a) aort/o _____

(b) venacav/o _____

Column A	Column B	Column C
(i) -genesis	9. fixation
(j) isch-	10. right
(k) -megaly	11. around
(l) pan-	12. electrical
(m) peri-	13. stopping/cessation
(n) -pexy	14. hardening
(o) -poiesis	15. slow
(p) -sclerosis	16. tissue/thing
(q) -stasis	17. three
(r) tachy-	18. all
(s) tri-	19. enlargement
(t) -um	20. inside

Score

20

Column A	Column B	Column C
(h) ech/o	8. heart
(i) man/o	9. vessel (i)
(j) my/o	10. vessel (ii)
(k) necr/o	11. force
(l) phleb/o	12. aneurysm (swelling)
(m) phon/o	13. pressure/rare
(n) sphygm/o	14. muscle
(o) sten/o	15. vein (i)
(p) steth/o	16. vein (ii)
(q) thromb/o	17. clot
(r) valv/o	18. narrowing
(s) vas/o	19. pulse
(t) ven/o	20. breast

Score

20

Test 4C

Combining forms of word roots

Match each combining form in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) aneurysm/o	1. echo/reflected sound
(b) angi/o	2. artery
(c) aort/o	3. death/corpse
(d) arteri/o	4. sound
(e) ather/o	5. valve
(f) cardi/o	6. aorta
(g) dynam/o	7. porridge (yellow plaque on wall of blood vessel)

Test 4D

Write the meaning of:

(a) cardiovalvulitis	.....
(b) aortorrhaphy	.....
(c) angioscope	.....
(d) phlebostenosis	.....
(e) thromboendarteritis	.....

Score

5

Test 4E

Build words that mean:

- (a) Inflammation of an artery associated with a thrombosis _____
- (b) Puncture of the heart _____
- (c) Disease of an artery _____
- (d) Removal of a vein _____
- (e) Study of heart and blood vessels (use angi/o) _____

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

The blood

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 5 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the blood
- build medical words relating to blood
- associate medical terms with the components of blood
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the blood.

Exercise guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

a-	without
an-	without/not
ellipto-	shaped like an ellipse
hyper-	above/abnormal increase
hypo-	below/abnormal decrease
macro-	large
micro-	small
normo-	normal/rule
peri-	around
poikil/o	varied/irregular
poly-	many

Roots/Combining forms

cyt/e/o	cell
dynam/o	force
fibr/o	fibre
is/o	equal/same
path/o	disease
pericardi/o	pericardium
septic/o	sepsis/infection/putrefaction

Suffixes

-aemia	condition of blood
-apheresis	removal
-blast	germ cell/embryonic/immature
-chromia	condition of colour/haemoglobin
-crit	separate/device for measuring cells
-cytosis	increased number of cells
-emia (Am.)	condition of blood
-genesis	capable of causing/pertaining to formation
-globin	protein
-ia	condition of
-ic	pertaining to
-ium	structure/anatomical part
-logy	study of
-lysis	breakdown/disintegration
-meter	measuring instrument
-oma	tumour/swelling
-osis	abnormal condition/disease of
-penia	condition of lack of/deficiency
-poiesis	formation
-ptysis	spitting up
-rrhage	bursting forth (of blood/bleeding)
-stasis	stopping/controlling/cessation of movement
-toxic	pertaining to poisoning
-um	thing/structure/anatomical part
-uria	condition of urine

Blood (a stained smear)

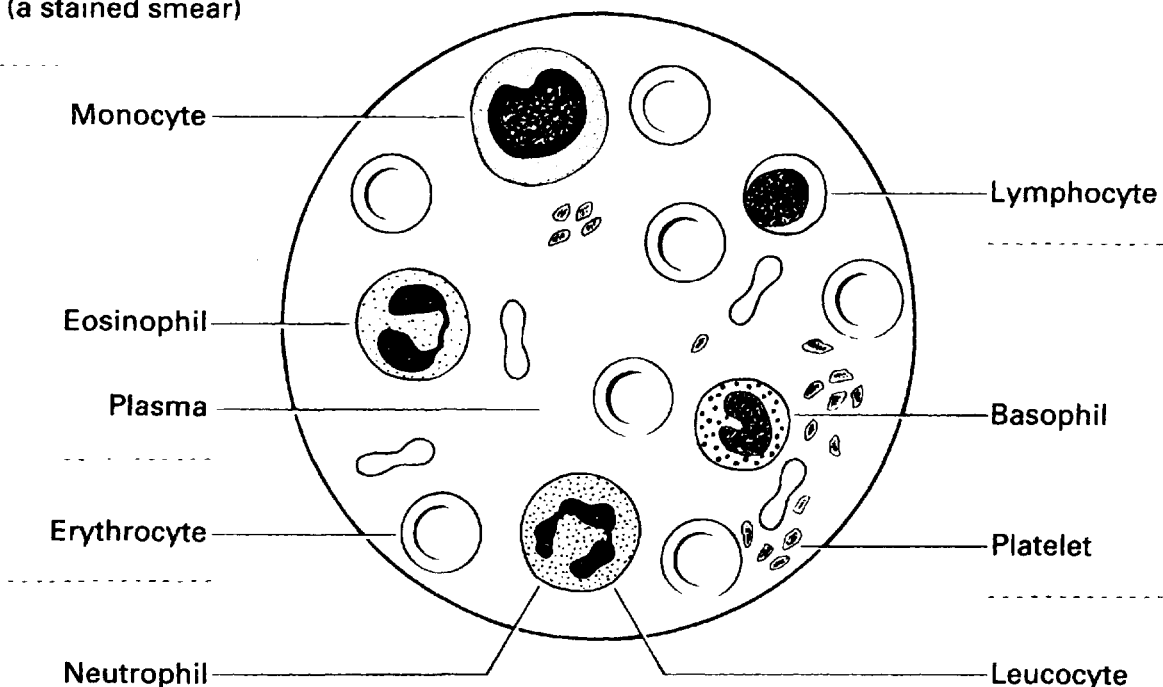


Figure 26 Blood



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–7, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figure 26 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line – more than one component may relate to the same position. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 61.)

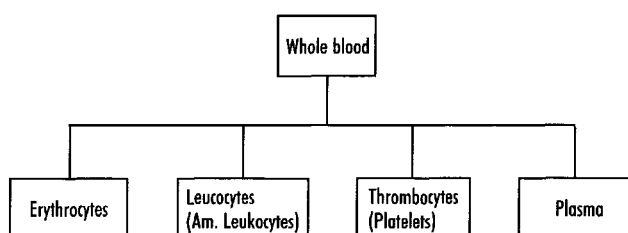
Erythrocyt/o
Haem/o

Leucocyt/o
Lymphocyt/o

Plasma-
Thrombocyt/o

The blood

Blood is a complex fluid classified as a connective tissue because it contains cells, plus an intercellular matrix known as plasma. Here we can see the main components of whole blood:



The blood cells carry out a variety of functions: erythrocytes (red blood cells) transport gases whilst leucocytes (white blood cells) defend the body against invasion by microorganisms and foreign antigens. Thrombocytes, or platelets, are actually fragments of larger cells concerned with the formation of blood clots following injury.

The plasma carries nutrients, wastes, hormones, antibodies and blood-clotting proteins. The study of blood is very important in medicine for the diagnosis of disease.

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of the unit to complete Word Exercises 1–7 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Haem

(From a Greek word **haima**, meaning blood.)

Combining forms

Haem/o, haemat/o, -aem-
(Am. **Hem/o, hemat/o, -em-**)



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **haemato**/logy
(Am. hemato/logy)
- (b) **haemo**/patho/logy
(Am. hemo/patho/logy)
- (c) **haemo**/dynam/ics
(Am. hemo/dynam/ics)
- (d) **haemo**/poiesis
(Am. hemo/poiesis)
- (e) **haemo**/stasis
(Am. hemo/stasis)
- (f) **haemo**/pericardi/um (Fig. 27)
(Am. hemo/pericardi/um)

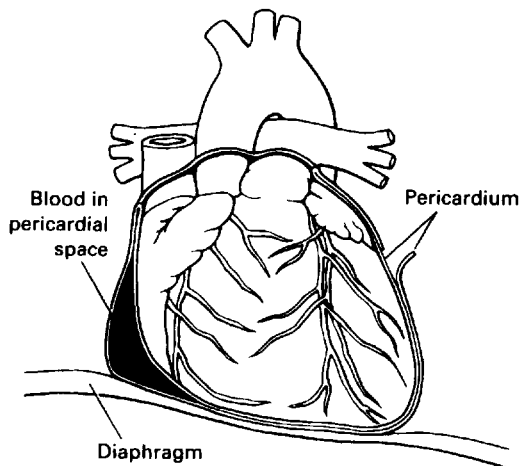


Figure 27 Haemopericardium (Am. hemopericardium)

- (g) **haemo**/ptysis
(Am. **hemo**/ptysis)

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (h) Tumour/swelling containing blood
- (i) Breakdown/disintegration of blood

- (j) Condition of blood in the urine
- (k) Bursting forth of blood

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (l) poly/cyt/**haem**/ia
(Am. poly/cyt/hem/ia)
- (m) an/**aem**/ia
(Am. an/em/ia)
- (n) septic/**aem**/ia
(Am. septic/em/ia)

Haemoglobin is a red pigment (globular protein) found inside red blood cells, it functions to transport oxygen and carbon dioxide. The haemoglobin present in the blood is of great importance to the efficiency of gaseous transport and several types of investigation are performed to estimate its concentration.

The three medical terms that follow use the combining form **haemoglobin/o** meaning haemoglobin.

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (o) **haemo/globino**/meter
(Am. hemo/globino/meter)

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (p) **haemo/globin**
(Am. hemo/globin)
- (q) **haemoglobin**/uria
(Am. hemoglobin/uria)

The amount of haemoglobin within red blood cells can be estimated and abnormal levels are found in some patients. Terms describing these conditions have been formed from the suffix **-chromia** (from Greek *chromos*, meaning colour). Here the colour refers to the red pigment haemoglobin.

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (r) hypo/**chrom**/ia
- (s) hyper/**chrom**/ia
- (t) normo/**chrom**/ic

Another common term relating to the colour of haemoglobin is **cyanosis**. **Cyan/o** means blue. In the absence of oxygen, haemoglobin develops a bluish tinge. Nailbeds, lips and skin show signs of cyanosis (i.e. look blue) when oxygenation of the blood is deficient. Tissues deprived of oxygen can also be described as **anoxic**.

Now we will examine word roots which refer to the different types of blood cells. All of these cells are suspended in the liquid matrix of the blood known as plasma.

Root

Erythr

(From a Greek word **erythros**, meaning red. Here it is used to refer to red blood cells, i.e. erythrocytes.)

Combining forms **Erythro/o**



WORD EXERCISE 2

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **erythro**/penia
- (b) **erythro**/genesis
- (c) **erythro**/blast
(This refers to the cell which eventually forms the mature erythrocyte.)

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (d) **erythro**/poiesis
- (e) **erythrocyto**/lysis
- (f) **erythrocyt**/haem/ia
- (Am. erythrocyt/hem/ia)

This last condition is synonymous with **erythrocytosis** meaning an abnormal condition of red cells, i.e. too many red cells. This condition is usually a physiological response to low levels of oxygen circulating in the blood. Besides changes in number, individual erythrocytes can suffer from various abnormalities, some of which are listed below.

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (g) **micro**/cytosis
- (NB: Cytosis is used in (g) to (k) to mean too many red blood cells.)
- (h) **macro**/cytosis
- (i) **ellipto**/cytosis
- (j) **an/iso**/cytosis
- (k) **poikilo**/cytosis
- (l) **normo**/cyt/ic

Root

Reticul

(From a Latin word **reticulum**, meaning small net. Here, it refers to a very young erythrocyte lacking a nucleus called a reticulocyte; its cytoplasm gives it a net-like appearance with basic dyes.)

Combining forms **Reticul/o**



WORD EXERCISE 3

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) an immature erythrocyte
- (b) condition of too many immature erythrocytes
- (c) condition of deficiency of reticulocytes

Root

Leuc

(From a Greek word **leukos**, meaning white. Here it is referring to white blood cells, i.e. leucocytes.)

Combining forms **Leuco/o, leuk/o**
(**Leuco/o** is more commonly used in the UK, **leuk/o** in America.)



WORD EXERCISE 4

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) condition of deficiency of white cells
- (b) the formation of white blood cells

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) **leuco**/cyto/genesis
- (Am. leuko/cyto/genesis)
- (d) **leuk**/aem/ia
- (Am. leuk/em/ia. This is a malignant condition, i.e. a type of cancer.)
- (e) **leuco**/cytosis
- (Am. leuko/cytosis. This refers to an excess of white cells as seen during infection.)

(f) **leuco**/cyt/oma
(Am. leuko/cyt/oma)

(g) **leuco**/blast
(Am. leuko/blast)

(h) **leuco**/blast/osis
(Am. leuko/blast/osis)

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(i) **leuco**/toxic
(Am. leuko/toxic)

Leucocyte is a general term meaning white cell but there are many types of white cell. Some leucocytes contain granules and are known as **granulocytes**, those without granules are called **agranulocytes** (*a-* meaning without, *granul/o-* granule and *-cyte* cell).

Among the commonest granulocytes are polymorphonuclear granulocytes or polymorphs. These all have nuclei which show many shapes (*poly* – many, *morpho* – shape). There are three types of polymorph:

Neutrophils

From *neutro*, meaning neither, and *philein*, meaning to love. These cells stain well with (love) **neutral dyes**. Neutrophils engulf microorganisms that have entered the blood and destroy them. These cells are sometimes referred to as phagocytes (*phago* means eat, i.e. cells that eat). The process of engulfing particles is known as phagocytosis.

Basophils

These cells stain well with **basic** (alkaline) dyes.

Eosinophils

These cells stain well with acid dyes like **eosin**, a red dye.

Among the agranular leucocytes are lymphocytes and large monocytes (*mono* means single). The latter can leave the blood and wander to the site of infections. Lymphocytes will be studied in Unit 6.

Note. The condition **pancytopenia** refers to an abnormal depression of all the cellular components of the blood (*pan-* meaning all, *cyt/o-* cell and *-penia* condition of deficiency).

Root

Myel

(From a Greek word **myelos**, meaning marrow. Here it is used to refer to the bone marrow which gives rise to the granulocyte, a type of white blood cell.)

Combining forms **Myel/o**



WORD EXERCISE 5

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **myelo**/cyte

(b) **myelo**/fibr/osis

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

(c) germ cell of the marrow

(d) tumour of myeloid tissue



WORD EXERCISE 6

We have already used the combining form **thromb/o** meaning clot; here it is combined with cyte to make **thrombocyte**. Thrombocytes or **platelets** are fragments of cells that circulate in the blood. They play a major role in the clotting of blood.

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **thrombocyto**/penia

(b) **thrombocyto**/poiesis

(c) **thrombocyto**/lysis

(d) **thrombocyto**/pathy

The numbers and proportions of blood cells found in whole blood are important in the diagnosis of disease. The percentage volume of erythrocytes is known as the **haematocrit** (Am. hematocrit) (from Greek *krites*, meaning separate/judge/discern). The word haematocrit is also used for the apparatus that measures the volume of erythrocytes in a blood sample.

Now write down what is meant by:

(e) **thrombocyto**/crit

The number of blood cells can be counted using a device known as a **haemocytometer**. The simplest type of counter consists of a specially designed microscope slide that holds a precise volume of blood and a grid for the manual counting of cells. Today, the process of counting cells is performed automatically in a Coulter

counter. A doctor may request particular types of cell count to aid diagnosis, for example:

Blood count

A count of the number of red cells and/or white cells in a sample of blood. Reference intervals for the number of cells in a sample from a healthy person are:

Red blood cells $4.5\text{--}6.5 \times 10^{12}/\text{l}$ in males, $4.0\text{--}6.0 \times 10^{12}/\text{l}$ in females

White cells $3.5\text{--}11.0 \times 10^9/\text{l}$.

Differential count

A count of the proportions of different types of cells in stained smears. Examples of reference intervals for the number of cells in a sample from a healthy person are:

Neutrophils (30–75%) $1.5\text{--}7.5 \times 10^9/\text{l}$

Basophils (<1%) $<0.1 \times 10^9/\text{l}$

Eosinophils (1–6%) $0.04\text{--}0.4 \times 10^9/\text{l}$.

Platelet count

A count of the number of platelets in a sample of blood.

The reference interval for the number of platelets in a sample from a healthy person is: $150\text{--}400 \times 10^9/\text{l}$.

Techniques have been developed to take blood from a donor, remove wanted or unwanted components from it and return the cells in fresh or frozen plasma back into the body. When plasma is removed the technique is known as **plasmapheresis**. Plasma refers to the liquid matrix of the blood in which cells are suspended and nutrients and wastes dissolved. Apheresis is from the Greek *hairein*, meaning take/remove.

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(f) erythrocyt/**apheresis**

(g) thrombocyt/**apheresis**

(h) leuc/**apheresis**

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

Revise the names of all instruments and procedures mentioned in this unit and then complete Exercise 7.



WORD EXERCISE 7

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) plasmapheresis	1.	count of numbers of blood cells/Litre of blood

Column A	Column B	Column C
(b) differential count	2.	instrument that estimates the percentage volume of red cells in blood, or the actual value (as a percentage of the volume) of red cells in blood
(c) haematocrit	3.	estimate of proportions/numbers of white cells in a stained smear
(d) haemoglobinometer	4.	continuous removal of plasma from blood and retransfusion of cells
(e) blood count	5.	instrument which measures amount of haemoglobin in a sample



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 56.



CASE HISTORY 5

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on aplastic anaemia (Am. anemia); unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Aplastic anaemia (Am. anemia)

Mr E, a 44-year-old chemistry teacher and former industrial chemist, had been unwell for many weeks before seeking advice from his GP. He complained of headache, breathlessness, fatigue and palpitation; the previous day he had become concerned about his condition following a severe epistaxis and **haemoptysis** (Am. hemoptysis). On examination he appeared to have a lower respiratory tract infection and oral thrush. Initial blood investigation revealed a **pancytopenia**, and he was referred to the Haematology (Am. Hematology) Department.

Mr E looked pale and was troubled by ulcerative lesions in his mouth and pharynx. There was no lymphadenopathy or hepatosplenomegaly. A bone marrow trephine biopsy and smear confirmed a hypocellularity with the virtual absence of reticulocytes; no leukaemic or neoplastic cells were observed. Detailed haematological (Am. hematological) examination revealed a normochromic, normocytic anaemia with granulocytopenia and thrombocytopenia.

Mr E was diagnosed with a severe, secondary aplastic anaemia (Am. anemia) and was advised of its serious prognosis. He resigned from his post as a teacher and a programme of supportive care aimed at treating his respiratory tract infection was established. He is currently being assessed for bone marrow transplantation by his HLA identical brother.

- (c) leukaemic
(Am. leukemic)
- (d) normochromic
- (e) normocytic
- (f) granulocytopenia
- (g) thrombocytopenia
- (h) anaemia
(Am. anemia)

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

WORD HELP

- aplastic** pertaining to without growth/unable to form new cells
- epistaxis** a nose bleed
- GP** general practitioner (family doctor)
- haematological** pertaining to study of blood (Am. hematological)
- hepatosplenomegaly** enlargement of the spleen and liver
- HLA identical** human leucocyte (Am. leukocyte) antigen, important for cross-matching of donor and recipient
- hypocellularity** condition of below normal number of cells
- lesion** pathological change in a tissue
- lymphadenopathy** disease of lymph nodes
- neoplastic** pertaining to new, abnormal growth of cells (cancer cells)
- oral thrush** fungal infection in the mouth (with *Candida albicans*)
- palpitation** unusual awareness of one's heartbeat
- prognosis** a forecast of the probable course and outcome of a disease
- reticulocyte** an immature erythrocyte
- secondary** here refers to a second type of aplastic anaemia caused by direct damage of the bone marrow by chemicals, radiation or infection
- smear** spreading material across a slide for microscopic examination
- trephine biopsy** using a trephine (device that removes a circular disc of bone) to take a sample of bone marrow
- ulcerative** having the form of an ulcer

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the blood:

Cyt/o	cell
Erythr/o	red
Erythrocyt/o	erythrocyte/red cell
Fibr/o	fibre
Globin/o	protein
Granul/o	granule
Haem/o	blood
Hem/o (Am.)	blood
Leuc/o	white
Leucocyt/o	leucocyte/white cell
Leuk/o (Am.)	white
Leukocyt/o (Am.)	leukocyte/white cell
Lymphocyt/o	lymph cell
Morph/o	shape/form
Myel/o	marrow
Phag/o	eating/consuming
Reticul/o	immature erythrocyte
Thromb/o	clot
Thrombocyt/o	platelet

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the blood are listed below. Note, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

ALL	acute lymphocytic leukaemia
AML	acute myeloid leukaemia
Diff	differential blood count (of cell types)

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) haemoptysis
(Am. hemoptysis)
- (b) pancytopenia

Abbreviations (contd.)

ESR	erythrocyte sedimentation rate
FBC	full blood count
Hb	haemoglobin (Am. hemoglobin)
Hct	haematocrit (Am. hematocrit)
MCH	mean corpuscular haemoglobin
MCHC	mean corpuscular haemoglobin concentration
PCV	peaked cell volume
RBC	red blood cell/count
WBC	white blood cell/count

NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

a-	
an-	
basi-	
ellipto-	
eosino-	
hyper-	
hypo-	
macro-	
micro-	
neutro-	
normo-	
pan-	

peri-	
poikil/o	
poly-	

Combining forms of word roots

cardi/o	
cyan/o	
cyt/o	
dynam/o	
erythr/o	
fibr/o	
globin/o	
granul/o	

haem/o (Am. hem/o)	
-----------------------	--

is/o	
leuc/o (Am. leuk/o)	

morph/o	
---------	--

myel/o	
--------	--

norm/o	
--------	--

ox/y	
------	--

path/o	
--------	--

phag/o	
--------	--

reticul/o	
-----------	--

sept/i	
--------	--

thromb/o	
----------	--

thrombocyt/o	
--------------	--

Suffixes

-aemia (Am. -emia)	
-----------------------	--

-apheresis	
------------	--

-blast _____

-chromia _____

-crit _____

-genesis _____

-ic _____

-ium _____

-logy _____

-lysis _____

-meter _____

-oma _____

-osis _____

-penia _____

-phil _____

-poiesis _____

-rrhage _____

-stasis _____

-toxic _____

-um _____

-uria _____

(c) haemoglobin/o _____
(Am. hemoglobin/o)

(d) leucocyt/o _____
(Am. leukocyt/o)

(e) thrombocyt/o _____

Score _____

5

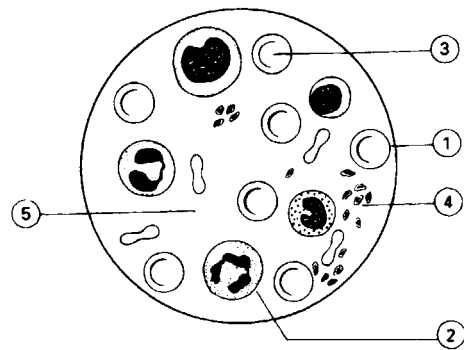


Figure 28 Blood

Test 5B

Prefixes, suffixes and combining forms of word roots

Match each word component in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) -aemia (Am. -emia)	_____	1. condition of urine
(b) an-	_____	2. disintegration/ breakdown
(c) is/o	_____	3. red
(d) baso-	_____	4. measuring instrument
(e) -blast	_____	5. abnormal condition/ disease of
(f) -chromia	_____	6. basic/alkaline
(g) ellipt/o	_____	7. white

▶ NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT ◀



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 5A

Below are some combining forms that relate to the components of blood. Indicate which part of the blood they refer to by putting a number from the diagram (Fig. 28) next to each word. You may use a number more than once.

(a) plasma _____

(b) erythr/o _____

Column A	Column B	Column C
(h) eosin/o	8. clot	
(i) erythr/o	9. equal/same	
(j) granul/o	10. condition of blood	
(k) leuc/o (Am. leuk/o)	11. disease	
(l) -lysis	12. granule	
(m) macro-	13. germ cell	
(n) -meter	14. cessation of flow	
(o) micro-	15. affinity for/loving	
(p) neutr/o	16. condition of deficiency/lack of	
(q) -osis	17. not/without	
(r) -pathy	18. small	
(s) -penia	19. condition of colour/haemoglobin	
(t) -phil	20. oval/elliptoid	
(u) sept/i	21. large	
(v) -stasis	22. eosin (acid dye)	
(w) thromb/o	23. neutral	
(x) -uria	24. decay/sepsis/infection	

Score

24

- (c) erythrocyturia
- (d) thrombocythaemia
(Am. thrombocytopenia)
- (e) phagocytolysis

Score

5

Test 5D

Build words that mean:

- (a) any disease of blood
(use haem/o, Am. hem/o)
- (b) condition of deficiency in
the number of red cells
- (c) a physician who specializes
in the study of blood
(use haemat/o, Am. hemat/o)
- (d) pertaining to the poisoning
of blood
- (e) condition of deficiency in the
number of neutrophils

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

Test 5C

Write the meaning of:

- (a) leucocyturia
(Am. leukocyturia)
- (b) myelocytosis

The lymphatic system and immunology

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 6 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the lymphatic system and immunology
- build medical words relating to the lymphatic system and immunology
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the lymphatic system and immunology.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

auto- self

Roots/Combining forms

aden/o	gland
angi/o	vessel
cyt/o – cyte	cell
hele/o	ulcer
hepat/o	liver

path/o	disease
pharyng/o	pharynx
port/o	portal vein

Suffixes

-aemia	condition of blood
-cele	swelling/protrusion/hernia
-cytosis	abnormal increase in cells
-eal	pertaining to
-ectasis	dilatation/stretching
-ectomy	removal of
-emia (Am.)	condition of blood
-genesis	pertaining to formation
-genic	pertaining to formation/originating in
-globulin	protein
-gram	X-ray/tracing/recording
-graphy	technique of recording/making X-ray
-ic	pertaining to
-itis	inflammation of
-ity	state/condition
-logy	study of
-lysis	breakdown/disintegration
-malacia	condition of softening
-megaly	enlargement
-oma	tumour/swelling
-osis	abnormal condition/disease of
-pathy	disease of
-pexy	surgical fixation/fix in place
-poiesis	formation
-rrhagia	condition of bursting forth
-rrhea (Am.)	excessive discharge/flow
-rrhoea	excessive discharge/flow
-tic	pertaining to
-tome	cutting instrument

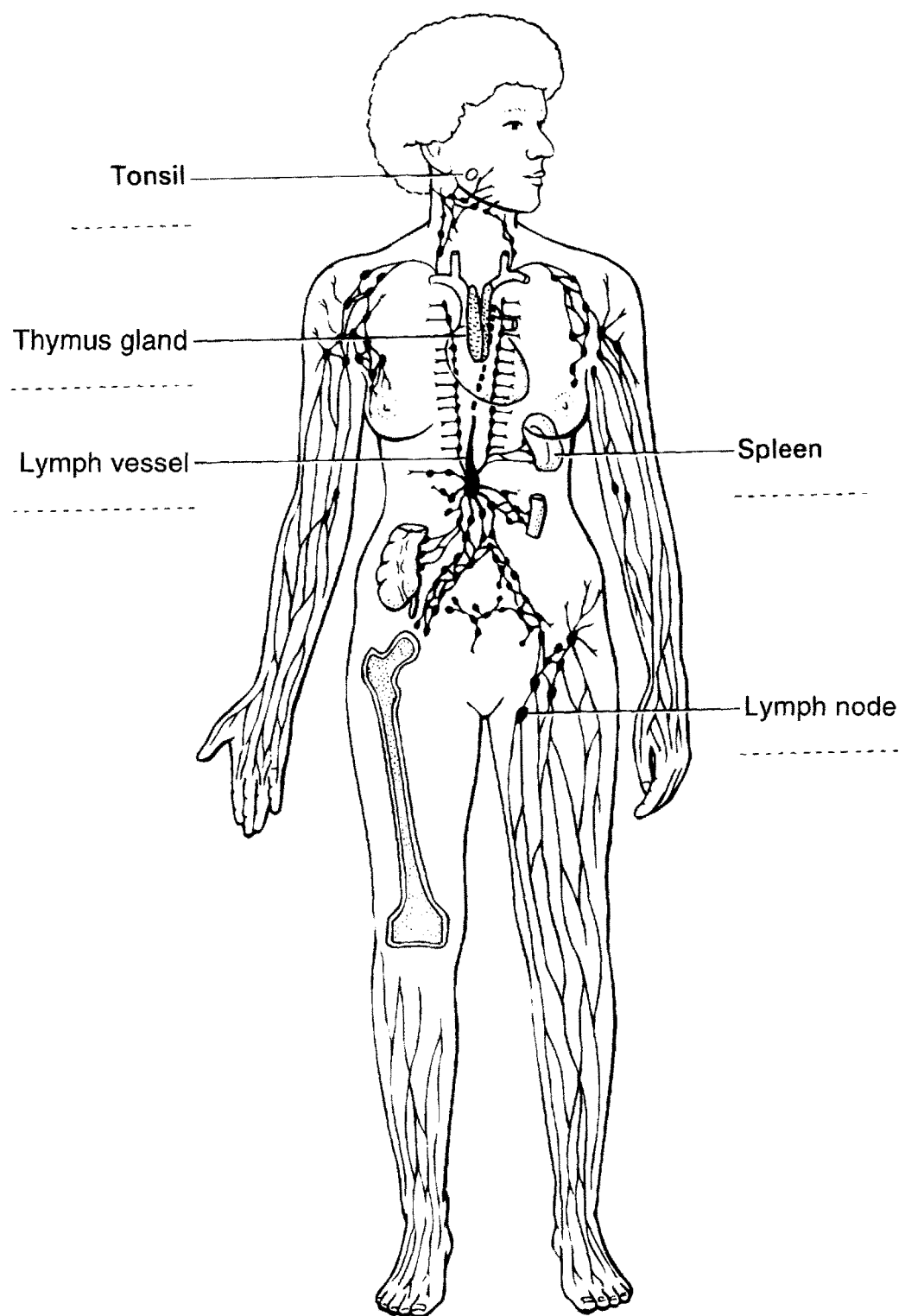


Figure 29 The lymphatic system



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–8, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figure 29 by placing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 72.)

Lymphaden/o
Lymphangi/o

Splen/o
Thym/o

Tonsill/o

The lymphatic system

The lymphatic system consists of capillaries, vessels, ducts and nodes that transport a fluid known as lymph. Lymph is formed from the tissue fluid that surrounds all tissue cells. It performs three important functions: (i) transportation of lymphocytes that defend the body against infection and foreign antigens, (ii) transportation of lipids and (iii) by its formation, the drainage of excess fluid from the tissues.

Let us begin by examining the terms associated with the cells and components of the system. Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–8 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Lymph

(From Greek **lymphá**, meaning water. It is used to mean the fluid lymph or lymphatic tissue.)

Combining forms **Lymph/a/o**



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **lympho**/cyt/osis
- (b) **lympho**/rrhagia
- (c) **lymph**/angio/graphy
- (d) **lymph**/angio/gram
- (e) **lymph**/angi/ectasis

Note. The next four words use the combining form **lymphaden/o** meaning lymph gland. The structures referred to by this combining form are no longer called glands because unlike true glands, they do not produce secretions. Lymphaden/o is now used to mean **lymph node**. A node is a mass of lymphoid tissue containing cells that defend the body against noxious agents such as microorganisms and toxins.

- (f) **lymphaden**/oma
- (g) **lymphaden**/ectomy
- (h) **lymphadeno**/pathy
- (i) **lymphaden**/itis

Lymph nodes consist of lymphatic channels held in place by fibrous connective tissue that forms a capsule. The nodes contain **lymphocytes** (lymph cells, *-cyte* meaning cell), and special cells called **macrophages** (large-eaters) which, like neutrophils, can engulf foreign substances and microorganisms (by phagocytosis). Lymph nodes often trap and destroy malignant cells as well as microorganisms. During infection lymphocytes and macrophages multiply rapidly, causing the nodes to swell; they may become inflamed and sore. Lymphocytes and macrophages leave the nodes in lymph (a clear fluid) that eventually drains through ducts into blood vessels near the heart. These cells then circulate in the blood and form a proportion of the white blood cell population.

If disease in the lymphatic system is suspected, a **nodal** (*-al* meaning pertaining to) **biopsy** may be performed; in this procedure a node is removed for examination by a histopathologist (*hist/o* meaning tissue, *path/o* disease and *-logist* a specialist who studies).

The macrophages that line the lymph organs are part of a large system of cells known as the **reticuloendothelial system** or macrophage system. Cells that form this network have a common ancestry and carry out phagocytosis (Fig. 30) in the liver, bone marrow, lymph nodes,

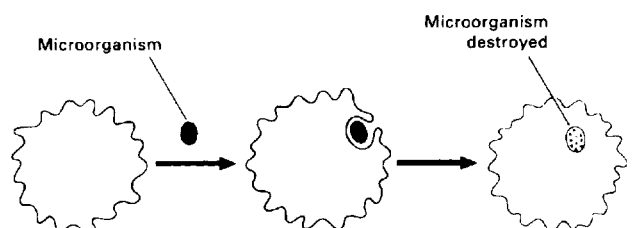


Figure 30 Phagocytosis

spleen, nervous system, blood and connective tissues. Macrophages found in connective tissues are known as **histiocytes** (i.e. tissue cells). If there is an increase in the number of histiocytes without infection this is known as a **histiocytosis**.

Distinct patches of lymphatic tissue have been given specific names; the familiar ones mentioned here include the spleen, tonsils, adenoids and thymus.

Root

Splen

(A Greek word, meaning spleen. This organ has four main functions: destruction of old blood cells, blood storage, blood filtration and participation in the immune response.)

Combining forms **Splen/o**



WORD EXERCISE 2

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **spleno/megaly**
- (b) **spleno/hepato/megaly**
- (c) **spleno/pexy**
- (d) **spleno/cele**
- (e) **spleno/malacia**
- (f) **spleno/lysis**

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (g) **spleno/gram**
- (h) **spleno/porto/gram**

(**Port/o** refers to the portal vein which drains blood from the intestines, stomach, pancreas and spleen into the liver.)

Root

Tonsill

(From Latin **tonsillae**, meaning tonsils. These form a ring of lymphoid tissue at the back of the mouth and nasopharynx. They are important in the formation of antibodies and lymphocytes.)

Combining forms **Tonsill/o**



WORD EXERCISE 3

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) inflammation of the tonsils
- (b) removal of the tonsils

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (c) **tonsillo/pharyng/eal**
- (d) **tonsillo/tome**

Note. An enlarged nasopharyngeal tonsil is known as an **adenoid**. Sometimes these obstruct the passage of air or interfere with hearing when they block the entrance to the auditory tube. Removal of the adenoids is known as an **adenoidectomy**.

Root

Thym

(From a Greek word **thymos**, meaning soul/emotion. It is used to mean the thymus gland which lies high in the chest above the aorta. It controls the development of the immune system in early life.)

Combining forms **Thym/o, thymic/o**



WORD EXERCISE 4

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words using thym/o that mean:

- (a) a cell of the thymus
- (b) disease of the thymus
- (c) protrusion/swelling of the thymus

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (d) **thym/elc/osis** (Look up helc.)
- (e) **thymico/lymphatic**

Immunology

Immunology is the scientific study of immunity and related disciplines such as immunotherapy and

immunochemistry. Immunological research has intensified recently because of the spread of the immunodeficiency virus (HIV) that causes AIDS. Many pharmaceutical companies are actively engaged in the search for vaccines and new treatments based on our increased knowledge of the immune process.

Immunity is the condition of being immune to infectious disease and antigenic substances that might damage the body. It is brought about by the production of antibodies and cells that destroy invading pathogens before they can do us harm. During our lifetime we acquire an immunity to common disease-producing organisms, such as viruses that cause colds and influenza. We can also acquire an immunity to more serious diseases by vaccination.

Understanding the meaning of the following terms will help you understand the basis of the immune process.

Antigen

An antigen is any foreign substance that enters the body and stimulates antibody production or a response associated with sensitized T-cells. Note, antigens will be present on the surface of any foreign cell that enters the body and these will provoke a response from the immune system.

Antibody

An antibody is a chemical that circulates in the blood destroying or precipitating specific foreign substances (antigens) that have entered the body. (*Anti-* means against, *-body* is an Anglo-Saxon word, in this case referring to a foreign body.)

Root

Immun

(From Latin **immunis**, meaning exempt from public burden. In medicine it means exemption from disease, i.e. immunity.)

Combining forms **Immun/o**



WORD EXERCISE 5

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) the study of immunity
- (b) branch of medicine concerned with the study of immune reactions associated with disease

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (c) **immuno**/genesis

- (d) **auto**/**immun**/ity

- (e) **immuno**/globulin

Immunity is brought about by two basic types of cell.

T-cells (thymic cells)

T-cells are types of lymphocyte formed in the bone marrow of the embryo that move to the thymus to be processed into T-cells (hence the name T-cell). The T-cells then move to other parts of the lymphatic system where they are responsible for the **cell-mediated response**. Once sensitized to a specific antigen, these cells multiply rapidly, producing various cell types all of which play a role in the immune response. One type of cell that forms is the cytotoxic (killer) T-cell, this attacks and kills infectious microorganisms containing the specific antigen. These cells are particularly effective against slowly growing bacteria and fungi, cancer cells and skin grafts.

B-cells

B-cells are types of lymphocyte named for historical reasons after the site where they were first seen in birds, the Bursa of Fabricius. In humans, B-cells first differentiate in the fetal liver and transform into large **plasma cells** when confronted with specific antigens. Once sensitized by an antigen, the plasma cell multiplies to form a large clone of similar cells (**plasmacytosis**). Each cell in the clone secretes the same antibody to the sensitizing antigen; this is known as the **humoral response**. Some antibodies activate a protein in the blood known as **complement**, which aids the antibody in destroying antigen. (Note, plasmacytosis means an excess of plasma cells in the blood).

Root

Ser

(From a Latin word **serum**, meaning whey. It is used in medicine to mean the clear portion of any liquid separated from its more solid elements. Blood serum is the supernatant liquid formed when blood clots. It can be used as a source of antibodies.)

Combining forms **Ser/o**



WORD EXERCISE 6

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (a) the scientific study of sera

Serum investigations can lead to a patient being seronegative or seropositive for the presence of a particular antibody. For example people assessed as HIV positive have antibodies in their blood to the human immunodeficiency virus. This means that the virus has entered their bodies and stimulated the immune system to make antibodies. If the virus is not destroyed by the immune system or inhibited by drug therapy it will continue to replicate and lead to the development of AIDS.

Seronegative

means showing a lack of antibody.

Seropositive

means showing the presence of a high level of antibody.

Root
Py

(From a Greek word **pyon**, meaning pus.)

Combining forms **Py/o**

Pus is a yellow, protein-rich liquid, composed of tissue fluids containing bacteria and leucocytes. When a wound is forming or discharging pus it is said to be **suppurating**. Pus is formed in response to certain types of infection.


WORD EXERCISE 7

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **py/aemia**
(Am. py/emia)
- (b) **pyo/genic**
- (c) **pyo/rrhoea**
(Am. pyo/rrhea)
- (d) **pyo/poiesis**

The immune response of the lymphatic system not only resists invasion by infective organisms but also functions to identify and destroy everything described as 'non-self', i.e. foreign antigens that have entered the body, such as in transplanted organs or body cells that have changed their form, such as malignant cells.

Patients infected with microorganisms, for example those who present with tonsillitis, experience swollen lymph nodes and their blood counts indicate an increase in circulating white blood cells. The nodes

swell because they contain plasma cells and T-cells forming clones of cells to 'fight' the infection. Once the foreign cells have been destroyed, the nodes return to their normal size. The response of the body to the initial sensitization with the antigen is called the *primary response*.

An important feature of the immune response is that some activated B-cells develop into **memory B-cells** rather than plasma cells. These remain in the nodes and other lymphoid tissue ready to respond should the same antigen enter the body again. If the same antigen is contacted the memory B-cells divide rapidly to produce plasma cells. These release large amounts of antibody, destroying the antigen before symptoms appear.

In a similar way some **memory T-cells** remain in the lymphoid tissue, and can be rapidly activated in response to another contact with the same antigen. The accelerated and increased response of the memory cells is called the *secondary response*, and it endows us with immunity.

Medical equipment and clinical procedure

The lymphatic system is investigated by radiological examination and few specific instruments are used to examine it. Revise the meaning of **-gram** and **-graphy** and then try Exercise 8.


WORD EXERCISE 8

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) tonsillotome	1. X-ray picture of portal veins and spleen
(b) lymphangiography	2. X-ray picture of lymphatic system
(c) lymphadenography	3. instrument for cutting tonsils
(d) lymphogram	4. technique of making an X-ray of lymph vessels
(e) splenoportogram	5. the technique of making an X-ray of the lymphatic system
(f) lymphography	6. technique of making an X-ray of lymph nodes



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 67.



CASE HISTORY 6

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on non-Hodgkin's lymphoma; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Non-Hodgkin's Lymphoma

Mr F, a 48-year-old male, presented to his GP with a painless swelling in the right axilla. The lump had been present for at least two months before his consultation and he had not been unduly concerned until he noticed a similar lump in his left axilla that appeared to be increasing in size. The patient indicated he had a good appetite and denied weight loss. There had been no change to his bowel and bladder habits and apart from a recent cold and **tonsillitis** he had not suffered any infection. He had smoked for 32 years and admitted moderate drinking. The only problem he mentioned was difficulty in sleeping; sometimes he would wake sweating copiously.

Examination revealed prominent lymph node enlargement in the right and left axillae and inguinal areas. The largest node was located in the right axilla, approximately 2cm across. Examination of the head and neck also revealed enlarged cervical nodes, the largest approximately 1.5cm across. The nodes were firm, tender and rubbery on palpation.

Cardiovascular and pulmonary examination was normal. He had **splenomegaly** that was palpable 3cm below the left costal margin. His tonsils appeared swollen. It was evident from initial examination that Mr F was suffering from a generalized **lymphadenopathy** that did not appear to be associated with infection.

Mr F underwent axillary **nodal biopsy** and his specimen was sent to **histopathology**. Examination of the tissue revealed a follicular, small, cleaved cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL). This was followed by a bilateral bone marrow trephine biopsy that demonstrated cells suspicious for lymphoma similar to those found in the nodes. The **lymphocytes** forming the

tumour were classified as being of **B-cell** origin. Computerized tomography (CT) was used to assess nodal enlargement and he was referred to the oncology department for staging.

Mr F underwent four cycles of chemotherapy (CHOPS) and since then no disease is evident in his bone marrow and his lymphadenopathy has regressed.

WORD HELP

axilla the armpit (Pl. axillae)

bilateral pertaining to two sides

biopsy removal and examination of living tissue

cervical pertaining to the neck

chemotherapy treatment with chemicals i.e. cytotoxic drugs that kill cancer cells

CHOPS type of chemotherapy regimen (Using cyclophosphamide, hydroxydaunorubicin, **oncovin** and prednisolone)

cleaved cut/separated (here refers to indentations in the nucleus of a lymph cell)

costal pertaining to the ribs

follicular pertaining to a follicle (here a well-defined collection of multiplying lymph cells)

GP general practitioner (family doctor)

inguinal pertaining to the groin

non-Hodgkin's not Hodgkin's disease (a type of lymphoma)

oncology study of tumours/cancers

palpation act of feeling with the fingers using light pressure

regressed reverted (towards former condition)

staging system of classifying malignant disease that will influence its treatment

tomography technique of using X-rays to image a section through the body

trephine instrument with a circular cutting edge that removes a disc of tissue

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) tonsillitis
- (b) splenomegaly
- (c) lymphadenopathy
- (d) nodal
- (e) histopathology
- (f) lymphoma
- (g) lymphocyte
- (h) B-cell

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the lymphatic system and immunology:

Aden/o	gland
Adenoid/o	adenoid
Cyt/e/o	cell
-globulin	protein
Hist/i/o	tissue
Immun/o	immune
Lymph/o	lymph
Lymphaden/o	lymph node
Lymphangi/o	lymph vessel
Phag/o	eating/consuming
Plasma-	plasma cell
Py/o	pus
Ser/o	serum
Splen/o	spleen
Thym/o	thymus gland
Thymic/o	thymus gland
Tonsill/o	tonsil

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the lymphatic system are listed below. Note, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

AIDS	acquired immune deficiency syndrome
ALL	acute lymphocytic leukaemia (Am. leukemia)
BM (T)	bone marrow (trephine)
CLL	chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (Am. leukemia)
HLA	human leucocyte antigen
Ig	immunoglobulin
LAS	lymphadenopathy syndrome
Lymphos	lymphocytes
T & A	tonsils and adenoids
TD	thymus-dependent cells
TI	thymus-independent cells
TLD	thoracic lymph duct



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

anti- _____

auto- _____

macro- _____

Combining forms of word roots

aden/o _____

angi/o _____

cyt/o _____

-globulin _____

helc/o _____

hepat/o _____

hist/i/o _____

immun/o _____

lymph/o _____

lymphaden/o _____

lymphangi/o _____

phag/o _____

pharyng/o _____

plasm/a _____

port/o _____

py/o _____

reticul/o _____

ser/o _____

splen/o _____

thym/o _____

tonsill/o _____

-tic _____

-tome _____

Suffixes-aemia
(Am. -emia) _____

-al _____

-cele _____

-eal _____

-ectasis _____

-ectomy _____

-genesis _____

-genic _____

-gram _____

-graphy _____

-ia _____

-ic _____

-itis _____

-ity _____

-logy _____

-lysis _____

-malacia _____

-megaly _____

-oma _____

-osis _____

-pathy _____

-pexy _____

-poiesis _____

-rrhagia _____

-rrhoea
(Am. -rhea) _____

▶ NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT ◀



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 6A

Below are some medical terms that refer to the anatomy of the lymphatic system. Indicate which part of the system they refer to by putting a number from the diagram (Fig. 31) next to each word.

(a) lymphaden/o _____

(b) splen/o _____

(c) thym/o _____

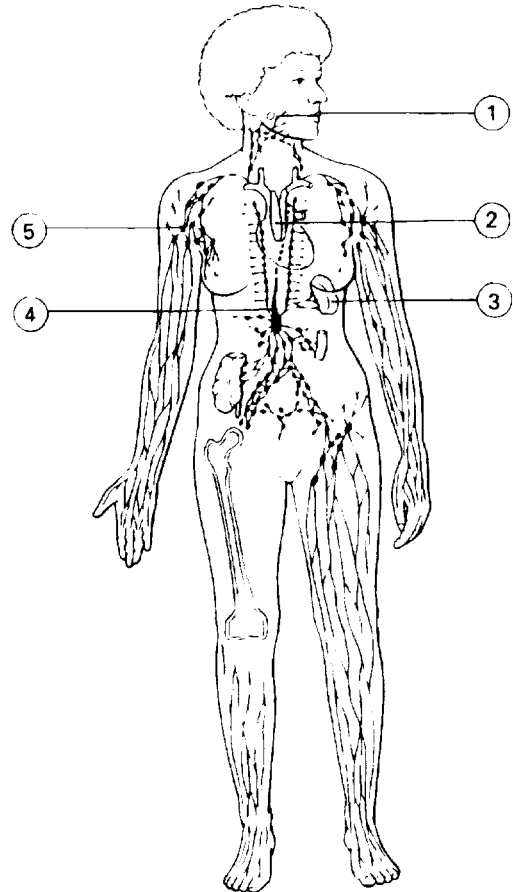


Figure 31 The lymphatic system

- (d) tonsill/o
- (e) lymphangi/o

Score

5

Test 6B

Prefixes, suffixes and combining forms of word roots

Match each word component in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) aden/o	1. protein/ball
(b) angi/o	2. swelling/hernia/protrusion
(c) anti-	3. immune
(d) auto-	4. self
(e) -cele	5. vessel
(f) -globin	6. pus
(g) -gram	7. cutting instrument
(h) helc/o	8. against
(i) immun/o	9. spleen
(j) lymph/o	10. ulcer
(k) -lysis	11. serum
(l) -malacia	12. tonsil
(m) port/o	13. lymph
(n) py/o	14. gland
(o) -rrhoea (Am. -rrhea)	15. excessive flow
(p) ser/o	16. picture/tracing/recording
(q) splen/o	17. condition of softening

- | Column A | Column B | Column C |
|---------------|----------|------------------------------|
| (r) thym/o | | 18. disintegration/breakdown |
| (s) -tome | | 19. portal vein |
| (t) tonsill/o | | 20. thymus gland |

Score

20

Test 6C

Write the meaning of:

- (a) lymphorrhoea
(Am. lymphorrhea)
- (b) splenic
- (c) lymphadenectomy
- (d) thymolysis
- (e) serologist

Score

5

Test 6D

Build words that mean:

- (a) tumour of lymph (tissue)
- (b) X-ray examination of the lymph system
- (c) removal of the spleen
- (d) condition of bleeding/bursting forth of the spleen
- (e) tumour of a lymph vessel

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

The urinary system

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 7 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the urinary system
- build medical words relating to the urinary system
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the urinary system.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

dys-	difficult/painful
hyper-	above normal/excessive
intra-	within/inside
oligo-	deficiency/few/little
poly-	many/much

Roots/Combining forms

albumin/o	albumin/albumen
azot/o	urea
calc/i	calcium
col/o	colon
enter/o	intestine
gastr/o	stomach
haemat/o	blood
hemat/o (Am.)	blood
hydr/o	water
lith/o	stone
metr/o	a measure
proct/o	anus/rectum
py/o	pus

sigmoid/o
trigon/o

sigmoid colon
trigone of the bladder

Suffixes

-al	pertaining to
-algia	condition of pain
-cele	swelling/protrusion/hernia
-clysis	infusion/injection/irrigation
-dynia	condition of pain
-ectasis	dilatation/stretching
-ectomy	removal of
-ferous	pertaining to carrying/bearing
-genesis	capable of causing/pertaining to formation
-gram	X-ray/tracing/recording
-graphy	technique of recording/making an X-ray
-ia	condition of
-iasis	abnormal condition
-ic	pertaining to
-itis	inflammation of
-lapaxy	empty/wash out/evacuate
-lithiasis	abnormal condition of stones
-logist	specialist who studies
-lysis	breakdown/disintegration
-meter	measuring instrument
-metry	process of measuring
-osis	abnormal condition/disease of
-ous	pertaining to/of the nature of
-pathy	disease of
-pexy	surgical fixation/fix in place
-phyma	tumour/boil
-plasty	surgical repair/reconstruction
-ptosis	falling/diplacement/prolapse
-rrhagia	condition of bursting forth of blood/bleeding
-rrhaphy	suture/stitch
-sclerosis	hardening
-scope	instrument to view
-scopy	visual examination
-stenosis	abnormal condition of narrowing
-stomy	to form a new opening or outlet
-tome	cutting instrument
-tomy	incision into
-tripsy	act of crushing
-triptor	instrument to crush/fragment (using shock waves)
-trite	instrument to crush/fragment
-uresis	excrete in urine/urinate

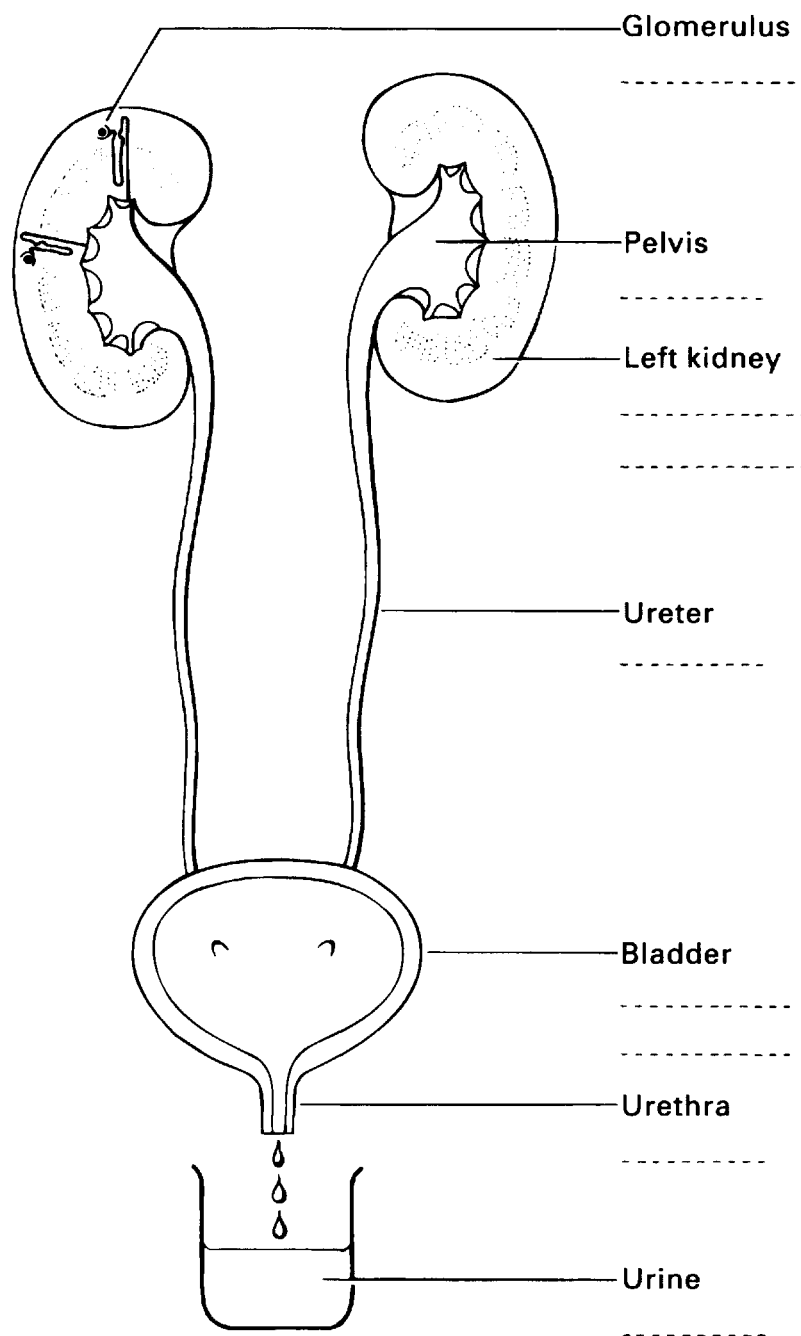


Figure 32 The urinary system



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–11, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figure 32 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line – more than one component may relate to the same position. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 83.)

Cyst/o
Glomerul/o
Nephro/o
Pyel/o

Ren/o
Ureter/o
Urethr/o

Urin/o
Vesic/o

The urinary system

The main components of the urinary system are the kidneys, that remove metabolic wastes from the blood by forming them into urine. This yellow liquid is passed from the kidneys through the ureters to the urinary bladder where it is stored. Periodically urine is passed out of the body through the urethra in the process of urination.

Besides removing waste substances that could be toxic to tissue cells, the kidneys maintain the volume of water in the blood and regulate its salt concentration and pH. The kidneys are therefore involved in homeostasis, i.e. maintaining constant conditions within the tissue fluids of the body. The continuous activity of the kidneys is required to maintain life.

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–11 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Ren

(A Latin word **ren**, meaning kidney.)

Combining forms **Ren/o**



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **reno/gastr/ic**
- (b) **reno/gram**
- (c) **reno/graphy**

Renography may show up a renal calculus (from Latin *calcis* – small stone), i.e. a kidney stone. The presence of a stone in a ureter leads to severe pain and is referred to as **renal colic**. Renal colic can also be caused by disorder and disease within a kidney.

Radioisotope renograms are useful in assessing kidney function. They are made following injection of radioisotopes into the bloodstream. The technique of making this type of recording is discussed in more detail in Unit 18.

Root

Nephr

(From a Greek word **nephros**, meaning kidney.)

Combining forms **Nephr/o**



WORD EXERCISE 2

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **nephr/ptosis**
- (b) hydro/**nephr**/osis
- (c) **nephr**/cele
- (d) **nephr**/algia

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (e) surgical fixation of a kidney
(e.g. floating kidney)
- (f) surgical repair of a kidney
- (g) incision into a kidney
- (h) condition of stones in the
kidney
- (i) removal of a kidney

Within each kidney there are approximately one million kidney tubules or nephrons that do the work of the kidney. At the beginning of each nephron is a **glomerulus**, a ball of capillaries surrounded by porous membranes that filter metabolic wastes from the blood. When glomeruli undergo pathological change the filtering mechanism of the kidneys is seriously affected, reducing their ability to maintain homeostasis.

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (j) **glomerul**/itis
(suppurative)
- (k) **glomerulo**/pathy
- (l) **glomerulo**/sclerosis

Infections and disorders of the kidneys sometimes lead to kidney failure. This results in the waste products of metabolism increasing in concentration within the blood and a failure to regulate water, mineral metabolism and pH; these changes will lead to death. The patient with kidney failure can be kept alive if one of the following procedures is applied.

Haemodialysis (Am. hemodialysis)

This involves diverting the patient's blood through a dialyser, commonly called a kidney machine (Fig. 33). In the dialyser waste products are removed from the blood which is then returned to the body via another blood vessel. The patient must be connected to the dialyser for many hours per week and so cannot lead a normal life. (Dialysis means separating, i.e. separating wastes from the blood.)

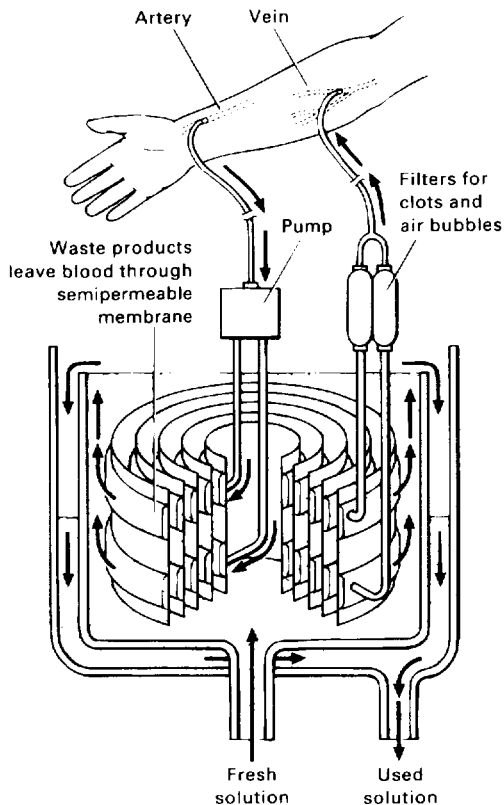


Figure 33 Haemodialysis (Am. hemodialysis)

CAPD (continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis)

The patient is fitted with a peritoneal catheter (tube) (Fig. 34). Every 6 hours approximately 2 litres of dialysing fluid is passed into the peritoneum. Toxic wastes diffuse into the dialysing fluid and are removed from the body when the fluid is changed. This procedure is repeated four times a day, 7 days a week. CAPD has been used on a long-term basis but there is danger from peritonitis caused by infection.

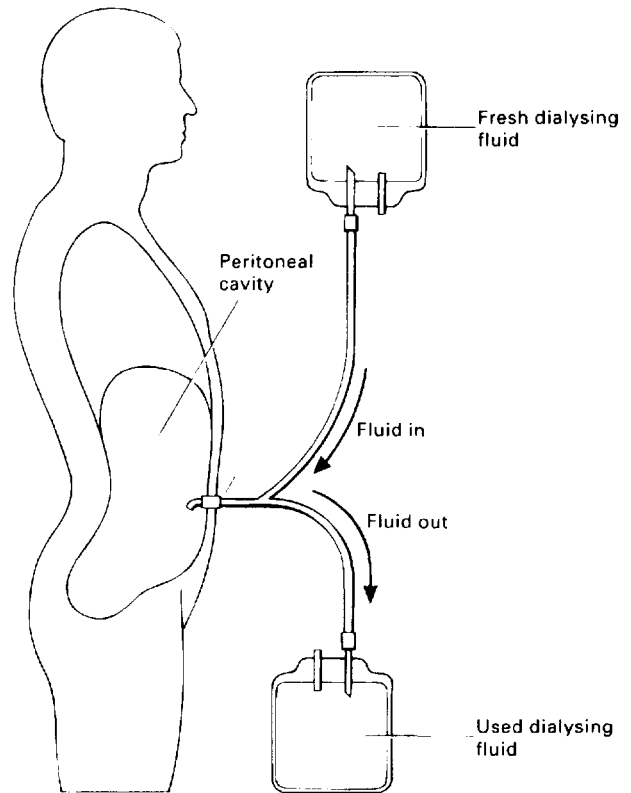


Figure 34 CAPD

A kidney can be transplanted between two individuals of the same species, i.e. between two humans who are not closely related. This type of transplant or graft is known as a homotransplant or homograft (*homo* meaning the same, synonymous with allograft). The donor could be living, and survive with one remaining kidney, or a victim of a fatal accident. A transplant may keep a patient alive for many years and avoids the inconvenience and dangers associated with CAPD and dialysis. Transplants between genetically identical twins are more successful. These are known as isografts (*iso* means same/equal).

Root

Pyel

(From a Greek word **pyelos**, meaning trough. Here it refers to the space inside a kidney called the renal pelvis in which urine collects after its formation.)

Combining forms

Pyelo/o

(Do not confuse this with *pyo*, meaning pus.)



WORD EXERCISE 3

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **pyelo/nephr/itis**

(This is often due to a bacterial infection.)

(b) **pyelo/litho/tomy**

(c) **pyelo/nephr/osis**

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

(d) surgical repair of the renal pelvis

(e) X-ray picture of the renal pelvis

The technique of making an X-ray of the renal pelvis is known as **pyelography**. It involves filling the pelvis with a radio-opaque dye. There are several ways of doing this:

Intravenous pyelography

Here the dye is injected into the bloodstream and it eventually passes through the kidney pelvis (**intra** – meaning inside, **veno** – meaning vein).

Antegrade pyelography

Here the dye is injected into the renal pelvis (**ante** – meaning before/in front; **grad** – meaning take steps/to go (Latin)). It refers to the fact that the dye goes into the pelvis before it leaves the kidney. The dye is injected through a percutaneous catheter, i.e. through the skin.

Retrograde (or ascending) pyelography

Here the dye is injected into the kidney via the ureter, so it is being forced backwards up the ureter into the urine within the pelvis (**retro** – Latin, means backwards).

Root

Ureter

(From a Greek word **oureter**, meaning urinary canal. Now used to mean ureter, the narrow tube that connects each kidney to the bladder. Urine flows through the ureters assisted by the action of smooth muscle.)

Combining forms **Ureter/o**



WORD EXERCISE 4

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **uretero/cele**

(b) **uretero/cel/ectomy**

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(c) **uretero/rrhagia**

(d) **uretero/rrhaphy**

(e) **ureter/ectasis**

(f) **uretero/reno/scopy**
(Note the difference between -scope and -scopy.)

(g) **uretero/stomy**

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

(h) formation of an opening
between the intestine and ureter

(i) formation of an opening
between the colon and ureter

Root

Cyst

(From Greek **kystis**, meaning bladder.)

Combining forms **Cyst/o**

Note. We have already used cyst/o in Unit 2 with **cholecyst/o**, meaning the bile (gall) bladder. Here we are using **cyst/o** alone to mean the urinary bladder, which stores urine until it is expelled from the body.



WORD EXERCISE 5

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **cyst/itis**

(There are many causes of this condition which may be acute or chronic, including injury and infection. As the bladder is open to the external

genitalia via the urethra, it is easy for microorganisms to enter from outside. Sometimes infections are transmitted into the urinary tract from sexual contact, for example, gonorrhoea and Chlamydia. Cystitis is more common in women due to their shorter urethras.)

- (b) **cysto**/lith/ectomy
 (c) **cysto**/pyel/itis
 (d) **cysto**/ptosis

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (e) **cysto**/scope
 (f) **cysto**/procto/stomy

Meter and **metr/o** originate from Greek *metron*, meaning a measure, and **metry** from *metrein*, meaning process of measuring. Use these to build words meaning:

- (g) instrument to measure bladder (capacity or pressure within)
 (h) technique of measuring the bladder (capacities and volumes of)
 (i) a trace, picture or recording of measured volumes and capacities of the bladder (use metr/o)

A technique that applies an electric current to tissues, causing them to heat up, is known as **diathermy** (*dia* – meaning through and *thermy* – meaning heat). These can be combined here to make:

Cystodiathermy

The process of applying heat through the bladder. The heat is produced by an electric current and is used to destroy tumours in the bladder wall.

Root

Vesic

(From Latin **vesica**, also meaning bladder.)

Combining forms **Vesic/o**



WORD EXERCISE 6

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) the formation of an opening into the bladder
 (b) incision into the bladder

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (c) **vesico**/clysis
 (d) **vesic**/al
 (e) **vesico**/sigmoido/stomy

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (f) **vesico**/ureter/al

Catheterization of the bladder is required following some surgical operations and when there is difficulty in emptying the bladder owing to a neuromuscular disorder or physical damage to the spinal cord. The procedure involves inserting a catheter through the urethra into the bladder (Fig. 35). A urinary **catheter** consists of a fine tube that allows urine to drain from the bladder into an external container. Some self-retaining catheters are held in position by means of an inflated balloon.

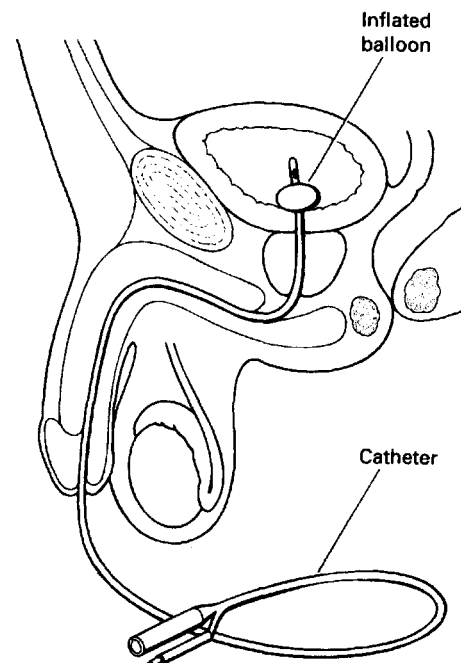


Figure 35 Catheterization

Root

Urethr

(From Greek **ourethro**, meaning urethra, the tube through which urine leaves the body from the bladder.)

Combining forms **Urethr/o**



WORD EXERCISE 7

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **urethro**/metry
- (b) **urethro**/trigon/itis
(Trigone refers to a triangular area at the base of the bladder, bounded by the openings of the ureters at the back and the urethral opening at the front.)

- (c) **urethro**/pexy

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (d) condition of pain in the urethra
- (e) condition of flow of blood from the urethra
- (f) visual examination of the urethra

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (g) **urethro**/phyma
- (h) **urethro**/tome
- (i) **urethro**/stenosis
- (j) **urethro**/dynia

Root

Urin

(From a Latin word **urina**, meaning urine, the excretory product of the kidneys.)

Combining forms **Urin/a/i/o**



WORD EXERCISE 8

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **urini**/ferous
- (b) **urina**/lysis

(This word refers to the technique of analysing urine. Detailed urinalysis is a valuable aid to the diagnosis of disease, e.g. the presence of high concentrations of

glucose in the urine may indicate diabetes. Other components commonly analysed are colour, pH, specific gravity, ketone bodies, phenylketones, protein, bilirubin and solid casts of varying composition.)

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) **urino**/meter
(This is used to estimate specific gravity of urine which can change in illness.)

Root

Ur

(From a Greek word **ouron**, also meaning urine.)

Combining forms

Ur/o

(This form is also used to refer to the urinary tract and urination.)



WORD EXERCISE 9

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **uro**/graphy
(Synonymous with intravenous pyelogram (IVP). The above procedure is also performed by injecting dye directly into the urinary tract rather than into a vein.)

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (b) **uro**/logist
- (c) **uro**/genesis
- (d) olig/**ur**/ia
- (e) albumin/**ur**/ia
- (f) azot/**ur**/ia
- (g) poly/**ur**/ia
- (h) dys/**ur**/ia
- (i) haemat/**ur**/ia
(Am. hemat/**ur**/ia)
- (j) py/**ur**/ia
- (k) hyper/calci/**ur**/ia

Note. The act of passing urine is known as micturition (from Latin *micturire*, meaning to pass water).

Root

Lith

(From a Greek word **lithos**, meaning stone.)

Combining forms **Lith/o**

Here *lithos* refers to a kidney stone, which is a hard mass composed mainly of mineral matter present in the urinary system. Remember a stone is sometimes called a **renal calculus** (pl. **calculi**). Stones can prevent the passage of urine, causing pain and kidney damage. They need to be passed or removed because they can seriously affect the functioning of the kidneys.



WORD EXERCISE 10

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **litho**/nephro/itis

(b) uro/**lith**/iasis

(c) **litho**/genesis

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(d) **litho**/trite

(e) **litho**/lapaxy

(f) **litho**/triptor

(This instrument focuses high energy shock waves generated by a high voltage spark on to a kidney stone. No surgery is required, as the stone disintegrates within the body and is passed in the urine. The procedure for using this instrument is called extra-corporeal shock wave lithotripsy (ECSL), *extra* meaning outside, *corporeal* meaning body.)

(g) **litho**/tripsy

(h) **lith**/uresis

urinary system mentioned in this unit. Revise -scope, -scopy, -tome, -metry, -meter and -thermy.

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) diathermy	1. instrument for crushing stones
(b) cystoscope	2. device that separates wastes from the blood
(c) lithotripter	3. instrument for cutting the urethra
(d) urinometer	4. visual examination of the ureter
(e) haemodialyser (Am. hemodialyzer)	5. instrument that measures the pressure and capacity of the bladder
(f) ureteroscopy	6. instrument to view the urethra
(g) urethrotome	7. device that destroys stones using shock waves
(h) cystometer	8. technique of heating a tissue by applying an electric current
(i) urethroscope	9. instrument for measuring specific gravity of urine
(j) lithotrite	10. instrument to view the bladder



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 76.

Medical equipment and clinical procedures



WORD EXERCISE 11

Before completing Exercise 11, check the names of instruments and techniques of examination of the



CASE HISTORY 7

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on urolithiasis; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help

- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Urolithiasis

Mr G, an engineer recently returned from working in the Middle East, was admitted to Accident and Emergency in pain and clutching his right side. He had been awoken during the night by an excruciating pain in his right flank radiating to the iliac fossa and right testicle. In the past two days, he had developed severe **urethral** pain and **dysuria** associated with **haematuria**. Fluid intake made the pain worse and he had been vomiting. Mr G had recently been treated with antibiotics by his GP for bacteriuria and diagnosed as suffering from obstructive **uropathy**. His condition had become acute whilst waiting for his referral appointment. On admission he required immediate analgesia for severe pain and administered 10mg morphine i.m. He was kept in overnight for observation and transferred to the Urology Unit the following morning.

The next day a dull pain was still present, and examination revealed loin tenderness and an enlarged palpable **hydronephrotic** right kidney. A plain abdominal radiograph identified a single calculus in the line of the right ureter. Excretion urography (intravenous **pyelography** IVP) confirmed the calculus to be obstructing the pelviureteric junction. The kidney outline appeared enlarged but smooth with no anatomical abnormalities of the calyces.

Mr G underwent extracorporeal shockwave **lithotripsy** (ESWL) and the calculus was successfully fragmented and excreted. His urinary catheter was left in place for one day, and he was discharged on 50mg diclofenac t.i.d. His recovery was unremarkable and a follow-up KUB was arranged for two weeks through the Lithotripsy reception.

Mr G was advised that he should increase his fluid intake particularly when he returned to the Middle East. It was recommended that a urine output of 2–2.5 litres per day would be appropriate. Urine analysis indicated a slight **hypercalciuria**, and it was recommended that he restricted his intake of calcium and vitamin D. He was referred to the dietician for advice on food intake.

WORD HELP

- analgesia** condition of pain relief
calculus stones/abnormal concretions
calyces cup-shaped divisions of the renal pelvis (sing. calyx)
catheter a tube for introducing or withdrawing fluid from the body
GP general practitioner (family doctor)

WORD HELP (Contd.)

- hydronephrotic** pertaining to hydronephrosis (a kidney swollen with water)
iliac fossa pertaining to the concave, upper and anterior part of the sacropelvic surface of the iliac bone. A fossa is a depression/recess below the general surface of a part
i.m. intramuscular (here meaning an injection into muscle)
KUB kidneys, ureters and bladder (X-ray/examination)
pelviureteric pertaining to a ureter and renal pelvis
radiograph an X-ray picture
t.i.d. three times daily (ter in die)
urography technique of recording/making an X-ray of the urinary tract
urology study of the urinary tract/system (here refers to a hospital department)

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) urolithiasis
- (b) urethral
- (c) dysuria
- (d) haematuria
(Am. hematuria)
- (e) uropathy
- (f) pyelography
- (g) lithotripsy
- (h) hypercalciuria

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the urinary system:

Albumin/o	albumin/albumen
Azot/o	urea/nitrogen
Cyst/o	bladder
Glomerul/o	glomerulus
Lith/o	stone
Nephr/o	kidney
Pyel/o	pelvis of kidney
Ren/o	kidney
Trigon/o	trigone

Quick Reference (Contd.)

Combining forms relating to the urinary system:

Ureter/o	ureter
Urethr/o	urethra
Urin/o	urine
Ur/o	urine/urinary tract
Vesic/o	bladder

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the urinary system are listed below. Note, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

ARF	acute renal failure
BUN	blood urea nitrogen
CRF	chronic renal failure
CSU	catheter specimen of urine
Cysto	cystoscopy
HD	haemodialysis (Am. hemodialysis)
IVP	intravenous pyelogram
KUB	kidney, ureter, bladder
MSU	midstream urine
PCNL	percutaneous nephrolithotomy
U & E	urea and electrolytes
UTI	urinary tract infection

NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

ante-

dia-

dys-

hyper-

intra-

oligo-

poly-

retro-

Combining forms of word roots

albumin/o

azot/o

calc/i

col/o

cyst/o

enter/o

gastr/o

glomerul/o

haem/o
(Am. hem/o)

hydr/o

lith/o

nephro-

procto-

pyel/o

py/o

ren/o

sigmoid/o

sten/o

trigon/o

ureter/o

urethr/o

urin/o

ur/o

ven/o

vesic/o

Suffixes

-al

-algia

-cele

-clysis

-dynia

-ectasis

-ectomy

-ferous

-genesis

-gram

-graphy

-iasis

-ic

-itis

-lapaxy

-lithiasis

-logist

-lysis

-meter

-metry

-osis

-ous

-pexy

-phyma

-plasty

-ptosis

-rrhage

-rrhaphy

-sclerosis

-scope

-scopy

-stomy

-thermy

-tome

-tomy

-tripsy

-triotor

-trite

-uresis

➤ NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT ◀



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 7A

Below are some combining forms that refer to the anatomy of the urinary system. Indicate which part of the system they refer to by putting a number from the diagram (Fig. 36) next to each word.

(a) ureter/o

(b) nephro

(c) glomerul/o

(d) pyel/o

(e) urethr/o

- (f) lith/o _____
- (g) cyst/o _____
- (h) urin/o _____

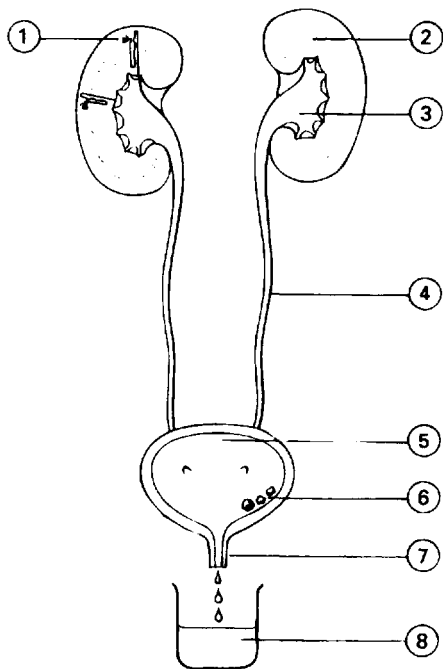


Figure 36 The urinary system

Score

8

Test 7B

Prefixes and suffixes

Match each prefix or suffix in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) ante-	_____	1. technique of breaking stones with shock waves
(b) -cele	_____	2. measuring instrument

Column A	Column B	Column C
(c) -clysis	_____	3. crushing instrument
(d) dia-	_____	4. abnormal condition of urine
(e) dys-	_____	5. technique of measuring
(f) -ferous	_____	6. backward
(g) -iasis	_____	7. protrusion/swelling/hernia
(h) intra-	_____	8. tumour/boil
(i) -lapaxy	_____	9. before
(j) -meter	_____	10. to fall/displace
(k) -metry	_____	11. pertaining to carrying
(l) oligo-	_____	12. abnormal condition of
(m) -phyma	_____	13. too little/few
(n) poly-	_____	14. difficult/painful
(o) -ptosis	_____	15. infusion/injection into
(p) retro-	_____	16. through
(q) -thermy	_____	17. within/inside
(r) -tripsy	_____	18. evacuation/wash out
(s) -trite	_____	19. many
(t) -uresis	_____	20. heat

Score

20

Test 7C

Combining forms of word roots

Match each combining form in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) col/o	1. blood
(b) cyst/o	2. kidney (i)
(c) gastr/o	3. kidney (ii)
(d) glomerul/o	4. sigmoid colon
(e) haemat/o (Am. hemat/o)	5. pus
(f) lith/o	6. trigone/base of bladder
(g) nephr/o	7. urethra
(h) proct/o	8. bladder (i)
(i) pyel/o	9. bladder (ii)
(j) py/o	10. vein
(k) ren/o	11. stomach
(l) sigmoid/o	12. pelvis/trough
(m) sten/o	13. urine
(n) trigon/o	14. urine/urinary tract
(o) ureter/o	15. glomeruli (of kidney)
(p) urethr/o	16. ureter
(q) urin/o	17. colon
(r) ur/o	18. anus/rectum
(s) ven/o	19. stone
(t) vesic/o	20. narrowing

Score

20

Test 7D

Write the meaning of:

- (a) nephropyelolithotomy
- (b) ureterostenosis
- (c) cystourethrography
- (d) vesicocele
- (e) pyelectasis

Score

5

Test 7E

Build words that mean:

- (a) dilatation of a ureter
- (b) formation of an opening
between the ureter and
sigmoid colon
- (c) technique of making an
X-ray of the bladder (use cyst/o)
- (d) X-ray picture of the urinary tract
- (e) abnormal condition of
hardening of the kidney

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

This page intentionally left blank

The nervous system

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 8 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the nervous system
- build medical words relating to the nervous system
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the nervous system.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

a-	without/not
acro-	extremities/point
agora-	open place
an-	without/not
di-	two/double
dys-	difficult/disordered
electro-	electrical
epi-	above/upon/on
hemi-	half
hyper-	above
hypo-	below
intra-	within/inside
macro-	large
meso-	middle
micro-	small
para-	beside/near
polio-	grey matter (of CNS)
poly-	many
post-	after/behind
pre-	before/in front of
quadri-	four
sub-	under
tetra-	four

Roots/Combining forms

aqua-	water
cancer/o	cancer
ech/o	echo/reflected sound
fibr/o	fibre

haemat/o	blood
hemat/o (Am.)	blood
hydro-	water
necr/o	death (dead tissue)
py/o	pus
somat/o	body
syring/o	pipe/tube/cavity

Suffixes

-al	pertaining to
-algia	condition of pain
-cele	swelling/protrusion/hernia
-centesis	surgical puncture to remove fluid
-cyte	cell
-ectomy	removal of
-form	having the form of
-genic	pertaining to formation/originating in
-gram	X-ray picture/tracing/recording
-graph	usually an instrument that records
-graphy	technique of recording/making an X-ray
-gyric	pertaining to circular motion
-ia	condition of
-iatr(y)	doctor/medical treatment
-ic	pertaining to/in pharmacology a drug
-itis	inflammation of
-logist	specialist who studies ...
-logy	study of
-malacia	condition of softening
-meter	measuring instrument
-metry	process of measuring
-oma	tumour/swelling
-osis	abnormal condition/disease of
-ous	pertaining to
-pathy	disease of
-phthisis	wasting away
-plasia	condition of growth/formation (of cells)
-rrhagia	condition of bursting forth of blood/bleeding
-schisis	cleaving/splitting/parting
-sclerosis	abnormal condition of hardening
-scopy	visual examination
-stomy	to form a new opening or outlet
-therapy	treatment
-tic	pertaining to/in pharmacology a drug
-tomy	incision into
-trauma	injury/wound
-trophy	nourishment/development
-tropic	pertaining to affinity for/stimulating/
	changing in response to a stimulus
-us	thing/structure

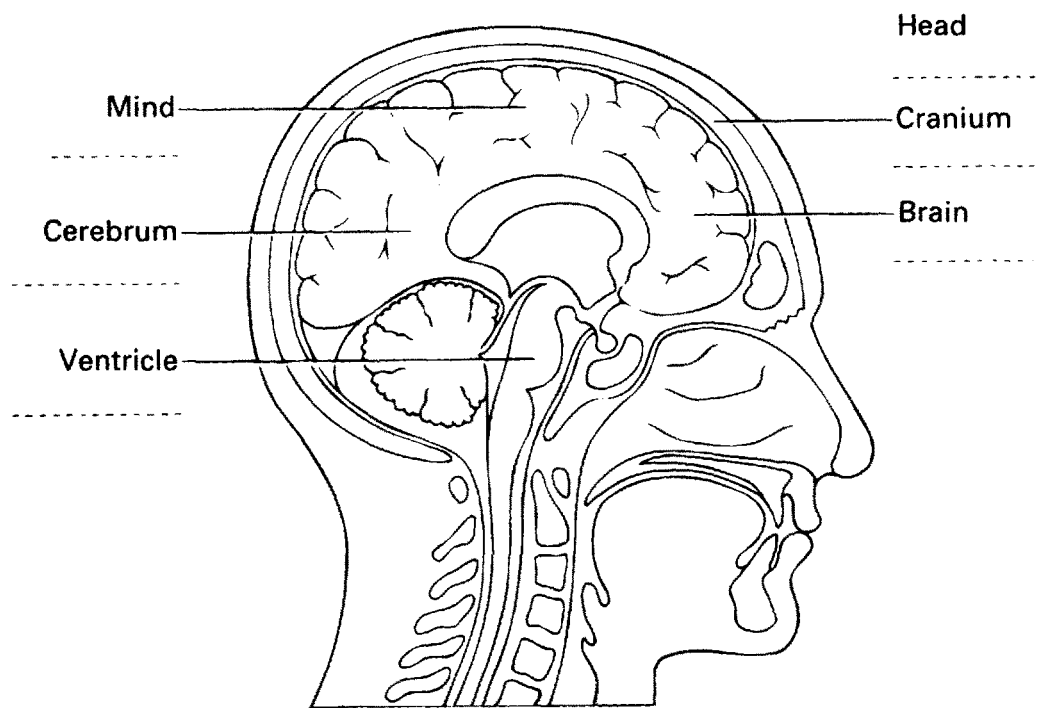


Figure 37 Sagittal section through the head

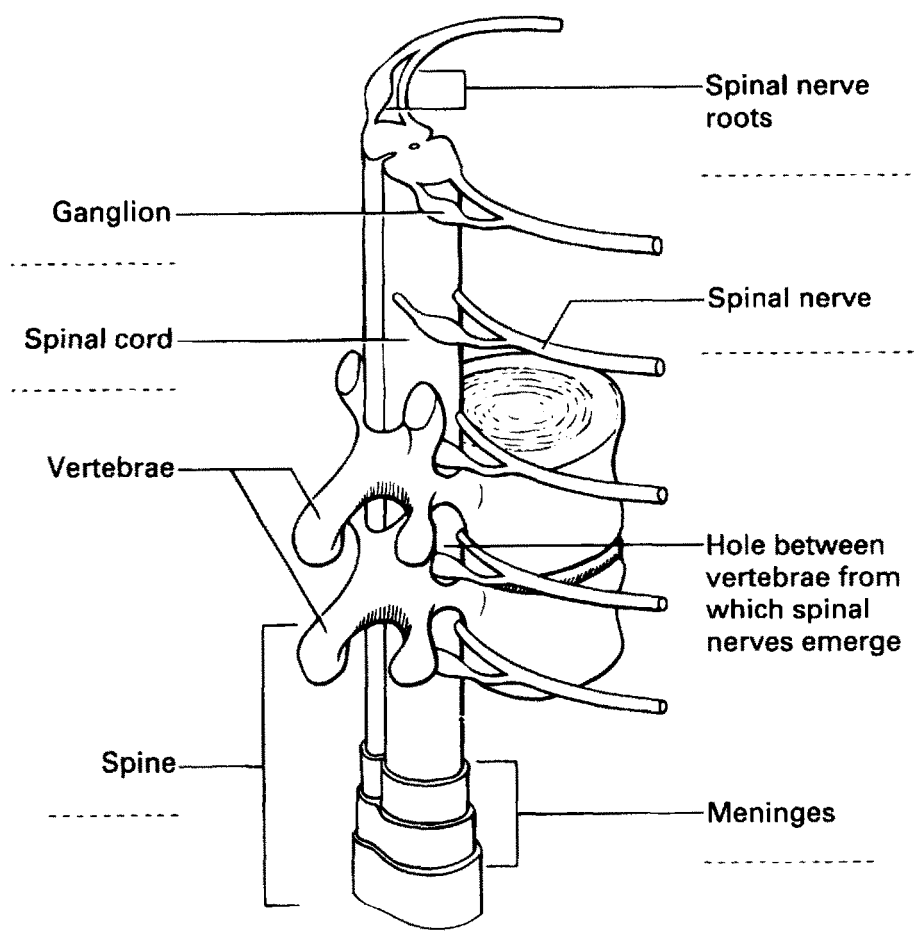


Figure 38 Section through the spine



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–21, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figures 37 and 38 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line – more than one component may relate to the same position. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 101.)

Cephal/o
Cerebr/o
Crani/o
Encephal/o

Gangli/o
Mening/i/o
Myel/o
Neur/o

Psych/o
Rachi/o
Radicul/o
Ventricul/o

The nervous system

Humans have a complex nervous system with a brain that is large in proportion to their body size. The brain and spinal cord are estimated to contain at least 10^{10} cells with vast numbers of connections between them. The nervous system performs three basic functions:

- It receives, stores and analyses information from sense organs such as the eyes and ears, making us aware of our environment. This awareness enables us to think and make responses that will aid our survival in changing conditions.
- It controls the physiological activities of the body systems and maintains constant conditions (homeostasis) within the body.
- It controls our muscles, enabling us to move and speak.

Because of its complexity, the nervous system has been difficult to study and progress in understanding its common disorders has been slow. However, recently developed imaging techniques are improving the diagnosis and treatment of nervous disorders.

We begin our study of medical terms by examining the cells that form the system.

Root

Neur

(From a Greek word **neuron**, meaning nerve.)

Combining forms **Neur/o**

Neurons are the basic structural units of the nervous system. They are specialized cells, elongated for the transmission of nerve impulses. Each neuron consists of a cell 'body' plus long extensions known as dendrons or dendrites and axons (Fig. 39).

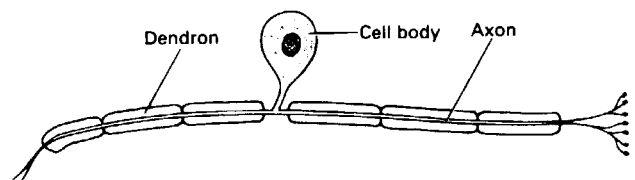


Figure 39 Neuron (sensory)

The structure of the nervous system

For convenience of study medical physiologists have divided the system into the:

Central nervous system (CNS)

The CNS consists of the brain and spinal cord.

Peripheral nervous system (PNS)

The PNS is composed of 12 pairs of cranial nerves and 31 pairs of spinal nerves that connect the CNS with sense organs, muscles and glands.

Autonomic nervous system (ANS)

The ANS describes certain peripheral nerves that send impulses to internal organs and glands.

There are three basic types of neuron:

The sensory neuron

The sensory neuron transfers nerve impulses from sense organs to the central nervous system (CNS) (sensory – meaning pertaining to sensation).

The motor neuron

The motor neuron transmits nerve impulses away from the central nervous system to muscle cells or glands (motor – meaning pertaining to action).

The connector neurons (interneurons)

The connector neuron joins sensory neurons to motor neurons in the brain and spinal cord.

Note. As sensory neurons are transferring nerve impulses towards the CNS they are sometimes referred to as **afferent** neurons (from Latin *affere* – to bring). Motor neurons are sometimes referred to as **efferent** neurons because they carry nerve impulses away from the CNS (from Latin *effere* – to carry away).

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–21 unless you are asked to work without it.



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **neuro**/logy
- (b) **neuro**/pathy
- (c) **neur**/algia
- (d) **neuro**/fibr/oma
- (e) poly/**neur**/itis
- (f) **neuro**/genic

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (g) hardening of a nerve
- (h) condition of softening of a nerve
- (i) person who specializes in the study of nerves and their disorders

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (j) **neuro**/phthisis
- (k) **neuro**/tropic
- (l) **neuro**/trauma

The neurons of the central nervous system are supported by another type of cell that sticks to them. These are known as **neuroglia** (glia is from a Greek word *glia*, meaning glue). **Neurogli/o** refers to a neurogliaocyte/neurogliaocyte

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (m) **neuroglia**/cyte

Root

Plex

(From a Latin word **plexus**, meaning a network of nerves, it is used to mean a nerve plexus.)

Combining forms **Plex/o**



WORD EXERCISE 2

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **plexo**/pathy
- (b) **plexo**/genic

Root

Cephal

(From a Greek word **kephale**, meaning head.)

Combining forms **Cephal/o**



WORD EXERCISE 3

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **cephalo**/cele
- (b) **acephal**/ous
(This refers to an abnormal, dead fetus.)
- (c) **cephal**/haemat/oma
(Am. cephal/hemat/oma)
- (d) hydro/**cephal**/us
(Fig. 40; this is characterized by an excess of cerebro-spinal fluid in the brain and results in enlarged head, compression of the brain and mental retardation if not corrected.)

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (e) pertaining to a very small head
- (f) X-ray picture of the head
- (g) measurement of the head

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (h) macro/**cephal**/us
- (i) **cephalo**/gyric

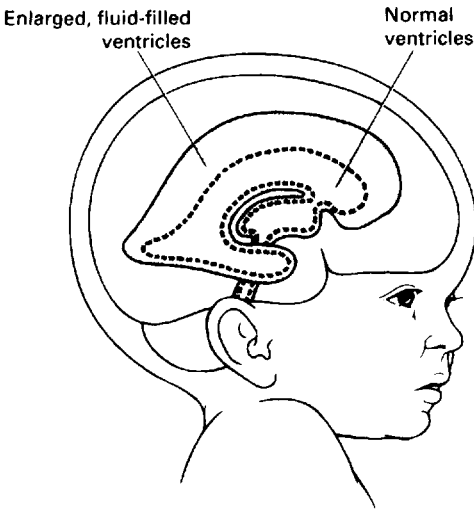


Figure 40 Hydrocephalus

Root

Encephal
(From a Greek word **encephalos**, meaning brain.)

Combining forms **Encephal/o -encephalon** is also used to mean the brain



WORD EXERCISE 4

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **encephal/oma**

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(b) **encephalo/py/osis**

(c) **an/encephal/ic**

(d) **electro/encephalo/graph**
(Fig. 41)

This instrument records the electrical activity of the brain through electrodes placed on the surface of the scalp. The electroencephalogram is traced on to a recording paper and appears as a series of waves. Analysis of the waves can be used to diagnose epilepsy, localize intracranial lesions and confirm brain death.

Using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

(e) technique of X-raying/
recording the brain

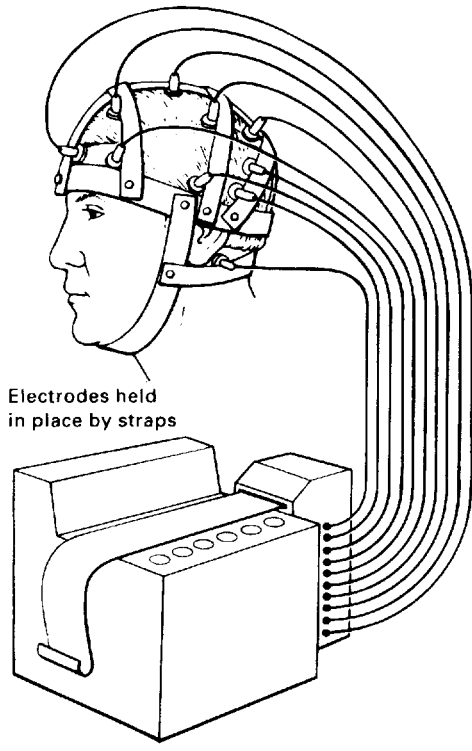


Figure 41 Electroencephalograph

Sometimes air or gas is injected into the spaces within the brain after removal of some cerebrospinal fluid. This assists in visualizing the fluid-filled spaces of the brain. A medical term that describes this process can be formed by using **pneumo-** as a prefix with the term you have just built. Remember *pneuma* means air/gas/wind.

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

(f) technique of X-raying brain
following injection of gas into
spaces within brain

(g) technique of making a trace/
recording of the electrical
activity of the brain

(h) disease of the brain

(i) protrusion or hernia of brain

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(j) **echo/encephalo/graph**
(Ultrasonic soundwaves are used.)

(k) **mes/encephalon**

(l) **polio/encephal/itis**

Root

Cerebr

(From a Latin word **cerebrum**, meaning brain. Here it refers to the cerebral hemispheres or cerebrum of the brain.)

Combining forms **Cerebr/o**



WORD EXERCISE 5

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) hardening of the cerebrum _____
- (b) condition of softening of the cerebrum _____
- (c) abnormal condition/disease of the cerebrum _____

Cerebrovascular accident

Cerebrovascular means pertaining to the blood vessels of the cerebrum (*vascul/o* meaning vessel, *-ar* meaning pertaining to) rupturing or blocking of these vessels results in a **stroke** or **apoplexy**. A reduction or holding back of blood flow (ischemia) within the cerebrum causes nerve cells to die because of lack of oxygen and nutrients. As cells in the cerebrum control movements of many parts of the body, paralysis of limbs and loss of speech are common symptoms of strokes. The severity of symptoms depends on the area of brain tissue damaged. Sometimes there is a recovery, and the patient is left with slight paralysis or **paresis**.

The cerebral cortex

The outer layer of the cerebrum is known as the cerebral cortex (*cortex* is from Latin, meaning rind/bark). It is extensively folded into fissures, giving it a large surface area. This part of the brain contains motor and sensory areas and is the site of consciousness and intelligence.

Root

Ventricul

(From a Latin word **ventriculum**, meaning ventricle or chamber. Here it refers to the cavities in the brain filled with cerebrospinal fluid, the cerebral ventricles.)

Combining forms **Ventricul/o**



WORD EXERCISE 6

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) visual examination of the ventricles _____
- (b) incision into the ventricles _____

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) **ventriculo**/graphy _____
(Air, gas or radio-opaque dyes are injected into the ventricles during this procedure.)

Use the Latin root **cisterna**, meaning a closed space serving as a reservoir for fluid, and your Exercise Guide, to write the meaning of the word below. The closed space referred to here is the subarachnoid space outside the brain.

- (d) **ventriculo**/cisterno/stomy _____
(This is an operation for hydrocephalus.)

Root

Crani

(From Greek **kranion** and Latin **cranium**, meaning skull. The bones of the skull protect the soft brain beneath.)

Combining forms **Crani/o**



WORD EXERCISE 7

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) incision into the skull _____
- (b) the measurement of skulls _____
- (c) pertaining to within the cranium (use *-al*) _____

Root

Gangli**Gangli**

(From a Greek word **ganglion**, meaning swelling. Here it refers to knots of nerve cell bodies located outside the central nervous system known as ganglia.)

Combining forms **Gangli/o**, note that root **-ganglion-** is also used



WORD EXERCISE 8

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word using **gangli/o** that means:

- (a) tumour of a ganglion

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (b) pre/**ganglion**/ic
- (c) post/**ganglion**/ic
- (d) **ganglion**/ectomy

Root

Mening

(From a Greek word **meninges**, meaning membrane. It refers to the meninges, the three membranes that surround the brain and spinal cord.)

Combining forms **Mening/i/o**



WORD EXERCISE 9

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words using **mening/o** that mean:

- (a) inflammation of the meninges
- (b) hernia or protrusion of the meninges
- (c) condition of bursting forth (of blood) from meninges

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (d) **meningo**/encephalo/cele
- (e) **meningo**/encephal/itis
- (f) **meningo**/encephalo/pathy
- (g) **meningi**/oma

The outer of the three membranes of the meninges is known as the **dura mater**. The injection of local anaesthetic into the spine above the dura, i.e. into the epidural space, is known as an epidural block. It is often used for a forceps birth or caesarean section delivery (epi- means above or upon).

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (h) epi/**dur**/al
- (i) sub/**dur**/al haemat/oma
- (Fig. 42) (Am. hemat/oma)

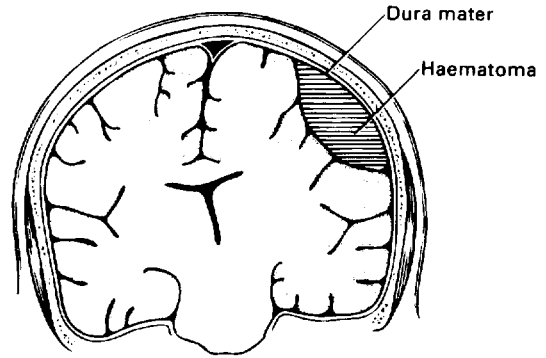


Figure 42 Subdural haematoma (Am. hematoma)

This is a common condition seen by neurologists following head injuries. It requires surgery via the cranium to seal leaking blood vessels and remove the blood clot. Surgery also relieves pressure on the brain tissue preventing further damage.

The two inner meninges, the **pia mater** and the **arachnoid membrane**, are thin. When these are inflamed the condition is known as **leptomeningitis** (from a Greek word *leptos*, meaning thin/slender). When the thick outer dura mater is inflamed it is known as **pachymeningitis** (pachy meaning thick). When meningitis is caused by a bacterium, the coccus *Neisseria meningitidis*, it is referred to as **meningococcal meningitis**.

Root

Radicul

(From a Latin word **radicula**, meaning root. Here we are using it to mean the spinal nerve roots that emerge from the spinal cord.)

Combining forms **Radicul/o**



WORD EXERCISE 10

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **radiculo**/ganglion/itis
- (b) **radiculo**/neur/itis

Another combining form **radic/o** is also derived from this root, e.g.

(c) **radico/tomy**

Root

Myel

(From a Greek word **myelos**, meaning marrow. It is used in reference to marrow within bones and also to spinal marrow, i.e. the soft spinal cord within the spine. Here we use it to mean the spinal cord.)

Combining forms **Myelo/o**



WORD EXERCISE 11

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **myelo/mening/itis**

(b) **meningo/myelo/cele**

(c) **myelo/radicul/itis**

(d) **myelo/encephal/itis**

(e) **myelo/phthisis**

(f) **polio/myel/itis**

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

(g) hardening of the spinal marrow

(h) condition of softening of the spinal marrow

(i) technique of making an X-ray of the spinal cord

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(j) **myelo/dys/plasia**

(k) **myel/a/trophy**

(l) **syringo/myel/ia**

Root

Rachi

(From a Greek word **rhachis**, meaning spine.)

Combining forms **Rachi/o**



WORD EXERCISE 12

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(a) **rachio/meter**

(b) **rachio/centesis**

Rachiocentesis (Fig. 43) is performed to obtain a sample of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) from the subarachnoid space in the lumbar region of the spinal cord. This procedure is commonly known as a **lumbar puncture** or **spinal tap**.

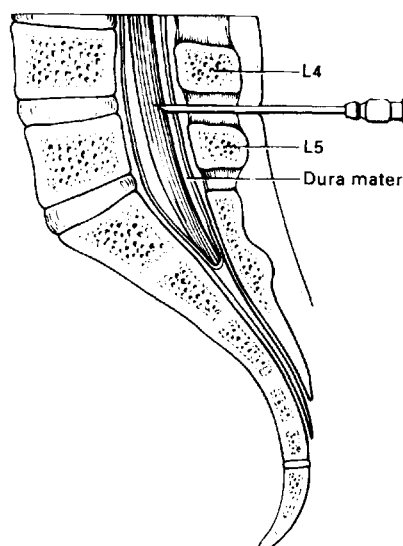


Figure 43 Lumbar puncture

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(c) **rachi/schisis**
(synonymous with spina bifida)

Root

Pleg

(From Greek **plege**, meaning a blow, it is now used to mean a paralysis. Strokes, i.e. cerebrovascular accidents, are often the cause of this condition; these occur when a blockage or haemorrhage in the brain leads to destruction of cells that control motor activities.)

Combining forms **pleg-** used as the suffix **-plegia**



WORD EXERCISE 13

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) quadri/**pleg**/ia
(paralysis of limbs)
- (b) hemi/**pleg**/ia
(paralysis of right or
left side of the body)
- (c) para/**pleg**/ia
(paralysis of lower limbs)
- (d) di/**pleg**/ia
(paralysis of like parts
on either side of body)
- (e) tetra/**pleg**/ia

Root

Aesthesi

(From Greek **aisthesis**, meaning
perception or sensation.)

Combining forms **Aesthe/s/i/o**, **Esthe/s/i/o** (Am.)



WORD EXERCISE 14

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) an/**aesthes**/ia
(Am. an/esthes/ia)
- (b) an/**aesthe**/tic
(Am. an/esthe/tic)
- (c) an/**aesthesio**/logy
(Am. an/esthesio/logy)
- (d) an/**aesthesio**/logist
(Am. an/esthesio/logist)
- (e) hemi/an/**aesthes**/ia
(Am. hemi/an/esthes/ia;
refers to one side of the body)

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (f) hypo/**aesthes**/ia
(Am. hypo/esthes/ia)
- (g) hyper/**aesthes**/ia
(Am. hyper/esthes/ia)

The term **paraesthesia** (Am. **paresthesia**) is used to mean any abnormal sensations, such as 'pins and needles' (from Greek word *para*, meaning near).

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (h) pertaining to following/after
anaesthesia (Am. anesthesia)
- (i) pertaining to before anaesthesia
(Am. anesthesia)

Root

Narc

(From a Greek word **narke**, meaning
stupor; it is used in medicine to refer to
an abnormally deep sleep induced by a
drug (narcotic). This is a different level
of consciousness from **anaesthesia**
(Am. **anesthesia**); patients are not
oblivious to pain and can be woken up.)

Combining forms **Narco/o**



WORD EXERCISE 15

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **narc**/osis

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (b) **narco**/therapy

Root

Alges

(From a Greek word **algos**, meaning
a sense of pain.)

Combining forms **Alges/i/o**



WORD EXERCISE 16

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **alg**/es/ia
- (b) an/**alg**/es/ia
- (c) hyper/**alg**/es/ia
- (d) an/**alg**/es/ic
(a drug)

Psychiatry

Disorders that interfere with the normal functioning of the brain may affect behaviour and personality, i.e. the mind. The study of the mind and treatment of its disorders is a specialist branch of medicine known as psychiatry. A psychiatrist is a person with medical qualifications who has specialized in the study and treatment of mental disease. The following terms are used by psychiatrists:

Root

Psych

(From Greek **psyche**, meaning soul or mind.)

Combining forms **Psych/o**



WORD EXERCISE 17

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **psycho**/logy

Note. A psychologist is not usually medically qualified and cannot treat disorders by means of drugs or surgery. Psychologists study human behaviour: for example, an educational psychologist may study intelligence and behaviour of school children.

(b) **psych**/ic

(c) **psycho**/pathy

Note. A psychopath is a person with a specific type of personality disorder in which he/she exhibits antisocial behaviour.

(d) **psych**/osis

Note. Psychoses originate in the mind itself, in contrast to neuroses which are mental conditions believed to arise because of stresses and anxieties in the patient's environment. Neurotic comes from *neur/o* meaning nerves and *tíc*, meaning pertaining to; in psychiatry it means pertaining to a neurosis.

(e) **psycho**/tropic drug

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(f) **psycho**/somat/ic

(g) **psych**/iatry

Root

Phob

(From a Greek word **phobos**, meaning fear.)

Combining forms **phob-**, used in the suffix **-phobia**



WORD EXERCISE 18

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(a) acro/**phob**/ia

(b) agora/**phob**/ia

(c) aqua/**phob**/ia

(d) cancro/**phob**/ia

(e) necro/**phob**/ia

Root

Epilept

(From Greek **epileptikos**, meaning a seizure. It refers to epilepsy, the disordered electrical activity of the brain that produces a 'fit' and unconsciousness.)

Combining forms **Epilept/i/o**



WORD EXERCISE 19

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **epilepto**/genic

(b) post/**epilept**/ic

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(c) **epilepti**/form

Modern treatments of mental disease involve drug treatments and occasionally surgery. One of the most useful physical methods of treatment that brings about improvement in depressive states, mania and stupor is **electroconvulsive therapy** (ECT). This involves the application of a high voltage to the head via electrodes placed on its surface.

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

Patients with suspected neurological (*neurolog-* meaning neurology, *-ical* meaning pertaining to) disorders are

examined by neurologists. Much information about the state of health of the nervous system can be gained from relatively simple testing of reflex actions using a tendon hammer (Fig. 44). One such test you are probably familiar with is the knee jerk reflex where the sensory nerve endings in the patella (knee cap) are tapped with a hammer. In a healthy patient the response will be that muscles in the thigh will contract, causing the leg to jerk upwards. A normal reflex action will indicate that the nerve pathway from the knee through the spinal cord is working normally.



Figure 44 Tendon hammer

More detailed examinations of the nervous system require specialized equipment, described below.

Computerized tomography

This is a technique of making a recording using a **tomograph**, an X-ray machine that produces images of cross-sections through the body.

Positron Emission Tomography (PET)

This is a technique of imaging the distribution of positron emitting radioisotopes administered to the body. Particular isotopes can be taken up by active brain cells making this technique particularly useful for studying brain metabolism. More information about PET is included in Unit 18.

Electroencephalography

This is the technique of making a recording using an **electroencephalograph**, a machine that produces a tracing of the electrical activity of the brain. This procedure is used to aid diagnosis of epilepsy, brain tumours and other disorders of the brain (see Fig. 41).

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)

This recently developed technique using nuclear magnetic resonance is particularly useful for imaging the soft tissue of the brain and spinal cord. The patient is placed in an intense magnetic field, hydrogen atoms in the nerve tissue are excited with radio waves and signals from them are detected and computed into a

picture. The procedure does not have the risks associated with X-rays.

The stereotaxic instrument

This is a device used in neurosurgery to locate precise positions within the brain by three-dimensional measurement. The stereotaxic instrument is fixed to the skull and is used to guide probes that destroy or stimulate brain tissue in patients with serious neurological or psychological problems.

Revise the names of all instruments and examinations mentioned in this unit, and then try Exercises 20 and 21.



WORD EXERCISE 20

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) encephalo- graphy	1. instrument for testing reflexes
(b) pneumoence- phalography	2. instrument that images serial sections of body using X-rays
(c) ventriculo- scopy	3. measurement of the cranium
(d) tendon hammer	4. technique of making X-ray/recording of the brain after injection of air into ventricles
(e) tomograph	5. technique of making X-ray/recording of the brain
(f) craniometry	6. technique of viewing ventricles



WORD EXERCISE 21

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) magnetic resonance imaging	1. technique of imaging serial sections of body using X-rays

Column A	Column B	Column C
(b) lumbar puncture	_____	2. technique of making a recording of the electrical activity of the brain
(c) myelography	_____	3. technique of imaging soft tissues of brain and spinal cord without using X-rays
(d) computed axial tomography	_____	4. technique of making an X-ray/recording of brain ventricles
(e) electroencephalography	_____	5. technique of making an X-ray/recording of the spinal cord
(f) ventriculography	_____	6. technique of removing cerebrospinal fluid from spinal cord



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 91.



CASE HISTORY 8

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on cerebrovascular accident; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Cerebrovascular accident (Stroke)

Mr H, a single 56-year-old white male, became ill early in the day of admission whilst eating his breakfast. He had felt dizzy, developed a headache and complained of impaired vision in one eye. These symptoms were later followed by signs of a right-sided **hemiplegia**, **hemiparasthesia** and **aphasia**. Three weeks prior to his illness he had suffered a **TIA** in which he developed mild, right **hemisensory loss** in his arm and a sudden, transient **hemianopia**. His **GP** suspected a **cerebral infarction** or **intracranial haemorrhage** (Am. hemorrhage) and he was referred to the **neurology** unit for assessment.

On admission in the evening, Mr H's right arm and leg were **flaccid** and **hyper-reflexic**. A **CT** scan demonstrated a low density area (an infarct) without a mass effect. There was a loud localized **bruit** in his neck and digital subtraction angiography (**DSA**) detected a tight **stenosis** of the left internal carotid artery. Following diagnosis of a stroke caused by internal carotid artery **occlusion**, he was given anticoagulant therapy. Two weeks later he underwent a successful internal carotid **endarterectomy**.

The long term prognosis of Mr H's **neurological** deficit is uncertain. Three weeks following surgery he showed signs of recovery and had sufficient language to be intelligible. He maintained a rigorous programme of **physiotherapy** (Am. physical therapy) and speech therapy following initial recovery. The **occupational therapist** visited his home and advised on the installation of aids that will assist his **rehabilitation**. Unfortunately, Mr H is severely depressed following his resignation as a structural engineer with a building company.

WORD HELP

aphasia condition of being without speech

bruit abnormal sound upon auscultation (listening to body sounds)

CT computerized tomography, technique of imaging a 'slice' through the body using X-rays

DSA digital subtraction angiography. Technique of making two X-rays, one taken before an injection of dye into a blood vessel. The original computerized image is subtracted from the first, producing a clear image

endarterectomy removal of the inside of a blood vessel to remove a blockage and open its lumen

flaccid relaxed, flabby and soft

GP general practitioner (family doctor)

haemorrhage (Am. hemorrhage) bursting forth of blood from a vessel

hemianopia loss of half the vision in each eye (loosely used to mean half the vision in one eye)

infarction process of forming an infarct, a piece of dead tissue formed by the failure of its blood supply

neurological pertaining to neurology

occlusion state of being closed up

occupational therapist specialist in providing treatment/assistance aimed at helping people with physical and/or mental disability to become independent

physiotherapy (Am. physical therapy) employment of physical measures (massage/exercise etc.) to restore function following injury or disease

rehabilitation re-education that allows a sick or injured person to take his or her place in the world or gain some independence

stenosis abnormal condition of narrowing

TIA transient ischaemic (Am. ischemic) attack (i.e. insufficient blood supply to the brain)

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) cerebrovascular _____
- (b) hemiplegia _____
- (c) hemiparaesthesia
(Am. hemiparesthesia) _____
- (d) hemisensory loss _____
- (e) cerebral _____
- (f) intracranial _____
- (g) neurology _____
- (h) hyper-reflexic _____

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the nervous system and psychiatry are listed below. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

CAT	computerized axial tomography
CN	cranial nerve
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid
CVA	cerebrovascular accident
ECT	electroconvulsive therapy
EEG	electroencephalogram
ICP	intracranial pressure
KJ	knee jerk
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
NCVs	nerve conduction velocities
PR	plantar reflex
SDH	subdural haematoma (Am. hematoma)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the nervous system:

Aesthesi/o	sensation
Alges/i	sense of pain
Cephal/o	head
Cerebr/o	cerebrum/brain
Cistern/o	cistern/subarachnoid space
Crani/o	cranium
Dur/o	dura mater
Encephal/o	brain
Epilept/o	epilepsy
Esthesi/o (Am.)	sensation
Gangli/o	ganglion
Gli/a/o	gluelike/neuroglial cells
Mening/o	meninges
Motor	action/moving/set in motion
Myel/o	marrow/spinal cord
Narc/o	stupor/numbness
Neur/o	nerve
Plex/o	network, e.g. of nerves
Psych/o	mind
Rachi/o	spine
Radicul/o	nerve root
Somat/o	body
Syring/o	tube/cavity
Ventricul/o	ventricle

NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

- a- _____
- acro- _____
- agora- _____
- an- _____
- di- _____
- dys- _____
- electro- _____
- epi- _____

hemi-

hyper-

hypo-

lepto-

macro-

meso-

micro-

pachy-

para-

polio-

poly-

post-

pre-

quadri-

sub-

tetra-

*Combining forms of word roots*aesthesi/o
(Am. esthesi/o)

algēs/i

aqua-

cancer/o

cephal/o

cerebr/o

cistern/o

crani/o

cyt/o

dur/o

ech/o

encephal/o

epilept/o

fibr/o

gangli/o

gli/a/o

haemat/o
(Am. hemat/o)

hist/o

hydro-

iatr/o

mening/o

motor

myel/o

narc/o

necr/o

neur/o

plex/o

pneum/o

psych/o

py/o

rachi/o

radicul/o

somat/o

syring/o

ventricul/o

Suffixes

-al

-algia

-cele

-centesis

-cyte

-ectomy

-form

-genic _____

-gram _____

-graph _____

-graphy _____

-gyric _____

-ia _____

-ic _____

-ical _____

-itis _____

-logist _____

-logy _____

-malacia _____

-meter _____

-metry _____

-oma _____

-osis _____

-ous _____

-pathy _____

-phobia _____

-phthisis _____

-plasia _____

-plegia _____

-rrhagia _____

-schisis _____

-sclerosis _____

-scopy _____

-stomy _____

-therapy _____

-tomy _____

-tic _____

-trauma _____

-trophy _____

-tropic _____

-us _____

▶ NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT ◀



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 8A

Below are some combining forms that refer to the anatomy of the nervous system. Indicate which part of the system they refer to by putting a number from the diagrams (Figs 45 and 46) next to each word.

- (a) crani/o _____
- (b) encephal/o _____
- (c) meningi/o _____
- (d) neur/o _____
- (e) rachi/o _____
- (f) gangli/o _____
- (g) ventricul/o _____
- (h) radicul/o _____
- (i) cephal/o _____
- (j) myel/o _____

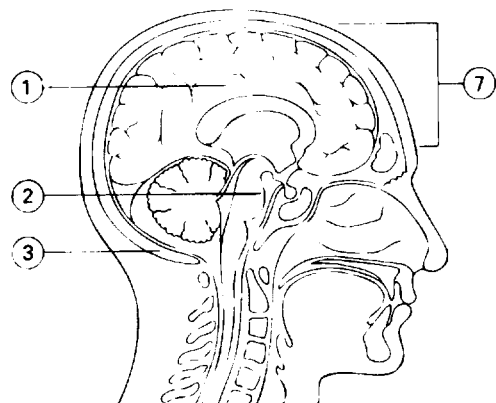


Figure 45

Sagittal section through the head

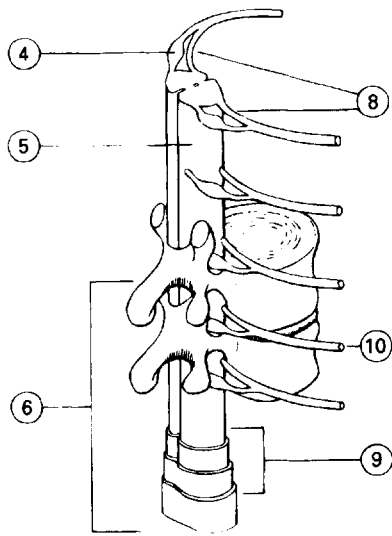


Figure 46 Section through the spine

Score

10

Column A	Column B	Column C
(l) meso-	12. grey matter
(m) micro-	13. half
(n) pachy-	14. thin/slender
(o) para-	15. open space
(p) polio-	16. upon/above
(q) post-	17. small
(r) pre-	18. two/double
(s) quadri-	19. point/extremity
(t) tetra-	20. beside/near

Score

20

Test 8B

Prefixes

Match each prefix in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) a-	1. after/behind
(b) acro-	2. middle
(c) agora-	3. water (i)
(d) an-	4. water (ii)
(e) aqua-	5. thick
(f) di-	6. large
(g) epi-	7. without/not (i)
(h) hemi-	8. without/not (ii)
(i) hydro-	9. four (i)
(j) lepto-	10. four (ii)
(k) macro-	11. before/in front of

Test 8C

Combining forms of word roots

Match each combining form in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) aesthesi/o (Am. esthesi/o)	1. spine
(b) cephal/o	2. mind
(c) cistern/o	3. gas/wind/air
(d) crani/o	4. stupor/deep sleep
(e) dur/o	5. body
(f) encephal/o	6. membranes of CNS
(g) epilept/o	7. ganglion
(h) gangli/o	8. cranium/skull
(i) gli/a/o	9. ventricles of brain
(j) mening/o	10. head

Column A	Column B	Column C	Column A	Column B	Column C
(k) motor	_____	11. dura mater	(f) -gyric	_____	6. formation of an opening into ...
(l) myel/o	_____	12. fit/seizure/epilepsy	(g) -malacia	_____	7. having form of
(m) narc/o	_____	13. cistern/reservoir/ subarachnoid space	(h) -osis	_____	8. condition of increase in cell formation/number of cells
(n) neur/o	_____	14. root (of spinal nerve)	(i) -phobia	_____	9. nourishment
(o) pneum/o	_____	15. nerve	(j) -phthisis	_____	10. hardening
(p) psych/o	_____	16. marrow (of spine)	(k) -plasia	_____	11. wasting away/decay
(q) rachi/o	_____	17. pertaining to action	(l) -plegia	_____	12. condition of softening
(r) radicul/o	_____	18. glue (cell)	(m) -schisis	_____	13. recording/ tracing/X-ray
(s) somat/o	_____	19. brain			
(t) ventricul/o	_____	20. sensation			

Score

20

Test 8D

Suffixes

Match each suffix in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) -centesis	_____	1. condition of paralysis
(b) -form	_____	2. abnormal condition/ disease of
(c) -genic	_____	3. technique of recording/making an X-ray
(d) -gram	_____	4. pertaining to the body
(e) -graphy	_____	5. pertaining to affinity for/ stimulating

(n) -sclerosis	_____	14. puncture
(o) -somatic	_____	15. treatment
(p) -stomy	_____	16. splitting
(q) -therapy	_____	17. condition of fear
(r) -trauma	_____	18. pertaining to movement around a centre
(s) -trophy	_____	19. formation/ originating in
(t) -tropic	_____	20. injury/shock

Score

20

Test 8E

Write the meaning of:

- (a) neuromyelitis _____
- (b) rachiotomy _____
- (c) meningomalacia _____
- (d) encephalomyelopathy _____
- (e) ventriculoscope _____

Score

5

Test 8F

Build words that mean:

- (a) disease of the meninges _____
- (b) instrument for measuring the head _____
- (c) inflammation of the spinal cord and spinal nerve roots _____
- (d) condition of bursting forth (of blood) from the brain _____
- (e) study of cells of the nervous system _____

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

The eye

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 9 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the eye
- build medical words relating to the eye
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the eye.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

a-	without
ambly-	dull/dim
an-	without
aniso-	unequal
bin-	two each/double
dia-	through
diplo-	double
dys-	difficult/painful
electro-	electrical
en-	in/within
ex-	out/out of/away from
hemi-	half
iso-	same/equal
mono-	one
pan-	all
presby-	old man/old age
uni-	one
xero-	dry

Roots/Combining forms

aden/o	gland
aesthesi/o	sensation
blast/o	immature germ cell/cell that forms ...
blenn/o	mucus
chromat/o	colour
cyst/o	bladder
esthesi/o (Am.)	sensation
helc/o	ulcer
lith/o	stone
motor	action
my/o	muscle

myc/o
nas/o
neur/o
py/o
rhin/o
ton/o

fungus
nose
nerve
pus
nose
tone/tension

Suffixes

-agogic	pertaining to inducing/stimulating
-al	pertaining to
-algia	condition of pain
-ar	pertaining to
-cele	swelling/protrusion/hernia
-centesis	puncture
-chalasis	slackening/loosening
-conus	cone-like protrusion
-dialysis	separating
-ectasis	dilatation/stretching
-ectomy	removal of
-edema (Am.)	swelling due to fluid
-erysis	drag/draw/suck out
-gram	X-ray/tracing/recording
-graph	usually an instrument that records
-graphy	technique of recording/making an X-ray
-gyric	pertaining to circular motion
-ia	condition of
-itis	inflammation of
-kinesis	movement
-logist	specialist who studies ...
-malacia	condition of softening
-meter	measuring instrument
-metrist	specialist who measures
-metry	process of measuring
-mileusis	to carve
-nyxis	perforation/pricking/puncture
-oedema	swelling due to fluid
-oma	tumour/swelling
-osis	abnormal condition/disease/ abnormal increase
-pathy	disease of
-pexy	fixation (by surgery)
-plasty	surgical repair/reconstruction
-plegia	condition of paralysis
-ptosis	falling/displacement/prolapse
-rrhaphy	suture/stitch/suturing
-rrhea (Am.)	excessive flow
-rrhoea	excessive flow
-schisis	cleavage/splitting/parting
-sclerosis	abnormal condition of hardening
-scope	viewing instrument
-scopy	visual examination
-spasm	involuntary muscle contraction
-stenosis	abnormal condition of narrowing
-stomy	formation of an opening into ...
-synechia	condition of adhering together
-thermy	heat
-tome	cutting instrument
-tomy	incision into

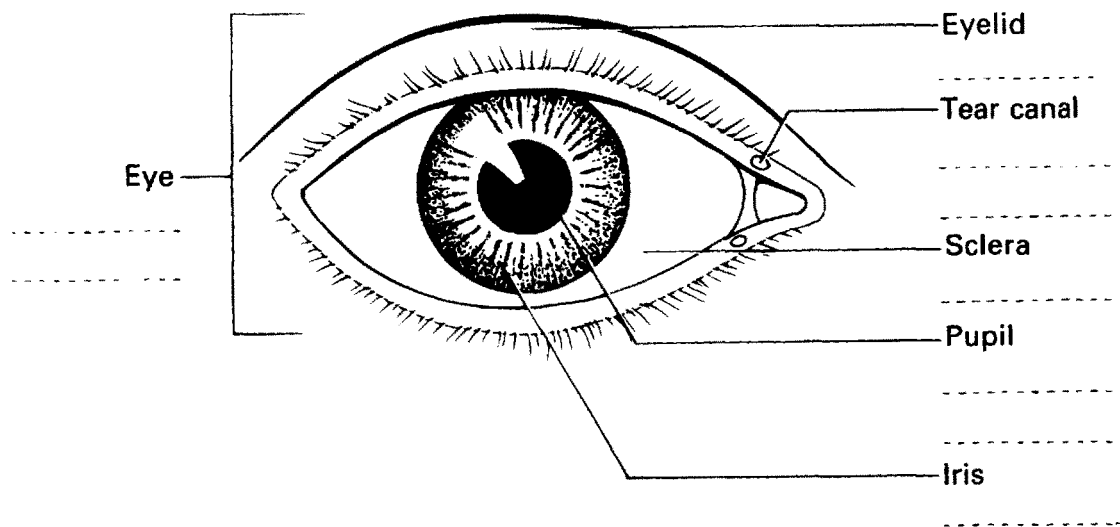


Figure 47 The eye

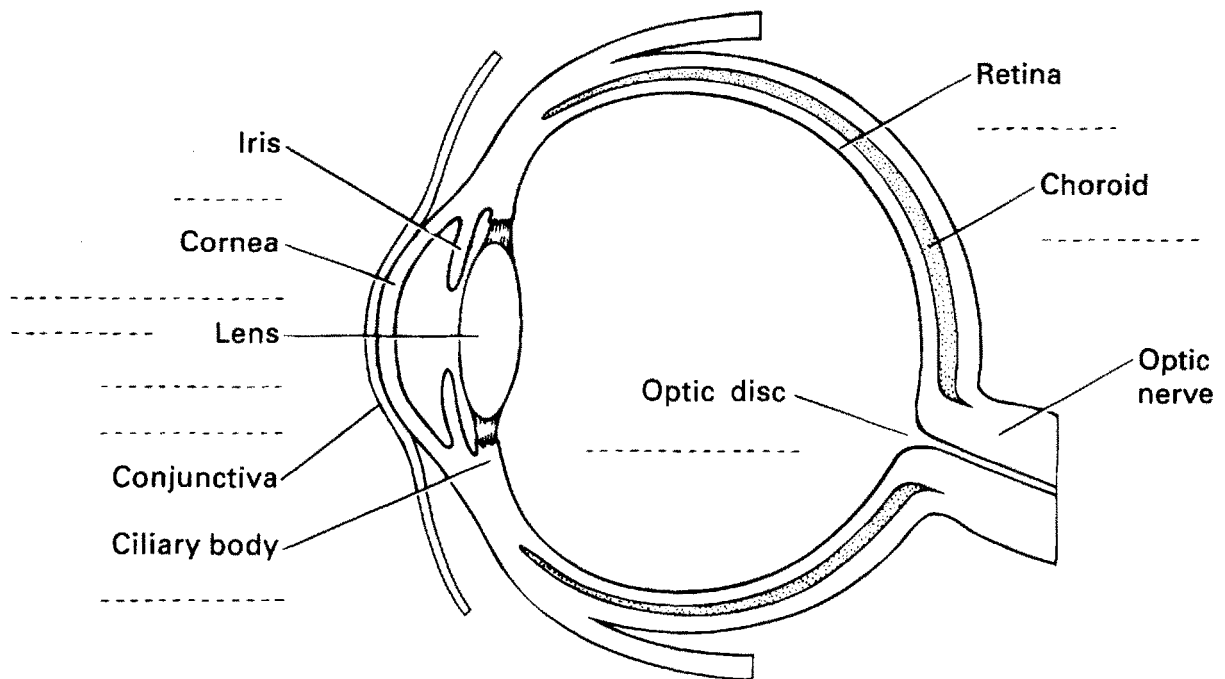


Figure 48 Section through the eye



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–21, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figure 47 and 48 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line – more than one component may relate to the same position. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 117.)

Blephar/o
Choroid/o
Corne/o
Cor/e/o
Cycl/o
Dacry/o

Ir/o
Lacrim/o
Irid/o
Kerat/o
Ocul/o
Ophthalm/o

Papill/o
Pupill/o
Phac/o
Phak/o
Retin/o
Scler/o

The eye

The eyes are our main sense organs. Light enters the eye through the pupil and transparent cornea, it passes through the lens and is focused on to the light-sensitive retina. In the retina light stimulates receptors (rods and cones) to generate nerve impulses in sensory neurons; these impulses travel via neurons in the optic nerve to areas of the brain concerned with vision. In the visual cortex of the brain the impulses are interpreted as an image.

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–21 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Ophthalm

(From a Greek word **ophthalmos**, meaning eye.)

Combining forms

Ophthalm/o

(Be careful with spelling *ophth.*)



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) an instrument to view the eye
- (b) a medically qualified person who specializes in the study of the eye and its disorders
- (c) condition of paralysis of the eye
- (d) inflammation of the eye (synonymous with ophthalmia)

- (e) abnormal condition of
fungal infection of the eye

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (f) **ophthalm**/algia
- (g) **ophthalmo**/gyric
- (h) **ophthalmo**/neur/itis
- (i) pan/**ophthalm**/itis
- (j) **ophthalmo**/tono/meter
(This instrument is used to detect raised pressure within the eye and is used in the diagnosis of glaucoma. Sometimes **tonometer** is used alone and **tonography** is used to mean the technique of using a tonometer.)
- (k) blenn/**ophthalm**/ia
- (l) xer/**ophthalm**/ia
- (m) en/**ophthalmos**
- (n) ex/**ophthalmos**

Root

Ocul

(From Latin **ocularis**, meaning of the eye.)

Combining forms

Ocul/o



WORD EXERCISE 2

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) mon/**ocul**/ar

- (b) uni/**ocul**/ar _____
- (c) bin/**ocul**/ar _____
- (d) **oculo**/motor nerve _____
- (e) **oculo**/nas/al _____
- (f) electro/**-oculo**/gram _____
(This is produced from an electrodiagnostic test; it also records eye position and movement.)

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (g) **oculo**/gyric _____

Root

Opt

(From **optikos**, a Greek word meaning sight. The words optical and optician are derived from this root. Optical means pertaining to sight; optician refers to a person who prescribes spectacles to correct defects in sight.)

Combining forms **Opt/o**



WORD EXERCISE 3

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **opto**/meter _____

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (b) **opto**/metry _____
- (c) **opto**/metrist _____
- (d) **opto**/myo/meter _____
- (e) **opto**/aesthes/ia _____
(Am. opto/esthes/ia)

Orthoptics means pertaining to the study and treatment of muscle imbalances of the eye (squints). *Ortho* means straight, therefore orthoptics refers to making eyes and sight straight.

The combining form **optic/o** is also derived from the same root as **opt/o**. It also means pertaining to sight but it is sometimes used to mean optic nerve, e.g. optico-pupillary – pertaining to the pupil and optic nerve.

Root

Op

(From Greek **ops**, also meaning eye. It is usually used as the suffix *-opia* to mean a condition of defective vision. Many focusing defects can be corrected by prescribing appropriate spectacles.)

Combining forms **Op-**, used in the suffixes **-opia** and **-opsia**



WORD EXERCISE 4

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) dipl/**op**/ia _____
- (b) presby/**op**/ia _____
(refers to a condition in which the lens loses its elasticity; near point approximately 1 m)
- (c) ambly/**op**/ia _____
- (d) hemi/a/chromat/**ops**/ia _____

Three other common words that use *-opia* are difficult to understand from their word components. These are:

Hypermetropia

Describes long-sightedness in which light rays are focused beyond the retina (*hyper* – beyond/above). The light rays when measured focus beyond the retina (*metr* – measure).

Myopia

Short-sightedness. *My* comes from *myein*, meaning to close. Presumably the eye tends to close when trying to view a distant object.

Emmetropia

Light falls directly on to the retina in its correct position, with no errors. This word refers to normal/ideal vision (*em* meaning in, *metr* meaning measure).

- (e) dys/**op**/ia _____
- (f) hemi/an/**op**/ia _____

Root

Blephar

(From a Greek word **blepharon**, meaning eyelid, sometimes used for eyelash.)

Combining forms **Blephar/o**



WORD EXERCISE 5

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (a) condition of paralysis of the eyelid

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (b) spasm of the eyelid
(c) falling/displacement of the eyelid
(d) suturing of an eyelid

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (e) **blepharo/pyo/rrhoea**
(Am. blepharo/pyo/rrhea)
(f) **blepharo/aden/itis**
(refers to meibomian glands lying in grooves on inner surface of eyelids)
(g) **blepharo/synechia**
(h) **blepharo/chalasis**

Root

Scler

(From Greek **skleros**, meaning hard. Here it is used to mean the sclera, the tough, outer white part of the eye. The sclera is continuous with the transparent cornea at the front of the eye.)

Combining forms **Scler/o**



WORD EXERCISE 6

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **sclero/tomy**
(b) **scler/ectasis**
(c) **sclero/tome**

Root

Kerat

(From a Greek word **keras**, meaning horn, here it is used to mean the cornea. The cornea, located at the front of the eye, provides strength, refractive power and transmits light into the eye.)

Combining forms **Kerat/o**



WORD EXERCISE 7

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **sclero/kerat/itis**
(b) **kerato/metry**
(c) **kerato/tome**

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (d) **kerato/plasty**
(e) **kerato/centesis**
(f) **kerato/helc/osis**
(g) **kerato/nyxis**
(h) **kerato/mileusis**
(actually an operation for correction of myopia or short-sightedness)
(i) **kerato/conus**
(See Fig. 49)

The word cornea comes from the Latin word *corneus*, also meaning horny. Corneoplasty is synonymous with keratoplasty, an operation performed to replace a diseased or damaged cornea with a corneal graft.

Abnormal curvatures of the cornea cause light rays to focus on the retina unevenly. This is known as **astigmatism**.

The sclera and cornea are covered at the front of the eye with a delicate, transparent membrane that also lines the inner surface of the eyelids. This membrane is the **conjunctiva**; it is prone to irritation and infection, giving rise to **conjunctivitis**.

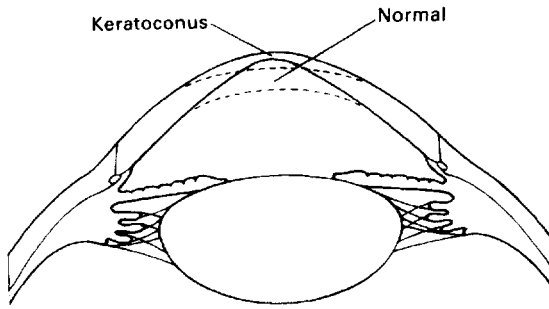


Figure 49 Keratoconus

Root

Ir

(From a Greek word **iris**, meaning rainbow. It refers to the iris, the circular, coloured membrane surrounding the pupil of the eye. Contraction of its muscle fibres regulates the size of the aperture (pupil) within the iris, thereby regulating the amount of light entering the eye.)

Combining forms **Ir/o, irid/o**



WORD EXERCISE 8

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words using irid/o that mean:

- falling/displacement of the iris
- inflammation of the cornea and iris (use kerat/o)

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- irido/kinesis**
- irido/dialysis**
- irido/cele**

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- sclero/**irido**/dialysis
- sclero/**irido**/tomy
- kerato/**ir**/itis

Root

Cycl

(From a Greek word **kyklos**, meaning circle. Here it is used to mean the circular ciliary body of the eye.)

Combining forms **Cycl/o**

The ciliary body, a structure composed of muscles and processes, lies behind the iris (see Fig. 48). It connects the circumference of the iris to the choroid (the middle layer of the eyeball), changes the shape of the lens and secretes a watery fluid, aqueous humor, into the anterior chamber. Study Figure 50 which shows the anterior cavity in front of the lens and the posterior cavity behind the lens. The anterior cavity is subdivided into the anterior chamber in front of both lens and iris and the posterior chamber between the lens and iris. The ciliary body continuously secretes aqueous humor into the anterior chamber. The fluid is drained into veins in the sclera at the same rate that it is produced. A raised intraocular pressure due to the accumulation of excess aqueous humor may result in **glaucoma**, a common eye disorder that causes pain and damage. The posterior cavity is filled with vitreous humor, a soft jelly-like material which maintains the spherical shape of the eyeball.

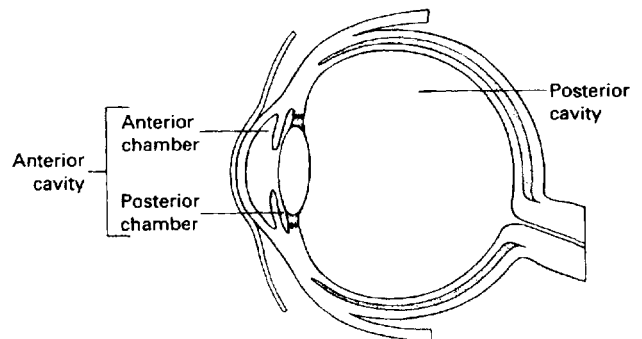


Figure 50 Section through the eye



WORD EXERCISE 9

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- irido/**cycl**/itis
- cyclo**/plegia

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- cyclo**/dia/thermy

Root**Goni**

(From a Greek word **gonia**, meaning angle. Here it means the peripheral angle of the anterior chamber. This angle is observed when evaluating types of glaucoma.)

Combining forms **Goni/o**

**WORD EXERCISE 10**

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) instrument to measure the angle of the anterior chamber
- (b) instrument to view the angle of the anterior chamber
- (c) operation to make an incision into the angle of the anterior chamber (for glaucoma)

Root**Pupill**

(From a Latin word **pupilla**, meaning the pupil or aperture of the eye.)

Combining forms **Pupill/o**

**WORD EXERCISE 11**

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **pupillo**/plegia
- (b) **pupillo**/metry

Root**Cor**

(From a Greek word **kore**, meaning pupil of the eye.)

Combining forms **Cor/e/o**

**WORD EXERCISE 12**

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) iso/**cor**/ia

- (b) an/iso/**cor**/ia

- (c) **coreo**/pexy

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (d) **coreo**/plasty

Root**Choroid**

(From a Greek word **choroeides**, meaning like a fetal membrane. It is used to mean the choroid, the middle pigmented vascular coat of the posterior five-sixths of the eyeball. The choroid absorbs light and stops reflections within the eye.)

Combining forms **Choroid/o**

**WORD EXERCISE 13**

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **choroido**/cycl/itis
- (b) sclero/**choroid**/itis

The word **uvea** from Latin *uva*, meaning grape, is used when referring to the pigmented parts of the eye. These parts include the iris, ciliary body and choroid. **Uveitis** refers to inflammation of all pigmented parts of the eye.

Root**Retin**

(From a Medieval/Latin word **retina**, probably derived from *rete*, meaning net. It refers to the retina, the light-sensitive area of the eye. Light is focused on to the retina by the lens.)

Combining forms **Retin/o**

**WORD EXERCISE 14**

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **retino**/blast/oma
- (b) **retino**/malacia
- (c) **retino**/schisis

- (d) **retino**/pathy _____
- (e) **retino**/scopy _____

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (f) picture/recording of the
electrical activity of the retina _____
- (g) inflammation of the
choroid and retina _____
- (h) inflammation of the
retina and choroid _____

Note. The words in (g) and (h) above are synonymous. Remember, when building words, we add the components as we read the meaning, e.g. in (g) we begin with **-itis**, then add **choroid/o**, followed by **retin/o**; in (h) we begin with **-itis**, but then add **retin/o**, followed by **choroid/o**, thus making two different words that have the same meaning.

Root

Papill

(From a Latin word **papilla**, meaning nipple-shaped.)

Combining forms **Papill/o**

Sensory neurons leaving the retina travel through the optic nerve at the back of the eye. Where the sensory neurons collect and form the optic nerve there is a disc-shaped area (visible through the pupil) in the retina. This area is known as the optic disc or optic papilla. **Papill/o** refers to the optic disc.



WORD EXERCISE 15

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **papill**/oedema _____
(Am. papill/edema)

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (b) inflammation of the optic
disc and retina _____

A common disorder of the lens is the development of a cataract, an opacity of the lens or lens capsule. There are many types of cataract. Two common ones are hard

cataracts, that tend to form in the elderly, and soft cataracts, that occur at any age. The lens can be removed by **phako**-emulsification. In this process ultrasonic vibrations liquefy the lens and it is then sucked out. The lens is replaced with an intraocular implant, i.e. a plastic lens.

Root

Phak

(From a Greek word **phakos**, meaning lentil. It refers to the lentil-shaped lens of the eye. The lens is a crystalline structure surrounded by the lens capsule. The shape of the lens and its focus are changed by ligaments connected to muscles in the ciliary body. The ability to change focus of the lens is known as accommodation.)

Combining forms **Phac/o** or **phak/o**



WORD EXERCISE 16

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words using **phac/o** that mean:

- (a) condition of softening of a lens
(i.e. a soft cataract) _____
- (b) instrument to view the lens
(actually to view changes in
its shape) _____

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (c) hardening of a lens
(i.e. a hard cataract) _____
- (d) condition of without
a lens (use a-) _____

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (e) **phaco**/cyst/ectomy _____
- (f) **phaco**/erysis _____

Root

Scot

(From a Greek word **skotos**, meaning darkness. It is used to refer to a **scotoma**, i.e. normal and abnormal blind spots in the visual field where vision is poor.)

Combining forms **Scot/o**, also used as **scotoma**



WORD EXERCISE 17

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **scoto**/meter
 (b) **scoto**/metry

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (c) **scotoma**/graph

Root

Lacrim

(From a Latin word **lacrima**, meaning tear. Here it is used to mean lacrimal apparatus.)

Combining forms **Lacrim/o**

The eye is cleansed and lubricated by the lacrimal apparatus (Fig. 51) consisting of a gland, sac and ducts. The gland produces lacrimal fluid that washes over the eyeball and drains into the lacrimal sac through lacrimal ducts. The lacrimal sac in turn drains the fluid into the nose through the nasolacrimal duct.

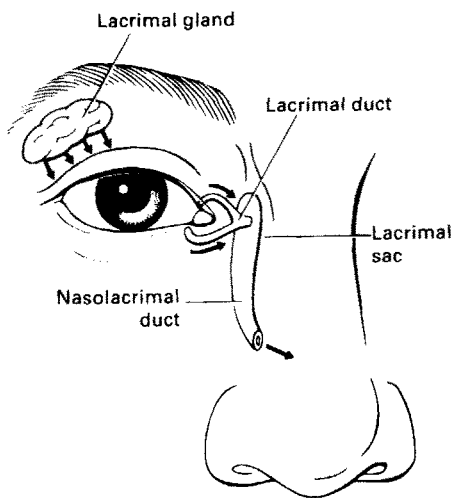


Figure 51 Lacrimal apparatus



WORD EXERCISE 18

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) incision into the lacrimal apparatus

- (b) pertaining to the lacrimal apparatus and nose (use nas/o)

Root

Dacry

(From a Greek word **dakryon**, also meaning tear or lacrimal apparatus.)

Combining forms **Dacryo/o**



WORD EXERCISE 19

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **dacryo**/cyst
 (refers to lacrimal sac)
 (b) **dacryocysto**/graphy
 (c) **dacryocysto**/rhino/stomy
 (d) **dacryo**/lith
 (e) **dacryo**/stenosis
 (f) **dacry**/agocic

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (g) **dacryocysto**/blenno/rrhoea
 (Am. dacryo/cysto/blenno/rrhea)
 (h) **dacryocysto**/py/osis

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

Before completing Exercises 20 and 21, revise the names of instruments and examinations used in this unit.

Match each term in column A with a description from column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.



WORD EXERCISE 20

- | Column A | Column B | Column C |
|---------------------------|----------|---|
| (a) ophthalmoscope | 1. | X-ray picture of lacrimal apparatus |
| (b) dacryocystogram | 2. | measurement of scotomas |
| (c) keratome | 3. | instrument that measures tension within the eye |

Column A	Column B	Column C
(d) pupillometry	4. instrument for visual examination of the eye
(e) optometry	5. instrument to cut the cornea
(f) scotometry	6. instrument for measuring power of ocular muscles
(g) ophthalmotonometer	7. technique of measuring sight
(h) optomyometer	8. technique of measuring pupils (width)



WORD EXERCISE 21

Match each term in column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) sclerotome	1. visual examination of retina
(b) optometer	2. technique of recording raised pressure/tension in the eye
(c) keratometry	3. technique of making an X-ray of tear (lacrimal) sac
(d) pupillometer	4. instrument to measure sight
(e) phacoscope	5. instrument to cut the sclera
(f) retinoscopy	6. measurement of cornea (curvature)
(g) tonography	7. instrument to view the lens
(h) dacryocystography	8. instrument that measures pupils (width)



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 109.



CASE HISTORY 9

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on optic neuritis; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Optic neuritis

Mr I, a 22-year-old physics researcher, consulted his **optometrist** complaining of **diplopia** whilst driving and reading. He had also experienced dizziness and **ophthalmalgia** when moving his eyes. He thought his symptoms were caused by his inappropriate, old spectacles. The optometrist observed **optic neuritis** involving the head of the optic disc (**papillitis**) and perimetry detected a central **scotoma**. She contacted Mr I's GP and he was sent to the neurologist.

Examination revealed the pupils were equal, round and reactive to light but there was a mild paradoxical dilation of the left pupil to the swinging flashlight test. Vertical gaze was normal. There was an abnormal **ocular** movement on lateral gaze, when he attempted to look left, his right eye failed to adduct and although the left eye abducted, it showed a coarse horizontal nystagmus. When he looked to the right, there was no abnormality in the movement of the left eye but the right eye failed to abduct. His abdominal reflexes were absent and his gait was unsteady and wide.

Clinical examination indicated Mr I had lesions in the right medial longitudinal fasciculus (**MLF**) of the midbrain producing an internuclear ophthalmoplegia and sixth nerve palsy. This was confirmed with an MRI scan that revealed small periventricular foci within the pons in the region of the MLF.

Mr I was informed that he had multiple sclerosis (MS) and received appropriate counselling for his condition.

WORD HELP

- abducted** to move away from the median line (an imaginary line running down the centre of the body)
- adduct** to move towards the median line or midline of the body
- foci** centre of disease process (visible on the MRI scan)
- gait** manner of walking
- GP** general practitioner (family doctor)
- internuclear** between nuclei (here nucleus refers to a collection of nerve cells that control eye movement)
- lateral gaze** looking to the side
- MLF** medial longitudinal fasciculus, a region of the midbrain that controls eye movement
- MRI** magnetic resonance imaging

WORD HELP (Contd.)

multiple sclerosis nervous system disease characterized by loss of the myelin sheaths of nerve fibres and their replacement with scar (hard) tissue; the sclerotic (hard) patches being found at numerous sites in the brain, spinal cord and optic nerves (synonymous with disseminated sclerosis)

nystagmus involuntary rapid jerky eye movement

palsy paralysis

paradoxic dilation contradictory occurrence (here the left pupil dilates in response to light)

perimetry measuring acuity (clearness of vision) throughout the visual field

periventricular pertaining to around a ventricle (fluid-filled cavity in the brain)

pons part of the hind brain above the medulla

swinging flashlight test a test in which a flashlight is used to detect a pupillary defect

vertical gaze looking up and down

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) optometrist
- (b) diplopia
- (c) ophthalmalgia
- (d) optic neuritis
- (e) papillitis
- (f) scotoma
- (g) ocular
- (h) ophthalmoplegia

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the eye:

Blephar/o	eyelid
Choroid/o	choroid
Chromat/o	colour
Conjunctiv/o	conjunctiva
Cor/e/o	pupil
Corne/o	cornea
Cycl/o	ciliary body
Dacry/o	tear/lacrimal apparatus/ducts etc.

Quick Reference (Contd.)

Combining forms relating to the eye:

Goni/o	angle (of anterior chamber)
Ir/o	iris
Irid/o	iris
Kerat/o	cornea
Lacrim/o	tear/lacrimal apparatus/ducts etc.
Ocul/o	eye
Ophthalm/o	eye
Optic/o	optic nerve
Opt/o	sight
Papill/o	optic disc
Phac/o	lens
Phak/o	lens
Pupill/o	pupil
Retin/o	retina
Scler/o	sclera
Scot/o	dark
Ton/o	tone/tension
Uve/o	uvea (pigmented part of eye)

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the eye are listed below. Note, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

Accom	accommodation of eye
Astigm	astigmatism of eye
Em	emmetropia/good vision
IOFB	intraocular foreign body
My	myopia/short sight
OD	oculus dexter/right eye
OS	oculus sinister/left eye
OU	oculus unitas/both eyes together
POAG	primary open angle glaucoma
PERLAC	pupils equal, react to light, accommodation consensual
VA	visual acuity
VF	visual field



NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK





WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

a- _____

ambly- _____

an- _____

bin- _____

dia- _____

diplo- _____

dys- _____

electro- _____

em- _____

en- _____

ex- _____

hemi- _____

hyper- _____

iso- _____

mono- _____

ortho- _____

pan- _____

presby- _____

uni- _____

xero- _____

Combining forms of word roots

aesthesi/o _____
(Am. esthesi/o)

aden/o _____

blast/o _____

blenn/o _____

blephar/o _____

choroid/o _____

chromat/o _____

conjunctiv/o _____

cor/e/o _____

cycl/o _____

cyst/o _____

dacry/o _____

goni/o _____

helc/o _____

ir/o _____

irid/o _____

kerat/o _____

lacrim/o _____

lith/o _____

motor _____

myc/o _____

my/o _____

my (from myein) _____

nas/o _____

neur/o _____

ocul/o _____

ophthalm/o _____

optic/o _____

opt/o _____

papill/o _____

phak/o, phac/o _____

pupill/o _____

py/o

retin/o

rhin/o

scler/o

scot/o

sten/o

ton/o

uve/o

Suffixes

-agogic

-al

-algia

-cele

-centesis

-chalasis

-conus

-desis

-dialysis

-ectasis

-ectomy

-erysis

-gram

-graph

-graphy

-gyric

-ia

-itis

-kinesis

-logist

-malacia

-meter

-metrist

-metry

-mileusis

-nyxis

-oedema
(Am. -edema)

-oma

-opia

-osis

-pathy

-pexy

-phobia

-plasty

-plegia

-ptosis

-rrhaphy

-rrhoea
(Am. -rrhea)

-schisis

-sclerosis

-scope

-scopy

-spasm

-synechia

-thermy

-tome

-tomy



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 9A

Below are some combining forms that refer to the anatomy of the eye. Indicate which parts of the eye they refer to by putting a number from the diagrams (Figs 52 and 53) next to each word:

- (a) irid/o _____
- (b) scler/o _____
- (c) pupil/o _____
- (d) lacrim/o _____
- (e) blephar/o _____
- (f) phac/o _____
- (g) papill/o _____
- (h) retin/o _____
- (i) kerat/o _____
- (j) ophthalmoneur/o _____

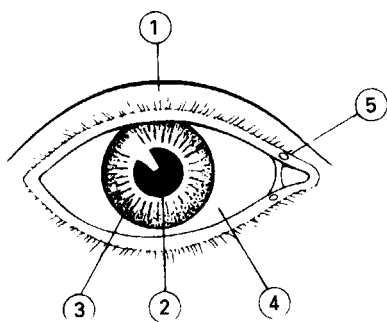


Figure 52 The eye

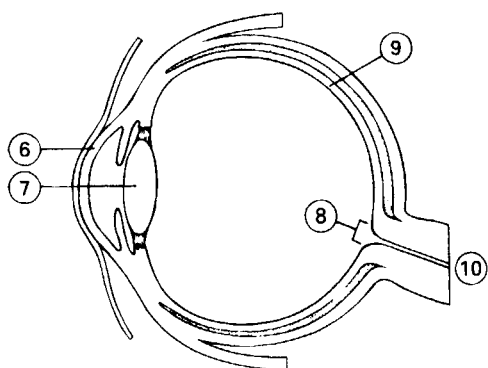


Figure 53 Section through the eye

Score

10

Test 9B

Prefixes and suffixes

Match each prefix or suffix in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) -agogic	_____	1. dragging/drawing/sucking out
(b) ambly-	_____	2. splitting
(c) -dialysis	_____	3. swelling (due to fluid)
(d) electro-	_____	4. one (i)
(e) -erysis	_____	5. one (ii)
(f) -graph	_____	6. person who measures
(g) -gyric	_____	7. old man, old age
(h) hemi-	_____	8. all
(i) -kinesis	_____	9. condition of sticking together
(j) -metrist	_____	10. dulled/made dim
(k) -mileusis	_____	11. condition of vision (defective)
(l) mono-	_____	12. pertaining to inducing/stimulating
(m) -oedema (Am. -edema)	_____	13. pertaining to turning/circular movement
(n) -opia	_____	14. instrument that records
(o) pan-	_____	15. movement
(p) presby-	_____	16. to carve
(q) -rrhaphy	_____	17. suturing/stitching

Column A	Column B	Column C
(r) -schisis	18. separating	
(s) -synechia	19. electrical	
(t) uni-	20. half	

Score

20

Column A	Column B	Column C
(q) pupill/o	17. eyelid	
(r) retin/o	18. conjunctiva	
(s) scotom/o	19. tear (i)	
(t) uve/o	20. tear (ii)	

Score

20

Test 9C

Combining forms of word roots

Match each combining form in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) blephar/o	1. cone (shaped)	
(b) choroid/o	2. cornea	
(c) chromat/o	3. optic disc	
(d) conjunctiv/o	4. iris (rainbow)	
(e) conus	5. pupil	
(f) cycl/o	6. sight/vision	
(g) dacry/o	7. pigmented area of eye (uvea)	
(h) helc/o	8. retina	
(i) irid/o	9. colour	
(j) kerat/o	10. ulcer	
(k) lacrim/o	11. lens	
(l) ocul/o	12. ciliary body	
(m) ophthalm/o	13. darkness/blind spot	
(n) optic/o	14. choroid	
(o) papill/o	15. eye (i)	
(p) phak/o	16. eye (ii)	

Test 9D

Write the meaning of:

(a) ophthalmoplasty	
(b) retinopexy	
(c) dacryopyorrhoea (Am. dacryopyorrhea)	
(d) sclero-iritis	
(e) oculomotor nerve	

Score

5

Test 9E

Build words that mean:

(a) visual examination of the eye	
(b) inflammation of eyelid	
(c) any disease of cornea	
(d) instrument to view the retina	
(e) condition of paralysis of iris	

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

This page intentionally left blank

10

The ear

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 10 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the ear
- build medical words relating to the ear
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the ear.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

bin-	two each/double
electro-	electrical
endo-	within/inside
macro-	large
micro-	small

Roots/Combining forms

laryng/o	larynx
myc/o	fungus
pharyng/o	pharynx

py/o
rhin/o
ten/o

pus
nose
tendon

Suffixes

-al	pertaining to
-algia	condition of pain
-ar	pertaining to
-centesis	puncture to remove fluid
-eal	pertaining to
-ectomy	removal of
-emphraxis	blocking/stopping up
-genic	pertaining to formation/ originating in
-gram	X-ray tracing/picture/recording
-graphy	technique of recording/making an X-ray
-ia	condition of
-itis	inflammation of
-logy	study of
-meter	measuring instrument
-metry	process of measuring
-osis	abnormal condition/disease/ abnormal increase
-plasty	surgical repair/reconstruction
-rrhea (Am.)	excessive discharge/flow
-rrhoea	excessive discharge/flow
-sclerosis	abnormal condition of hardening
-scope	instrument to view
-scopy	technique of viewing/ examining
-stomy	formation of an opening/an opening
-tome	cutting instrument
-tomy	incision into

Ear

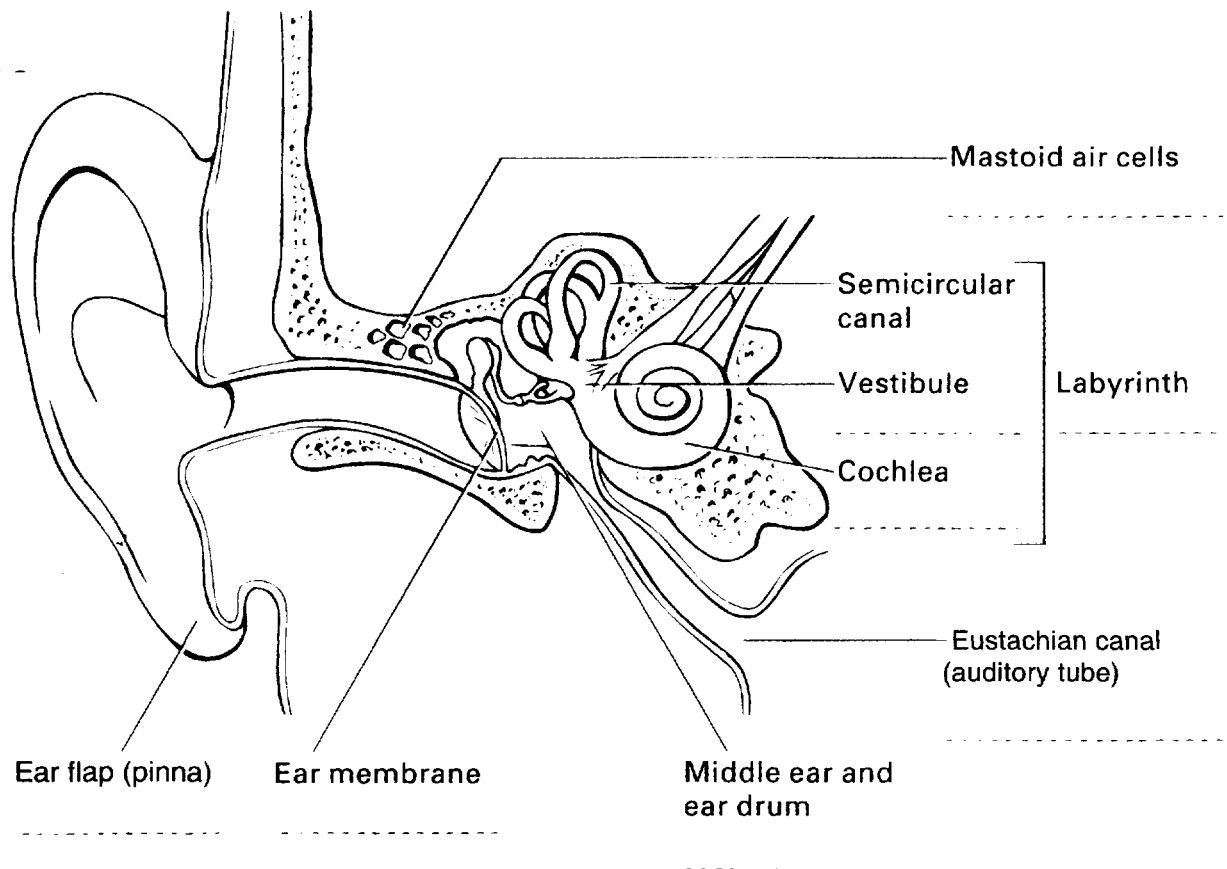


Figure 54 Section through the ear



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–14, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figure 54 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line – more than one component may relate to the same position. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 131.)

Auricul/o
Cochle/o
Labyrinth/o

Mastoid/o
Myring/o
Ot/o

Salping/o
Tympan/o
Vestibul/o

The ear

The ear is a major sense organ concerned with two important functions:

1. hearing
2. balance.

The ear provides an auditory input into the brain. Sound waves in the air cause vibrations in the ear drum and these are transmitted to the fluid-filled cochlea in the inner ear. The cochlea is the organ of hearing and contains

special receptor cells that generate nerve impulses in response to sound. Nerve impulses from the cochlea are relayed via sensory neurons to auditory areas in the brain where they are interpreted as sounds. The possession of two ears enables us to sense the direction of sound.

The vestibular apparatus of the inner ear contains receptors that detect changes in velocity and position of the body. Sensory impulses from the vestibular apparatus are relayed via sensory neurons to centres in the cerebellum and other regions of the brain where they are used in the neural processes that allow us to maintain our balance and upright posture.

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–14 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Ot

(From Greek word **otos**, meaning ear.)

Combining forms **Ot/o**



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) the study of the ear _____
- (b) instrument to view the ear _____
- (c) abnormal condition of _____
hardening of the ear
(actually due to new bone
formation in the middle ear)
- (d) abnormal condition of pus in _____
the ear

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (e) **oto/scopy** _____
- (f) **oto/rhino/laryngo/logy** _____
- (g) **oto/myc/osis** _____
- (h) **oto/pyo/rrhoea** _____
(Am. **oto/pyo/rrhea**)
- (i) **micr/ot/ia** _____
- (j) **macr/ot/ia** _____

The ear can be divided into three areas, the external, middle and inner ear. Infection and inflammation (**otitis**) can occur in any of these areas. The following terms are used to describe the position of the inflammation:

Otitis externa

inflammation of the external ear.

Otitis media

inflammation of the middle ear.

Otitis interna

inflammation of the inner ear.

Infection commonly begins in the middle ear because it is connected to the **nasopharynx** by a short tube known as the **Eustachian tube** (**auditory tube** or **pharyngo-tympanic tube**). This tube functions to equalize the pressure on either side of the ear drum but it also provides an entrance for microorganisms such as those present in upper respiratory tract infections.

Root

Aur

(From a Latin word **auris**, meaning ear.)

Combining forms **Aur/li**



WORD EXERCISE 2

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (a) instrument to view the ear _____
(otoscope) (Fig. 55)

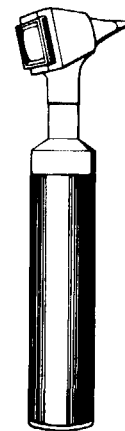


Figure 55 Otoscope/auriscope

Viewing of the ear canal and tympanic membrane is improved by using an **aural speculum** (Fig. 56), a device that is inserted into the external ear before examining with an **auriscope**.

The **auriscope** is used to examine the external ear canal and the ear membrane. Occasionally, the ear canal can become blocked by excessive wax production by the ceruminous (wax) glands in its lining. Wax can be removed by washing the ear with warm water using an aural syringe (Fig. 57) or using wax solvents to bring about cerumenolysis.

Image Not Available

Figure 56 Aural speculum

Image Not Available

Figure 57 Aural syringe

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(b) bin/**aur**/al

(c) end/**aur**/al

The Latin word *auricula* refers to the ear flaps (pinnae) of the external ear.

(d) bin/**auricul**/ar

Root

Myring

(A New Latin word **myringa**, meaning membrane. It refers to the tympanic membrane or ear drum.)

Combining forms **Myring/o**



WORD EXERCISE 3

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

(a) incision into the ear membrane
(allows air to enter to aid drainage)

(b) instrument used to cut the ear membrane

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

(c) abnormal condition of fungal infection of the ear membrane

Sometimes the tympanic membrane is surgically punctured to assist the drainage of fluid from the middle ear (as in glue ear). Once an opening is made in the membrane, fluid drains through the Eustachian tube (auditory tube) into the nasopharynx. A small plastic grommet (Fig. 58) can be fixed into the membrane to equalize the air pressure on either side of the membrane and allow drainage through the Eustachian tube for an extended period. The grommet eventually falls out and the membrane heals.

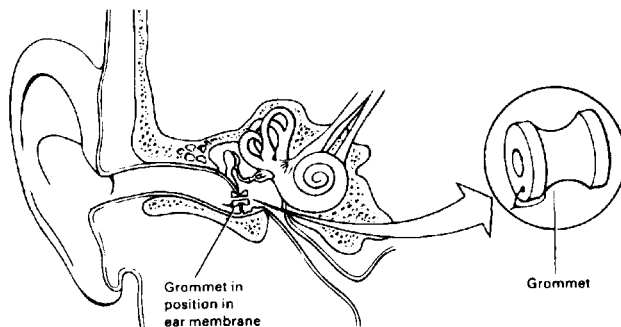


Figure 58 Grommet

Root

Typan

(From a Greek word **tympanon**, meaning drum. Here it refers to the tympanum, i.e. the cavity of the middle ear. It is also used to mean tympanic membrane.)

Combining forms **Typan/o**



WORD EXERCISE 4

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

(a) reconstructive surgery of the tympanum

(b) puncture of the tympanic membrane

(c) opening into the tympanum/tympanic membrane

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(d) **tyman**/itis

(e) **typano**/tomy

Root

Salping

(From Greek **salpigx**, meaning trumpet tube. Here it refers to the trumpet-shaped Eustachian tube that connects the middle ear to the nasopharynx. The Eustachian tube is also called the auditory tube or pharyngotympanic tube.)

Combining forms **Salping/o**



WORD EXERCISE 5

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **salping**/emphaxis _____
- (b) **salpingo**/pharyng/eal _____

Within the middle ear we find the smallest bones in the body, the ear ossicles (Fig. 59). These have been named **malleus**, **incus** and **stapes**. Their function is to transmit vibrations from the tympanic membrane to the oval window of the inner ear. Behind the oval window is a fluid-filled structure known as the **cochlea**, the organ of hearing. Within the cochlea are sensory hair cells (receptors) that respond to vibrations in the fluid by producing nerve impulses. The auditory area of the brain interprets nerve impulses from the cochlea as sound, enabling us to hear.

Root

Stapedi

(From a Latin word **stapes**, meaning stirrup, it refers to the **stapes**, the stirrup-shaped ear ossicle.)

Combining forms **Stapedi/o**



WORD EXERCISE 6

Using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (a) removal of the stapes _____

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (b) **stapedio**/teno/tomy _____

Root

Malle

(From a Latin word **malleus**, meaning hammer. It refers to the **malleus**, the hammer-shaped ear ossicle.)

Combining forms **Malle/o**



WORD EXERCISE 7

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **malleo**/tomy _____

Root

Incud

(From a Latin word **incus**, meaning anvil. It refers to the **incus**, the anvil-shaped ear ossicle.)

Combining forms **Incud/o**



WORD EXERCISE 8

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **incudo**/mall/eal _____
- (b) **incudo**/stapedi/al _____
- (c) **malleo**/**incud**/al _____



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Write the appropriate combining form for each ossicle on the dotted lines of Figure 59.

Sometimes the ear bones are referred to in a more general way, using **ossicle**, to mean small ear bones, e.g. **ossiculectomy** for removal of one or more ossicles, **ossiculotomy** for incision into the ear ossicles. The ossicles can be replaced by a plastic prosthesis that will transmit vibrations to the inner ear and restore hearing.

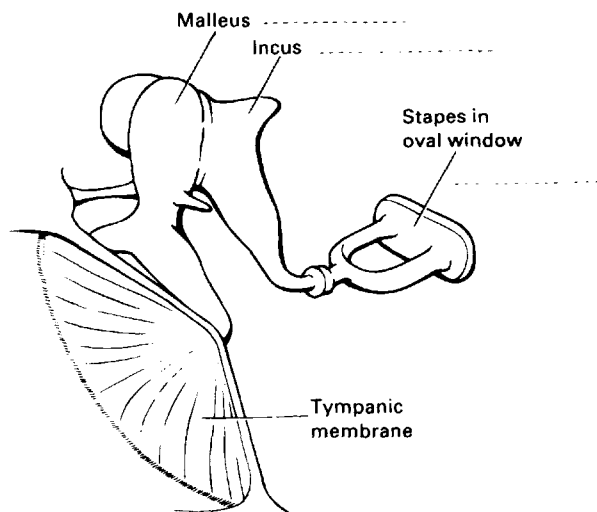


Figure 59 Ear ossicles

Root

Cochle

(From a Latin word **cochlea**, meaning snail. It refers to the cochlea, the snail shell-shaped anterior bony labyrinth of the inner ear.)

Combining forms **Cochle/o**



WORD EXERCISE 9

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) an opening into the cochlea
- (b) technique of recording the cochlea's electrical activity

Root

Labyrinth

(From a Greek word **labyrinthos**, meaning maze or anything twisted or spiral-shaped. Here it refers to the labyrinth of the inner ear.)

Combining forms **Labyrinth/o**

The inner ear consists of bony and membranous labyrinths. The bony labyrinth is a series of canals in the temporal bone filled with fluid. It consists of the cochlea (organ of hearing), vestibule and semicircular canals (organs of equilibrium).

The membranous labyrinth lies within the bony labyrinth and is also filled with fluid. Distension of the membranous labyrinth with excess fluid gives rise to **Ménière's** disease, symptoms of which include vertigo (dizziness) and deafness.

The portions of the inner ear concerned with balance are collectively known as the vestibular apparatus.



WORD EXERCISE 10

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) inflammation of a labyrinth
- (b) removal of a labyrinth

Root

Vestibul

(From the Latin word **vestibulum**, meaning entrance. It refers to the vestibule, the oval cavity in the middle of the bony labyrinth.)

Combining forms **Vestibul/o**



WORD EXERCISE 11

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **vestibulo/tomy**

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (b) **vestibulo/genic**

Root

Mast

(From a Greek word **mastos**, meaning breast. It refers to the nipple-shaped air cells or the air space within the mastoid process. The mastoid process is a bone located behind the external ear.)

Combining forms **Mastoid/o**



WORD EXERCISE 12

Using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (a) condition of pain in the _____
mastoid region

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (b) incision into the mastoid _____
bone
- (c) removal of tissue from _____
the mastoid process
- (d) inflammation of the mastoid _____
process and tympanum

Root

Audi

(From a Latin word **audire**, meaning to hear.)

Combining forms **Audi/o**



WORD EXERCISE 13

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (a) the science dealing with _____
the study of hearing

Note. An **audiometrist** is a technician who has specialized in the study of hearing. He or she tests and measures a patient's hearing ability (*-ist* meaning a specialist who ...).

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (b) **audio**/meter _____
- (c) **audio**/gram _____
- (d) **audio**/metry _____

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

Revise the names of all instruments and examinations used in this unit before completing Exercise 14.



WORD EXERCISE 14

Match each term in Column A with a description in Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) audiometer	_____	1. technique of measuring hearing
(b) audiometry	_____	2. instrument for viewing ear
(c) aural speculum	_____	3. technique of viewing ear
(d) auriscope	_____	4. device for removing wax from ear
(e) otoscopy	_____	5. device to aid drainage of fluid from ear
(f) aural syringe	_____	6. instrument that measures hearing
(g) grommet	_____	7. device that holds ear canal open



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 124.



CASE HISTORY 10

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on otitis media with effusion; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Otitis media with Effusion (OME, 'Glue Ear')

Miss J, a 5-year old infant, presented to her GP with persistent **otalgia**. She had a previous history of **acute otitis media** with **perforation** in the left ear and had been treated with **broad-spectrum** antibiotics. Her parents were concerned that her hearing and speech were impaired. Miss J's nursery teacher reported that she was inattentive in class and seemed 'in a world of her own'. Her mother had also noticed her snoring and had been worried about her breathing during a recent cold. Her tonsils were very large, she had a poor nasal airway and was breathing through her mouth, signs consistent with **adenoid hypertrophy**.

Pneumatic otoscopy by her GP revealed **bilateral** otitis media with **effusion** (**non-suppurative OM**) and she was referred to the **audiometrist** for a hearing assessment. She cooperated well and a pure-tone **audiogram** was obtained indicating a mild loss of 20–30 **decibels** in hearing threshold. Over the next 6 months she received several courses of antibiotic therapy. Initially, there were signs of improvement but her condition did not resolve and she was referred to the **paediatric otology** clinic.

The consultant **otologist** confirmed the diagnosis. Her tympanic membranes were dull, retracted and lacked mobility. Fluid containing air bubbles was visible in the right ear, and she had a negative **Rinne test**.

Tympanometry revealed a flat **tympanogram** characteristic of glue ear with reduced **compliance** and a negative middle ear pressure. Her audiogram indicated **conductive deafness** across the entire frequency range of 35–40 decibels.

Miss J underwent **adenoidectomy** and **anterior**, bilateral **myringotomy** under general anaesthesia. A thick **mucoid** secretion was **aspirated** from both ears and **grommets** (**tympanostomy** tubes) inserted into her tympanic membranes. Six months later the grommets were still in position and her hearing and speech were much improved.

WORD HELP

- acute** symptoms/signs of short duration
- adenoid** resembling a gland (here refers to an enlarged pharyngeal tonsil seen in the nasopharynx of children)
- adenoidectomy** removal of an adenoid
- anterior** pertaining to towards the front
- aspirated** withdrawal by suction of fluid
- bilateral** pertaining to two sides
- broad-spectrum** affecting a wide range (of infective organisms)

WORD HELP (Contd.)

- compliance** quality of yielding to pressure (here referring to the movement of the ear drum in relation to pressure)
- conductive deafness** deafness caused by impairment of conduction of sound waves through the normal route
- decibel** unit used for measurement of intensity of sound
- effusion** a fluid discharge into a part/escape of fluid into an enclosed space
- GP** general practitioner (family doctor)
- grommet** plastic tube inserted into the ear drum to ventilate the middle ear
- hypertrophy** increase in size of cells in a tissue (above normal growth/nourishment)
- mucoid** resembling mucus
- otitis media** condition of inflammation of the middle ear
- otologist** specialist who studies the ear and its disorders
- paediatric** pertaining to medical care and treatment of children
- perforation** a hole made through a membrane or similar tissue
- pneumatic** pertaining to air (pneumatic otoscopy refers to viewing the ear membrane whilst stimulating it with a puff of air to observe its movement)
- Rinne test** test using a tuning fork for diagnosis of conductive deafness
- suppurative** having a tendency to produce pus
- tympanogram** recording of the compliance and impedance of the tympanic membrane

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) otalgia
- (b) otoscopy
- (c) audiometrist
- (d) audiogram
- (e) otology
- (f) tympanometry
- (g) myringotomy
- (h) tympanostomy

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the ear:

Audi/o	hearing
Aur/i	ear
Auricul/o	ear flap
Cochle/o	cochlea
Incud/o	incus (an ear ossicle)
Labyrinth/o	labyrinth (of inner ear)
Malle/o	malleus (an ear ossicle)
Mastoid/o	mastoid process/mastoid air cells
Myring/o	ear membrane (drum)
Ossicul/o	ossicle
Ot/o	ear
Salping/o	Eustachian/auditory tube
Stapedi/o	stapes (an ear ossicle)
Tympan/o	ear drum/middle ear
Vestibul/o	vestibular apparatus (of inner ear)

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the ear are listed below. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

AC	air conduction
AD	auris dextra (right ear)
AS	auris sinistra (left ear)
ASOM	acute suppurative otitis media
aud	audiology
BC	bone conduction
CSOM	chronic suppurative otitis media
ENT	ear, nose and throat
ETF	Eustachian tube function
OE	otitis externa
OM	otitis media
oto	otology

answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

bin- _____

electro- _____

endo- _____

macro- _____

micro- _____

Combining forms of word roots

audi/o _____

aur/i _____

auricul/o _____

cochle/o _____

incud/o _____

labyrinth/o _____

laryng/o _____

malle/o _____

mastoid/o _____

myc/o _____

myring/o _____

ossicul/o _____

ot/o _____

pharyng/o _____

py/o _____

rhin/o _____

salping/o _____

stapedi/o _____

ten/o _____

tympan/o _____

vestibul/o _____

NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your

Suffixes

-al	.....
-algia	.....
-ar	.....
-aural	.....
-centesis	.....
-eal	.....
-ectomy	.....
-emphraxis	.....
-externa	.....
-genic	.....
-gram	.....
-ia	.....
-interna	.....
-ist	.....
-itis	.....
-media	.....
-logy	.....
-meter	.....
-metry	.....
-osis	.....
-plasty	.....
-rrhoea (Am. -rrhea)	.....
-sclerosis	.....
-scope	.....
-stomy	.....
-tome	.....
-tomy	.....



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 10A

Below are some combining forms that refer to the anatomy of the ear. Indicate which part of the system they refer to by putting a number from the diagram (Fig. 60) next to each word.

- (a) ot/o
 (b) myring/o
 (c) tympan/o
 (d) nasopharyng/o
 (e) ossicul/o
 (f) labyrinth/o
 (g) cochle/o
 (h) mastoid/o
 (i) salping/o
 (j) vestibul/o

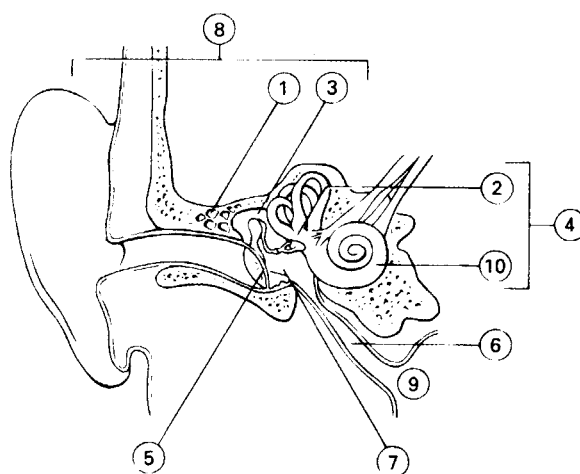


Figure 60 Section through the ear

Score

10

Test 10B

Prefixes and suffixes

Match each prefix or suffix in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) -al	1. incision into
(b) -ar	2. flow/discharge
(c) -aural	3. external
(d) -eal	4. instrument that cuts
(e) electro-	5. hardening
(f) -emphraxis	6. inner/internal
(g) endo-	7. middle
(h) -externa	8. pertaining to (i)
(i) -gram	9. pertaining to (ii)
(j) -ia	10. pertaining to (iii)
(k) -interna	11. small
(l) macro-	12. in/within
(m) -media	13. abnormal condition/ disease of
(n) -metry	14. pertaining to the ear
(o) micro-	15. picture/ X-ray/tracing
(p) -osis	16. electrical
(q) -rrhoea (Am. -rrhea)	17. condition of
(r) -sclerosis	18. large
(s) -tome	19. to block/stop up
(t) -tomy	20. measurement

Score

20

Test 10C

Combining forms of word roots

Match each combining form in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) audi/o	1. stapes
(b) aur/i	2. larynx
(c) auricul/o	3. nose
(d) incud/o	4. Eustachian tube
(e) labyrinth/o	5. ear (i)
(f) laryng/o	6. ear (ii)
(g) malle/o	7. ear flap (pinna)
(h) mastoid/o	8. ear drum/ middle ear
(i) myc/o	9. vestibular apparatus
(j) myring/o	10. malleus
(k) ossicul/o	11. fungus
(l) ot/o	12. hearing
(m) pharyng/o	13. ear membrane
(n) py/o	14. tendon
(o) rhin/o	15. incus
(p) salping/o	16. pharynx
(q) stapedi/o	17. mastoid
(r) ten/o	18. ear bones/ossicles
(s) tympan/o	19. pus
(t) vestibul/o	20. labyrinth of inner ear

Score

20

Test 10D

Write the meaning of:

- (a) otolaryngology
- (b) tympanosclerosis
- (c) stapediostibular
- (d) tympanomalleal
- (e) vestibulocochlear

Score

5

Test 10E

Build words that mean:

- (a) puncture of mastoid process
- (b) removal of the ear membrane
- (c) surgical repair of the ear
- (d) condition of pain in ear
- (e) originating in the middle ear

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

The skin

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 11 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the skin
- build medical words relating to the skin
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the skin.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

a-	without
an-	without/not
auto-	self
crypto-	hidden
dys-	difficult/painful
epi-	above/upon/on
hyper-	above/excessive
hypo-	below/deficient
intra-	within/inside
pachy-	thick
para-	beside/near

sub-	under/below
xantho-	yellow
xero-	dry

Roots/Combining forms

aden/o	gland
aesthe/s/i/o	sensation/sensitivity
esthe/s/i/o	sensation/sensitivity
(Am.)	
lith/o	stone
motor	action
myc/o	fungus
phyt(e)	plant (fungus)
schiz/o	split/cleft

Suffixes

-al	pertaining to
-auxis	increase
-cyte	cell
-ia	condition of
-ic	pertaining to
-itis	inflammation of
-logist	specialist who studies
-lysis	breakdown/disintegration
-oma	tumour/swelling
-osis	abnormal condition/disease/ abnormal increase
-phagia	condition of eating
-plasty	surgical repair/reconstruction
-poiesis	formation
-rrhexis	break/rupture
-rrhea (Am.)	excessive discharge/flow
-rrhoea	excessive discharge/flow
-schisis	splitting/parting/cleaving
-tic	pertaining to
-tome	cutting instrument
-troph	nourishment/development
-tropic	pertaining to stimulating/affinity for

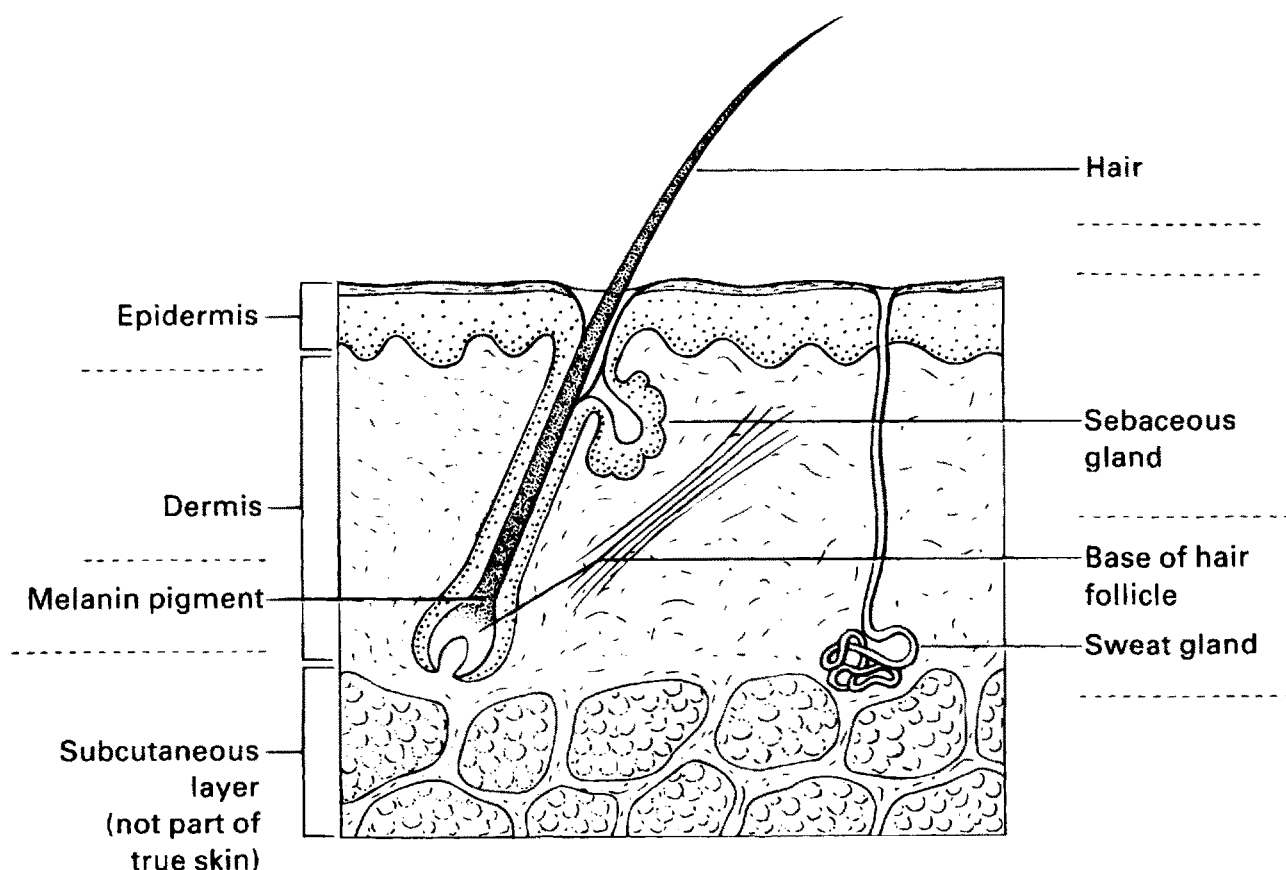


Figure 61 Section through the skin



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–9, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figure 61 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line – more than one component may relate to the same position. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 142.)

Derm/o
Hidraden/o
Kerat/o

Melan/o
Pil/o

Seb/o
Trich/o

The skin

The skin can be regarded as the largest organ in the body; it consists of two layers, the outer **epidermis** and the inner **dermis**. The skin protects us from the environment and plays a major role in thermoregulation. In its protective role, it prevents the body dehydrating, resists the invasion of microorganisms and provides protection from the harmful effects of ultraviolet light. Cells in the epidermis enable the surface of the skin to continuously regenerate, and the presence of elastic fibres and collagen fibres in the dermis make the skin tough and elastic.

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–9 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Derm

(From a Greek word **derma**, meaning skin.)

Combining forms **Derm/a/t/o**, also used as the suffix **-derma**

The medical specialty concerned with the diagnosis and treatment of skin disease is known as **dermatology** (-logy meaning study of).



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **dermat/osis**

Actinic dermatoses are conditions in which the skin is abnormally sensitive to light (from a Greek word *aktis*, meaning ray).

- (b) **epi/dermis**

The **epidermis** forms the outer layer of the body and it functions to protect the underlying layer called the **dermis**. Note the dermis and epidermis form the skin; the underlying (subcutaneous) fatty tissue often studied with them is not regarded as part of the true skin.

The epidermis can be subdivided into five distinct layers, the outermost forming a layer of tough dead cells (scales), known as the stratum corneum. At the surface, the cells of the epidermis fit together like the scales of a fish; for this reason it is known as a stratified **squamous** epithelium (squamous from Latin *squama*, meaning scale of a fish or reptile). The word epithelium (combining form *epitheli/o*) refers to a type of tissue formed from one or more layers of cells that cover and line internal and external surfaces of the body. As the epidermis consists of many layers of cells it is described as a stratified epithelium.

- (c) **dermato/phyte**

- (d) **pachy/derma**

- (e) **xantho/derma**

- (f) **dermato/auto/plasty**

- (g) **xero/derm/ia**

- (h) **dermato/logist**

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (i) abnormal condition of fungi
in the skin (use *dermat/o*
and *myc/o*)

- (j) an instrument to cut skin
for grafts (use *derm/a*)

- (k) pertaining to below
the skin (use *derm/a*)

- (l) pertaining to within the skin
(use *derm/a*)

Note. There are a few words in use derived from *cutis*, the Latin for skin, e.g. **cutaneous** – pertaining to the skin (from *cutane/o* meaning skin and *-ous* meaning pertaining to); **cuticle** – the epidermis (from *cuti-* meaning skin and *-cle* meaning small).

Root

Kerat

(From a Greek word **keras**, meaning horn. We have already used this word to mean the cornea of the eye. Here it is used to mean the outer, horny layer of the skin, i.e. the epidermis.)

Combining forms **Kerato/o**



WORD EXERCISE 2

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) actinic **kerat/osis**
(pertaining to the sun's rays)

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (b) hyper/**kerato/tic**

- (c) **kerat/oma**

- (d) **kerato/lysis**

Note. There is no way of telling whether a medical term containing the root **kerat** refers to the cornea or epidermis except by noting the context in which it is written.

The cells of the outer layer of the epidermis are said to be **keratinized** because they contain the waterproof protein **keratin** that gives the epidermis its ability to protect the underlying dermis. (The combining form **keratin/o** refers to the protein keratin.)

Other disorders of the epidermis include:

Ichthyosis

A disorder in which there is abnormal keratinization, giving rise to a dry scaly skin (**ichthy/o** from Greek, meaning fish, i.e. fish-like skin).

Acanthosis

A thickening of the prickle cell layer of the epidermis (**acanth/o** from Greek, meaning spike).

The skin appendages

The multiplication of cells in the basal layer of the epidermis gives rise to the appendages of the skin: hairs, sebaceous glands, sweat glands and nails. Here we use terms associated with each appendage:

Root

Pil

(From a Latin word **pilus**, meaning hair or composed of hair. Hairs grow from depressions in the epidermis known as follicles.)

Combining forms **Pil/o**



WORD EXERCISE 3

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **pilo**/motor nerve _____
(This nerve stimulates the arrector pili muscles to contract, causing erection of the hair in cold conditions.)

A technique known as electrolysis is used to destroy hairs permanently by heating the base of a hair to destroy its dividing cells. The heating is achieved by passing an electric current through the hair follicle. This technique is also used by beauty therapists for the removal of excess hair and is known as **epilation** (e- meaning out from, i.e. the hair out of its follicle).

Hairs can also be removed by using a **depilatory** paste that dissolves hair (de- meaning away). The hairs regrow following depilation as the base of the hair is not destroyed.

Root

Trich

(From a Greek word **trichos**, meaning hair.)

Combining forms **Trich/o**



WORD EXERCISE 4

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **tricho**/phyt/osis _____
(b) **trich**/osis _____

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (c) **tricho**/aesthes/ia _____
(Am. tricho/esthes/ia) _____
(d) schizo/**trich**/ia _____
(e) **tricho**/rrhexis _____

Root

Seb

(From a Latin word **sebum**, meaning fat or grease. It is used to mean sebum, the secretion of the sebaceous glands or sebaceous gland.)

Combining forms **Seb/o**

The sebaceous glands open directly on to the skin or more usually into the side of a hair follicle (a **pilosebaceous** follicle). They produce an oily secretion, known as sebum, that lubricates and waterproofs the hair and skin. Sebum is mildly bacteriostatic and fungistatic enabling the skin to resist infection.

Excessive production of sebum at puberty gives rise to **acne vulgaris**, a condition in which the skin becomes inflamed and develops pus-filled pimples.



WORD EXERCISE 5

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **sebo**/rrhoea _____
(Am. sebo/rrhea) _____
(b) **sebo**/lith _____
(c) **sebo**/tropic _____

Root

Hidr

(From a Greek word **hidros**, meaning sweat.)

Combining forms **Hidr/o**



WORD EXERCISE 6

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **hidr**/osis _____
(b) hyper/**hidr**/osis _____

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (c) **hidro**/poiesis _____
- (d) an/**hidr**/osis _____
- (e) **hidr**/aden/itis _____

Sweat glands are also known by their Latin name of sudoriferous glands (*sudor* meaning sweat, *ferous* meaning carrying).

Root

Onych

(From a Greek word **onychos**, meaning nail.)

Combining forms **Onych/o**



WORD EXERCISE 7

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **onycho**/crypt/osis _____
- (b) **onych**/auxis _____
- (c) **onycho**/dys/trophy _____
- (d) **onych**/a/trophy _____
- (e) par/**onych**/ia _____
- (f) **onycho**/schisis _____
- (g) **onycho**/phagia _____

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (h) breaking down/disintegration _____
of nails
(Here the nail comes away from the nail bed.)
- (i) fungal condition of nails _____
- (j) inflammation of nails _____
(synonymous with **onychia**)

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (k) **onycho**/rrhexis _____
- (l) an/**onych**/ia _____
- (m) pachy/**onych**/ia _____

Root

Melan

(From a Greek word **melanos**, meaning black. Here we are using it to mean melanin, a black pigment found in skin, hair and the choroid of the eye.)

Combining forms **Melan/o**



WORD EXERCISE 8

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) a pigment cell _____
- (b) abnormal condition of excessive _____
black/pigment

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) **melan**/oma _____

Malignant melanoma is on the increase, and this is believed to be the effect of solar damage caused by excessive sunbathing. Sometimes melanomas develop from pigmented naevi (moles). They are highly malignant, and once the tumour cells have spread, they become difficult to eradicate. Malignant melanoma can be fatal unless treated early in its development. 5-year survival rate can be related to the depth of the tumour in the skin at first presentation.

Note. Naevus (pl. naevi; Am. nevus, pl. nevi) is the medical name for a mole or birthmark on the body. Naevi arise from melanocytes or developmental abnormalities of blood vessels.

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

Suspicious lesions of skin need to be examined microscopically for signs of malignancy. Small samples of skin are removed during an excision **biopsy** (*bio* meaning life, *opsis* meaning vision, biopsy = observation of living tissue). These are then sectioned and stained in the histology laboratory. The biopsy tissue is examined by a histologist/pathologist to determine whether the cells are **benign** or **malignant** (benign means innocent/harmless; malignant means virulent and dangerous to life).

Benign lesions can be removed if they are causing a problem or are unsightly. Malignant lesions threaten

life and are treated by surgical excision, radiotherapy and chemotherapy.

Treatment of skin disorders using lasers

Developments in physics have led to the development of medical **lasers** which are playing a prominent role in the treatment of skin disorders. Here we examine a selection of their applications to dermatology. First we need to understand the meaning of the acronym laser.

LASER is built from the first letter of each of the following words: **L**ight **A**mplification by **S**timulated **E**mission of **R**adiation.

A laser is a device that produces an intense, coherent beam of monochromatic light in the visible region. All the light waves in the beam are in phase and do not diverge so it can be targeted precisely (see Fig. 62). The beam is capable of focusing intense heat and power when focused at close range.

The medical laser transfers energy in the form of light to the tissues. When the laser beam strikes living tissue it is heated and destroyed (**thermolysis**) in a fraction of a second. Some lasers can heat tissues to over 100°C, resulting in their complete vaporization.

The extent of destruction of a tissue depends on the presence of chemicals in cells that absorb the light. These are known as **chromatophores**. There are three main chromatophores found in tissues: water, melanin and haemoglobin. A skin lesion containing a large amount of melanin, such as a mole, can be specifically targeted and destroyed by a laser with little destruction of the surrounding tissue.

There are many types of medical laser, each one emitting a beam of specific wavelength. The wavelength of the radiation emitted depends on the medium used by the laser, which may be a gas, liquid or solid. In the laser, the atoms of the medium are excited electrically and are stimulated to emit energy in the form of light. Besides laser light, other forms of radiation are used to treat chronic skin disorders. Here are three examples of lasers used by dermatologists:

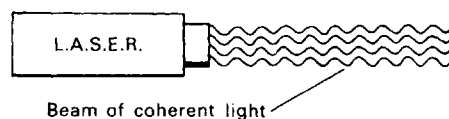


Figure 62 Laser

Treatment of psoriasis

Psoriasis is a common chronic skin condition in which there is an increased rate of production of skin cells. The excess skin cells form plaques of silvery scales that continuously flake off, exposing erythematous (reddened) skin that shows pinpoint bleeding. A large proportion of a dermatologist's time may be concerned with this disorder as it affects approximately 2% of the population. There is no cure and therapies are aimed at reducing the scaling and inflammation. A recent innovation is the technique known as:

PUVA (Psoralen Ultra Violet A light)

This is a form of **photochemotherapy** that uses a **psoralen** to sensitize the skin to light before it is irradiated with ultraviolet light (long wave A). After administration of the psoralen (taken orally) the patient is placed in a chamber illuminated with ultraviolet light. The treatment is convenient for patients; their skin shows dramatic improvement and the effect lasts for several months. Unfortunately, there is a risk of developing skin cancer because of excessive exposure to UVA; this risk is being evaluated.



WORD EXERCISE 9

Match each term in Column A with a description in Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Type of Laser	Medium	Wavelength	Chromatophore	Use
CO ₂	Carbon dioxide gas	Infrared 10–600 nm	Water	Vaporizes/cuts tissue. Coagulates blood vessels. Bloodless surgery as it seals up cut vessels. Used to incise tissue and excise a variety of lesions
Argon	Ionized argon gas	Blue–green 488–514 nm	Melanin Haemoglobin	Penetrates epidermis and coagulates underlying pigments. Used to remove vascular and pigmented naevi (Am. nevi)
Dye	Various synthetic dyes	Can be tuned to any required wavelength	Melanin Haemoglobin	Removing tattoos. Removing pigmented tattoo inks, vascular lesions, moles, port wine stains, etc.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) excision biopsy	1. removal of hair
(b) dermatome	2. instrument that destroys tissue using a beam of coherent light
(c) medical laser	3. destruction of tissue by heating with an electric current
(d) PUVA	4. removal of living tissue from the body
(e) epilation	5. instrument for cutting a thin layer of skin
(f) electrolysis	6. technique of exposing photo-sensitized skin to light



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 136.



CASE HISTORY 11

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on psoriasis; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Psoriasis

Mrs K, a 48-year-old woman, presented at the **dermatology** clinic with chronic plaque psoriasis and accompanying arthropathy. She had developed guttate psoriasis at the age of 12 following severe tonsillitis. This was self-limiting but shortly after psoriatic patches appeared on her legs and arms and then on the trunk. Since then the condition has persisted with exacerbations on her scalp, knees and arms, and over the last 5 years she has developed arthritis in her distal interphalangeal finger joints.

Mrs K's condition was reviewed by the **dermatologist**. She had developed large **hyperkeratotic** plaques on her trunk and extremities. Her scalp was also affected with some degree of erythema extending beyond the hair margin. Mrs K indicated that the severity of her arthritis

seemed to parallel the worsening of her **cutaneous lesions**.

Her nails were pitted with opaque yellow areas within the nail plates. Several nails were showing signs of **onycholysis** with **keratinous** debris under their free edges. Following assessment, Mrs K underwent a course of PUVA using 8-methoxypsoralen twice weekly for 6 weeks. She experienced drying of the skin and pruritus but showed considerable improvement. At the present she is receiving a single maintenance treatment every 3 weeks and her fair skin is being examined for presence of malignant epitheliomas (non-melanoma skin cancer being the major, slight, long-term risk factor).

WORD HELP

arthritis inflammation of the joints

arthropathy diseased joints

chronic pertaining to long term, continued

distal further away from point of attachment

erythema relating to erythema (reddening of the skin)

exacerbations increased severity of symptoms

guttate marked or covered with drop-like spots

interphalangeal pertaining to between the bones of the fingers or toes

lesion pathological change in a tissue

malignant dangerous, life threatening

8-methoxypsoralen a psoralen (drug) that sensitizes the skin to light

plaque flat area, a patch

pruritus itching

psoriasis chronic inflammatory disease of the skin exhibiting red patches in the epidermis covered with silvery scales

psoriatic pertaining to psoriasis

PUVA administration of a **psoralen** (a drug that sensitizes the skin to light) followed by exposure to **ultraviolet light A**

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) dermatology
- (b) dermatologist
- (c) hyperkeratotic
- (d) cutaneous
- (e) onycholysis
- (f) keratinous
- (g) epithelioma
- (h) melanoma

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275).

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the skin:

Acanth/o	spiny
Cutane/o	skin
Derm/at/o	skin/dermis
Epitheli/o	epithelium
Hidr/o	sweat
Hidraden/o	sweat gland
Ichthy/o	dry/scaly/fish-like
Kerat/o	epidermis
Keratin/o	keratin
Melan/o	melanin
Onych/o	nail
Pil/o	hair
Seb/o	sebum/sebaceous gland
Squam/o	scaly
Trich/o	hair

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the skin are listed below. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

bx	biopsy
Derm	dermatology
Ez	eczema
KS	Karposi's sarcoma
SCC	squamous cell carcinoma
SED	skin erythema dose
SPF	sun protection factor
ST	skin test
STD	skin test dose
STU	skin test unit
Subcu	subcutaneous
ung	ointment (unguentum)

many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

a-	_____
an-	_____
auto-	_____
crypto-	_____
dys-	_____
epi-	_____
hyper-	_____
hypo-	_____
intra-	_____
pachy-	_____
para-	_____
sub-	_____
xantho-	_____
xero-	_____

Combining forms of word roots

acanth/o	_____
aden/o	_____
aesthesi/o (Am. esthesi/o)	_____
cutane/o	_____
cyt/o	_____
dermat/o	_____
epitheli/o	_____
hidr/o	_____
ichthy/o	_____
kerat/o	_____
keratin/o	_____

NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as

lith/o

melan/o

motor

myc/o

onych/o

phyt(e)

pil/o

schizo-

seb/o

squam/o

trich/o

Suffixes

-axis

-ia

-ic

-itis

-logist

-logy

-lysis

-oma

-osis

-ous

-phagia

-plasty

-poiesis

-rrhexis

-rrhoea
(Am. -rrhea)

-schisis

-tic

-tome

-trophy

-tropic

▶ NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT ◀



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 11A

Below are some combining forms that refer to the anatomy of the skin. Indicate which part of the system they refer to by putting a number from the diagram (Fig. 63) next to each word:

(a) hidraden/o

(b) seb/o

(c) trich/o

(d) melan/o

(e) kerat/o

(f) dermat/o

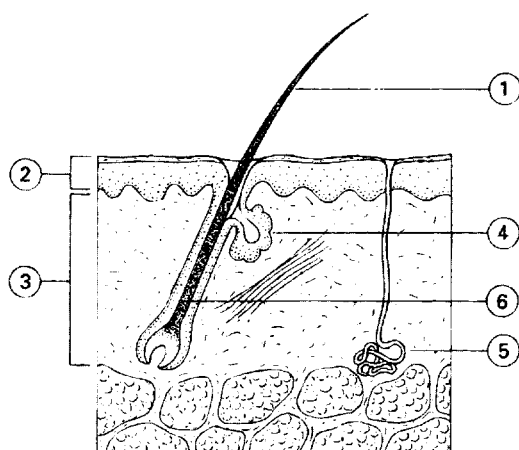


Figure 63 Section through the skin

Score

6

Test 11B

Prefixes and suffixes

Match each prefix or suffix in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) a-	1. cutting instrument
(b) auto-	2. above
(c) -auxis	3. breakdown/ disintegration
(d) crypto-	4. within
(e) dys-	5. condition of eating/swallowing
(f) hyper-	6. thick
(g) hypo-	7. nourishment
(h) intra-	8. hidden/concealed
(i) -lysis	9. dry
(j) -oma	10. formation/ making
(k) pachy-	11. break/rupture
(l) -phagia	12. pertaining to affinity for/ stimulating
(m) -poiesis	13. difficult/painful
(n) -rrhexis	14. tumour/swelling
(o) -schizo	15. yellow
(p) -tome	16. below
(q) -trophy	17. increase
(r) -tropic	18. without/not
(s) xanth/o	19. self
(t) xer/o	20. split

Score

20

Test 11C

Combining forms of word roots

Match each combining form in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) aden/o	1. horny/epidermis
(b) dermat/o	2. pertaining to action
(c) hidr/o	3. fungus
(d) kerat/o	4. hair (i)
(e) lith/o	5. hair (ii)
(f) motor	6. nail
(g) myc/o	7. skin
(h) onych/o	8. plant
(i) phyt/o	9. sweat
(j) pil/o	10. sebum
(k) seb/o	11. gland
(l) trich/o	12. stone

Score

12

Test 11D

Write the meaning of:

- (a) dermatophytosis
- (b) keratinocyte
- (c) trichoanaesthesia
(Am. trichoanesthesia)
- (d) hidradenoma
- (e) epidermomycosis

Score

5

Test 11E

Build words that mean:

- (a) inflammation of the skin
- (b) abnormal condition of nails
- (c) condition of nails
blackened with melanin
- (d) study of skin
- (e) condition of thick nails

Score

0 1 2 3 4 5

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

This page intentionally left blank

The nose and mouth

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 12 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the nose and mouth
- build medical words relating to the nose and mouth
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the nose and mouth.

Exercise guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

a-	without
dys-	difficult/painful
endo-	within/inside
intra-	inside
macro-	large
ortho-	straight
peri-	around
poly-	many
post-	after
prosth-	adding (replacement part)

Roots/Combining forms

aden/o	gland
aer/o	air/gas
angi/o	vessel
bronch/o	bronchi/bronchial tree
bucc/o	cheek
dynam/o	force
laryng/o	larynx

lith/o	stone
man/o	pressure
myc/o	fungus
nas/o	nose
ot/o	ear
pharyng/o	pharynx
trich/o	hair
tympan/o	middle ear/ear drum

Suffixes

-agogue	agent that induces/promotes
-al	pertaining to
-algia	condition of pain
-cele	swelling/protrusion/hernia
-dynia	condition of pain
-eal	pertaining to
-ectomy	removal of
-genic	pertaining to formation/originating in
-gram	X-ray tracing/picture/recording
-graphy	technique of recording/making an X-ray
-ia	condition of
-ic	pertaining to
-ist	specialist
-itis	inflammation of
-logy	study of
-meter	measuring instrument
-metry	process of measuring
-osis	abnormal condition/disease of
-pathy	disease of
-phagia	condition of eating
-phonia	condition of having voice
-phyma	tumour/boil
-plasty	surgical repair/reconstruction
-plegia	condition of paralysis
-rrhagia	condition of bursting forth (of blood)
-rrhaphy	suture/stitch/suturing
-rrhea (Am.)	excessive flow
-rrhoea	excessive flow
-schisis	cleaving/splitting/parting
-scope	viewing instrument
-scopy	technique of viewing/examining
-stomy	formation of an opening into ...
-tomy	incision into
-us	thing/structure/anatomical part

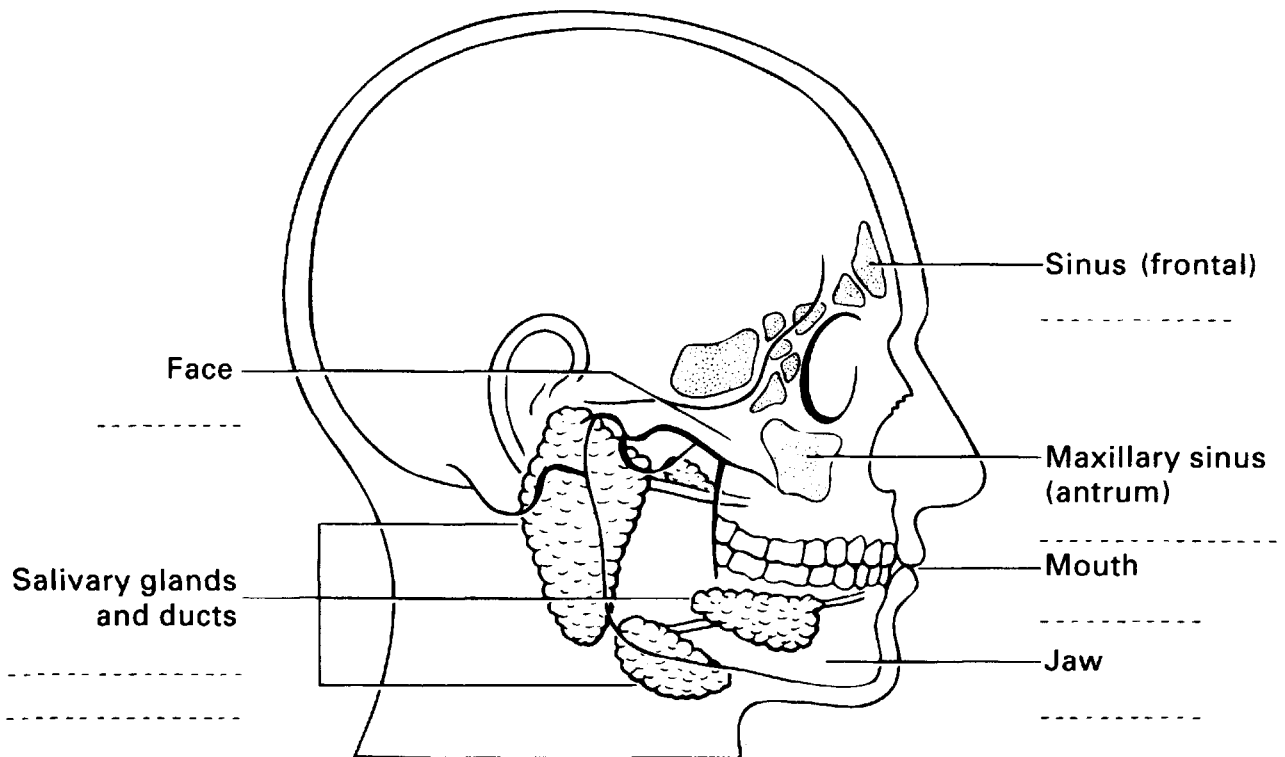


Figure 64 Sagittal section of the head showing sinuses and salivary glands

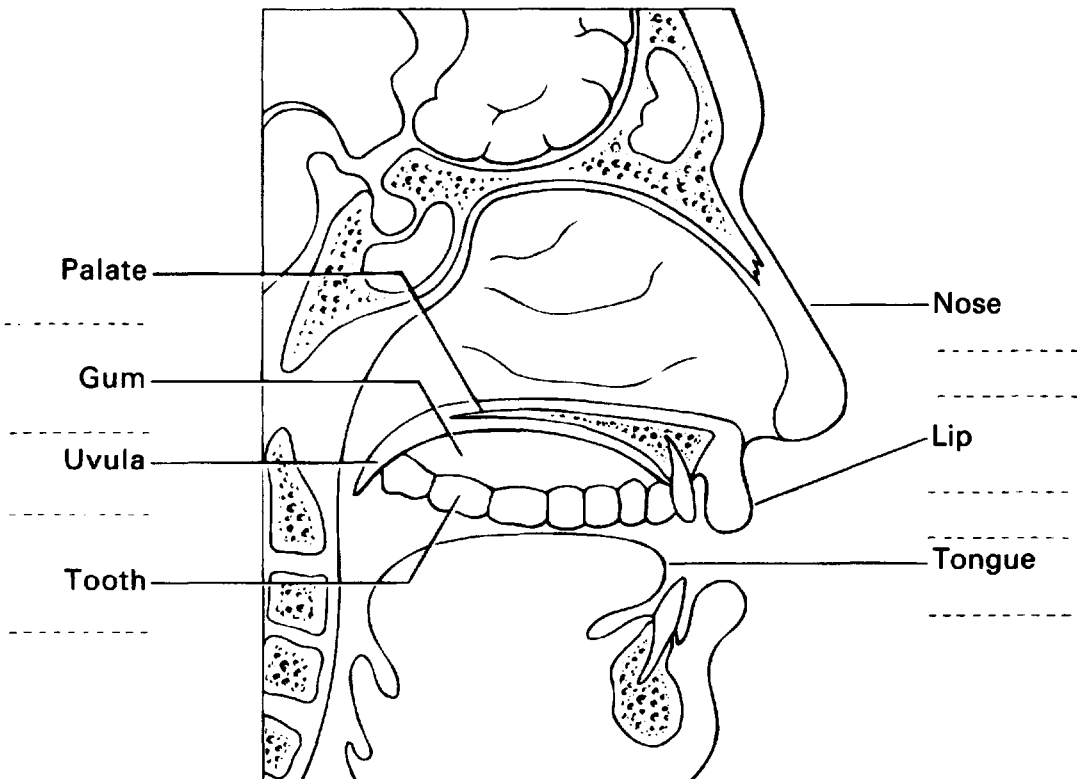


Figure 65 Sagittal section of the nasal cavity



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–18, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figures 64 and 65 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line – more than one component may relate to the same position. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 155.)

Antr/o	Labi/o	Sial/o
Cheil/o	Nas/o	Sin/o
Faci/o	Odont/o	Stomat/o
Gingiv/o	Palat/o	Uvul/o
Gloss/o	Ptyal/o	
Gnath/o	Rhin/o	

The nose and mouth

Receptors for the sense of smell are located in the olfactory epithelium which is in the roof of the nasal cavity. In order for us to smell a substance it must be volatile so it can be carried into the nose and then it must dissolve in the mucus covering the receptors. Humans can distinguish between 2000 and 4000 different odours.

Receptors for taste are located on the taste buds of the tongue. When a substance is eaten, four types of receptor can be stimulated, producing sensations for sweet, bitter, salty and sour. The sense of taste is known as gustation.

In this unit we will look at terms associated with the mouth and nose.

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–18 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Stomat
(From a Greek word **stomatos**, meaning mouth.)

Combining forms **Stomat/o**



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **stomato**/logy
- (b) **stomato**/rrhagia
- (c) **stomato**/pathy

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (d) condition of pain in the mouth
- (e) abnormal condition of fungi in the mouth

Root

Or
(From a Latin word **oris**, meaning mouth.)

Combining forms **Or/o**



WORD EXERCISE 2

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **or**/al
- (b) intra/**-or**/al
- (c) **oro**/pharyng/eal
- (d) **oro**/nas/al

Root

Gloss
(From a Greek word **glossa**, meaning tongue.)

Combining forms **Gloss/o**



WORD EXERCISE 3

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) the study of the tongue

- (b) condition of pain in the tongue (use -dynia or -algia)
- (c) pertaining to the pharynx and tongue (use -eal)

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (d) **glosso**/plegia
- (e) **glosso**/trich/ia
- (f) **glosso**/cele
- (g) macro/**gloss**/ia
- (h) **glosso**/plasty

A Latin combining form **lingu/o** is also used to mean tongue, language or relationship to the tongue, e.g. **lingual** – pertaining to the tongue, **sublingual** – under the tongue.

Disorders of the mouth, tongue, pharynx and palate give rise to problems with eating, swallowing and talking, e.g.

Dysphagia

A condition of difficulty in eating (from Greek *phagein* to eat).

Dyslalia

A condition of difficulty in talking (from Greek *lalein* to talk).

Root

Sial

(From a Greek word **sialon**, meaning saliva. It is also used to refer to salivary glands and ducts. Three pairs of salivary glands secrete saliva into the mouth. Saliva begins the digestion of starch in food.)

Combining forms **Sial/o**



WORD EXERCISE 4

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **sial**/aden/ectomy
- (b) **sial**/angio/graphy
- (c) poly/**sial**/ia
- (d) **sialo**/gram

Using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (e) stone in the saliva (duct or gland)

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (f) **sial**/agogue (a drug)
- (g) **sial**/aero/phagia

Root

Ptyal

(From a Greek word **ptyalon**, meaning saliva.)

Combining forms **Ptyal/o**



WORD EXERCISE 5

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **ptyalo**/genic
- (b) **ptyalo**/rrhoea (Am. ptyalo/rhea)

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) **ptyalo**/lith

Root

Gnath

(From a Greek word **gnathos**, meaning jaw.)

Combining forms **Gnath/o**



WORD EXERCISE 6

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) condition of pain in the jaw
- (b) plastic surgery of the jaw
- (c) science dealing with the jaw / chewing apparatus
- (d) pertaining to the jaw and mouth

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (e) **gnatho**/dynamo/meter
- (f) **gnatho**/schisis
(refers to upper jaw and palate – a cleft palate)
- (g) **gnath**/itis

Root

Cheil

(From a Greek word **cheilos**, meaning lip.)

Combining forms **Cheil/o**



WORD EXERCISE 7

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **cheilo**/stomato/plasty
- (b) **cheilo**/schisis

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (c) **cheilo**/rrhaphy

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (d) inflammation of the lip

Root

Labi

(From a Latin word **labium**, meaning lip.)

Combining forms **Labi/o**



WORD EXERCISE 8

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **labio**/glosso/laryng/eal

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (b) pertaining to pharynx,
tongue and lips

Root

Gingiv

(From a Latin word **gingiva**, meaning gum.)

Combining forms **Gingiv/o**



WORD EXERCISE 9

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) inflammation of the gums
- (b) removal of gum
(usually performed for pyorrhoëa; Am. pyorrhea)

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) labio/**gingiv**/al

Root

Palat

(From Latin **palatum**. Here it refers to the palate.)

Combining forms **Palat/o**



WORD EXERCISE 10

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) condition of paralysis
of the soft palate
- (b) pertaining to the jaw
and palate
- (c) split palate
(cleft palate)

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (d) post/**palat**/al

Root

Uvul

(From a Latin word **uvula**, meaning grape. It refers to the uvula, the central tag-like structure extending downwards from the soft palate.)

Combining forms **Uvul/o**



WORD EXERCISE 11

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (a) removal of the uvula

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (b) incision into the uvula

Root

Phas

(From a Greek word **phasis**, meaning speech.)

Combining forms **Phas/i/o**



WORD EXERCISE 12

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) a/**phas**/ia

- (b) dys/**phas**/ia

There are many varieties and causes of aphasia. Common types are:

Motor aphasia

A condition due to an inability to move muscles involved in speech. (The word **aphonia** is also used to refer to a loss of voice.)

Sensory aphasia

A condition in which there is an inability to recognize spoken (or written) words.

Root

Odont

(From a Greek word **odontos**, meaning tooth.)

Combining forms **Odont/o**



WORD EXERCISE 13

- (a) the scientific study of teeth (dentistry)

- (b) any disease of teeth

- (c) condition of toothache (pain)

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (d) peri/**odont**/ics (includes all tissues supporting teeth)

- (e) end/**odonto**/logy (includes pulp and roots)

- (f) orth/**odont**/ic(s)

- (g) orth/**odont**/ist

- (h) prosth/**odont**/ics

A prosthesis is any artificial replacement for a body part, in this case the replacement of lost teeth and associated structures.

Root

Rhin

(From a Greek word **rhinos**, meaning nose.)

Combining forms **Rhin/o**

We have already used **rhin/o** when studying the breathing system. Here we use the same combining form with new suffixes.



WORD EXERCISE 14

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **rhino**/phonia

- (b) **rhino**/mano/metry

- (c) **rhino**/phyma

- (d) **rhino**/scopy

- (e) oto/**rhino**/laryngo/logy

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (f) **rhino**/rrhagia (also known as epistaxis)

Note. There is also a Latin word *nasus* meaning nose; its combining form **nas/o** is used in several exercises in this unit.

Root**Sinus**

(A Latin word meaning hollow/cavity. Here it is used to mean a sinus, a hollow cavity in a bone of the skull.)

Combining forms **Sin/o, sinus-**

**WORD EXERCISE 15**

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **sin**/us
 (b) **sino**/bronch/itis

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) **sinus**/itis
 (of the paranasal sinuses)
 (d) **sino**/gram

Root**Antr**

(From a Greek word **antron**, meaning cave. Here it refers to the superior maxillary sinus, the antrum of Highmore.)

Combining forms **Antr/o**

**WORD EXERCISE 16**

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) instrument to view the antrum
 (b) inflammation of the tympanum and antrum

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) **antro**/tomy
 (usually performed to drain out infected fluid)
 (d) **antro**/nas/al
 (e) **antro**/cele

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (f) **antro**/bucc/al
 (g) **antro**/stomy

Root**Faci**

(From a Latin word **facies**, meaning face.)

Combining forms **Faci/o**

**WORD EXERCISE 17**

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **faci**/al
 (b) **facio**/plegia
 (c) **facio**/plasty

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

Revise the names of all instruments and examinations used in this unit before completing Exercise 18.

**WORD EXERCISE 18**

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) antroscope	1. instrument that measures force of jaws
(b) sialography	2. technique of recording the tongue (movement in speech)
(c) gnathodynamometer	3. instrument for viewing maxillary antrum
(d) rhinomanometer	4. an artificial part of the body, e.g. false tooth
(e) prosthesis	5. technique of making an X-ray/recording of salivary ducts
(f) glossography	6. instrument that measures air pressure in nose



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 149.



CASE HISTORY 12

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on acute sinusitis; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Acute sinusitis

Mrs L, a 28-year-old mother, was brought into Accident and Emergency late at night by her husband concerned that she was seriously ill. She was recovering from a viral **rhinitis** when, on the morning of admission she was stricken with an excruciating frontal headache with pain in her cheek and upper teeth. She felt dizzy, and her right cheek was hot and tender to touch. There was no immediate history of any dental problems.

She was examined by the casualty registrar and found to have an elevated temperature and pulse. **Rhinoscopy** demonstrated reddened, oedematous mucous (Am. edematous) membranes and signs of a mucopurulent discharge from the middle meatus. Questioning of the patient revealed she had hyposmia and in the previous three days had become embarrassed by a cacosmia emanating from her nose.

A **CT** scan demonstrated fluid in her right maxillary sinus and excluded any orbital or intracranial involvement. A diagnosis of acute maxillary **sinusitis** was made by the registrar and she was prescribed decongestants and started on a course of antibiotic therapy. A sample of the discharge from her nose was sent to the microbiology laboratory for culture and sensitivity testing. Before leaving A and E she was given appropriate analgesia for her headache and referred to the department of **Otorhinolaryngology**.

Mrs L's follow up medical treatment with antibiotics and decongestants had limited success and her condition became chronic with a purulent nasal and **post-nasal** discharge. Pus from the maxillary sinus was removed by **antral** washout (antral lavage) following **proof** puncture through the nasal wall of the maxillary antrum. This was repeated on four occasions before the consultant advised surgery and the formation of an **intranasal antrostomy**. Functional endoscopic sinus

surgery (FESS) was used to improve drainage of the maxillary sinus through its natural ostium.

Following her operation Mrs L showed great improvement; mucosal activity and the self-cleaning mechanism of her sinuses were restored.

WORD HELP

- acute** symptoms/signs of short duration
analgesia condition of without pain/prescribing of drugs that reduce pain
cacosmia condition of stench or unpleasant odour
chronic lasting/lingering for a long time
CT computed tomography
culture and sensitivity testing growing microorganisms in the laboratory and testing them for sensitivity to antibiotics
decongestant drug used for the relief of congestion
endoscopic pertaining to (using) an endoscope i.e. an instrument used to visually examine the body cavities
intracranial pertaining to within the cranium
hyposmia condition of reduced sense of smell (below normal)
maxillary sinus the sinus/antrum (air space) in the facial bone known as the maxilla
meatus a passage or opening
mucopurulent containing pus and mucus
mucosal pertaining to the mucosa (here the mucous membrane lining the maxillary sinus)
mucous pertaining to mucus (a viscous secretion)
oedematous pertaining to accumulation of fluid in a tissue (Am. edematous)
orbital pertaining to the orbit of the eye (bony eye-socket)
ostium a natural mouth or opening
proof evidence (here proving the antrum is infected)
purulent containing pus

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- rhinitis
- rhinoscopy
- sinusitis
- otorhinolaryngology
- post-nasal
- antral
- intranasal
- antrostomy

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the nose and mouth:

Aden/o	gland
Antr/o	antrum/maxillary sinus
Bucc/o	cheek
Cheil/o	lip
Faci/o	face
Gingiv/o	gum
Gloss/o	tongue
Gnath/o	jaw
Labi/o	lip
Laryng/o	larynx
Lingu/o	tongue
Nas/o	nose
Odont/o	tooth
Or/o	mouth
Palat/o	palate
Phag/o	eating/consuming
Pharyng/o	pharynx
Ptyal/o	saliva/salivary gland/duct
Rhin/o	nose
Sial/o	saliva/salivary gland/duct
Sin/o	sinus
Sinus-	sinus
Stomat/o	mouth
Uvul/o	uvula

NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

- a-
- dys-
- endo-
- intra-
- macro-
- ortho-
- peri-
- poly-
- post-
- prosth-
- sub-

Combining forms of word roots

- aden/o
- aer/o
- angi/o
- antr/o
- bronch/o
- bucc/o
- cheil/o
- dynam/o

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the nose and mouth are listed below. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

dmft	decayed missing filled teeth (deciduous)
DMFT	decayed missing filled teeth (permanent)
ging	gingiva (gums)
La	labial (lips)
LaG	labia and gingiva (lips and gums)
NAS	nasal
NP	nasopharynx
NPO	non per os/nothing by mouth
odont	odontology
Os	mouth
po/PO	per os/by mouth
Subling	sublingual/under the tongue

faci/o

gingiv/o

gloss/o

gnath/o

labi/o

laryng/o

lingu/o

lith/o

man/o

myc/o

nas/o

odont/o

or/o

ot/o

palat/o

phag/o

pharyng/o

ptyal/o

rhin/o

sial/o

sin/o, sinus-

stomat/o

trich/o

tympan/o

uvul/o

Suffixes

-agogue

-al

-algia

-cele

-dynia

-eal

-ectomy

-genic

-gram

-graphy

-ia

-ic

-ist

-itis

-lalia

-logy

-meter

-metry

-osis

-pathy

-phagia

-phasia

-phonia

-phyma

-plasty

-plegia

-rrhagia

-rrhaphy

-rrhoea
(Am. -rrhea)

-schisis

-scope

-scopy

-stomy _____

-tomy _____

-us _____

> NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT <



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 12A

Below are some combining forms that refer to the anatomy of the nose and mouth. Indicate which part of the system they refer to by putting a number from the diagrams (Figs 66 and 67) next to each word.

- (a) gloss/o _____
- (b) stomat/o _____
- (c) cheil/o _____
- (d) gingiv/o _____
- (e) palat/o _____
- (f) rhin/o _____
- (g) odont/o _____
- (h) faci/o _____

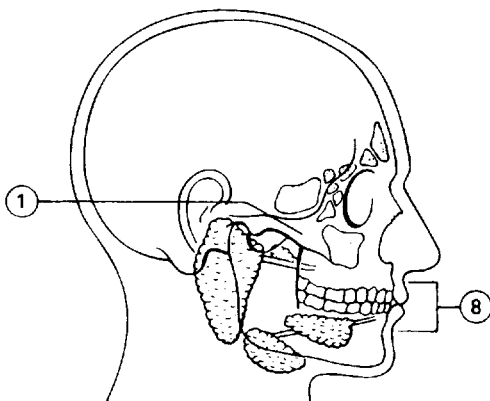


Figure 66 Sagittal section of the head showing sinuses and salivary glands

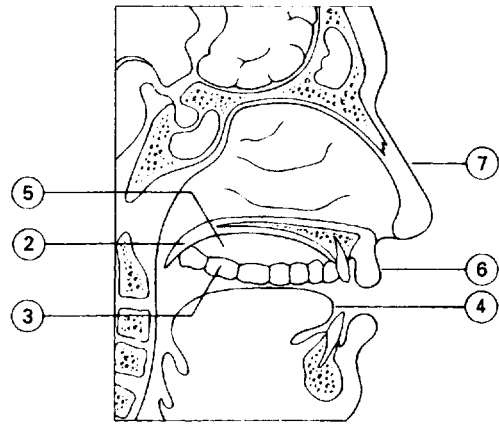


Figure 67 Sagittal section of the nasal cavity

Score

8

Test 12B

Prefixes and suffixes

Match the prefixes and suffixes in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) -agogue	_____	1. condition of voice
(b) -cele	_____	2. split
(c) -dynia	_____	3. suturing/stitching
(d) -ectomy	_____	4. inflammation
(e) endo-	_____	5. condition of speech
(f) -itis	_____	6. condition of paralysis
(g) -logy	_____	7. straight
(h) -metry	_____	8. measurement
(i) ortho-	_____	9. disease
(j) -pathy	_____	10. condition of excessive flow (of blood)

Column A	Column B	Column C	Column A	Column B	Column C
(k) peri-	_____	11. many	(i) labi/o	_____	9. maxillary sinus/ antrum of Highmore
(l) -phasia	_____	12. surgical repair	(j) laryng/o	_____	10. hair
(m) -phonia	_____	13. condition of pain	(k) man/o	_____	11. mouth
(n) -plasty	_____	14. hernia/ protrusion/swelling	(l) odont/o	_____	12. jaw
(o) -plegia	_____	15. removal of	(m) palat/o	_____	13. cheek/inside mouth
(p) poly-	_____	16. inside/within	(n) ptyal/o	_____	14. palate
(q) prostho-	_____	17. study of	(o) rhin/o	_____	15. lip (i)
(r) -rrhagia	_____	18. around	(p) sial/o	_____	16. lip (ii)
(s) -rrhaphy	_____	19. inducing/ stimulating	(q) sin/o	_____	17. force
(t) -schisis	_____	20. addition of artificial part	(r) stomat/o	_____	18. face
			(s) trich/o	_____	19. saliva (i)
			(t) uvul/o	_____	20. saliva (ii)

Score

20

Score

20

Test 12C

Combining forms of word roots

Match each combining form in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) antr/o	_____	1. gum
(b) bucc/o	_____	2. tooth
(c) cheil/o	_____	3. sinus
(d) dynam/o	_____	4. pressure (rare)
(e) faci/o	_____	5. larynx
(f) gingiv/o	_____	6. uvula
(g) gloss/o	_____	7. tongue
(h) gnath/o	_____	8. nose

Test 12D

Write the meaning of:

- (a) glossodynamometer _____
- (b) sialometry _____
- (c) stomatoglossitis _____
- (d) gnathopalatoschisis _____
- (e) odontogenic _____

Score

5

Test 12E

Build words that mean:

- (a) incision into a salivary gland (use sial/o)
- (b) suturing of the palate
- (c) condition of fungi in nose
- (d) pertaining to the lips
- (e) surgical repair of the palate

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

This page intentionally left blank

The muscular system

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 13 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the muscular system
- build medical words relating to the muscular system
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the muscular system.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

dys-	difficult/disordered/painful
electro-	electrical
hyper-	above normal/excessive

Roots/Combining forms

aesthesi/o	sensation
cardi/o	heart
esthesi/o (Am.)	sensation
fibr/o	fibre
neur/o	nerve
paed/o	child

ped/o (Am.)	child
phren/o	diaphragm

Suffixes

-al	pertaining to
-algia	condition of pain
-ar	pertaining to
-genic	pertaining to formation/originating in
-globin	protein
-gram	X-ray/tracing/recording
-graph	usually an instrument that records
-graphy	technique of recording/making an X-ray
-ia	condition of
-ic	pertaining to
-itis	inflammation of
-kymia	condition of involuntary twitching of muscle
-logy	study of
-lysis	breakdown/disintegration
-malacia	condition of softening
-meter	measuring instrument
-oma	tumour/swelling
-osis	abnormal condition/disease/abnormal increase
-paresis	slight paralysis
-pathy	disease of
-plasty	surgical repair/reconstruction
-rrhaphy	suture/stitch/suturing
-rrhexis	break/rupture
-sclerosis	abnormal condition of hardening
-spasm	involuntary muscle contraction
-tome	cutting instrument
-tomy	incision into
-tonia	condition of tension/tone
-trophy	nourishment/development
-tropic	pertaining to affinity for/stimulating

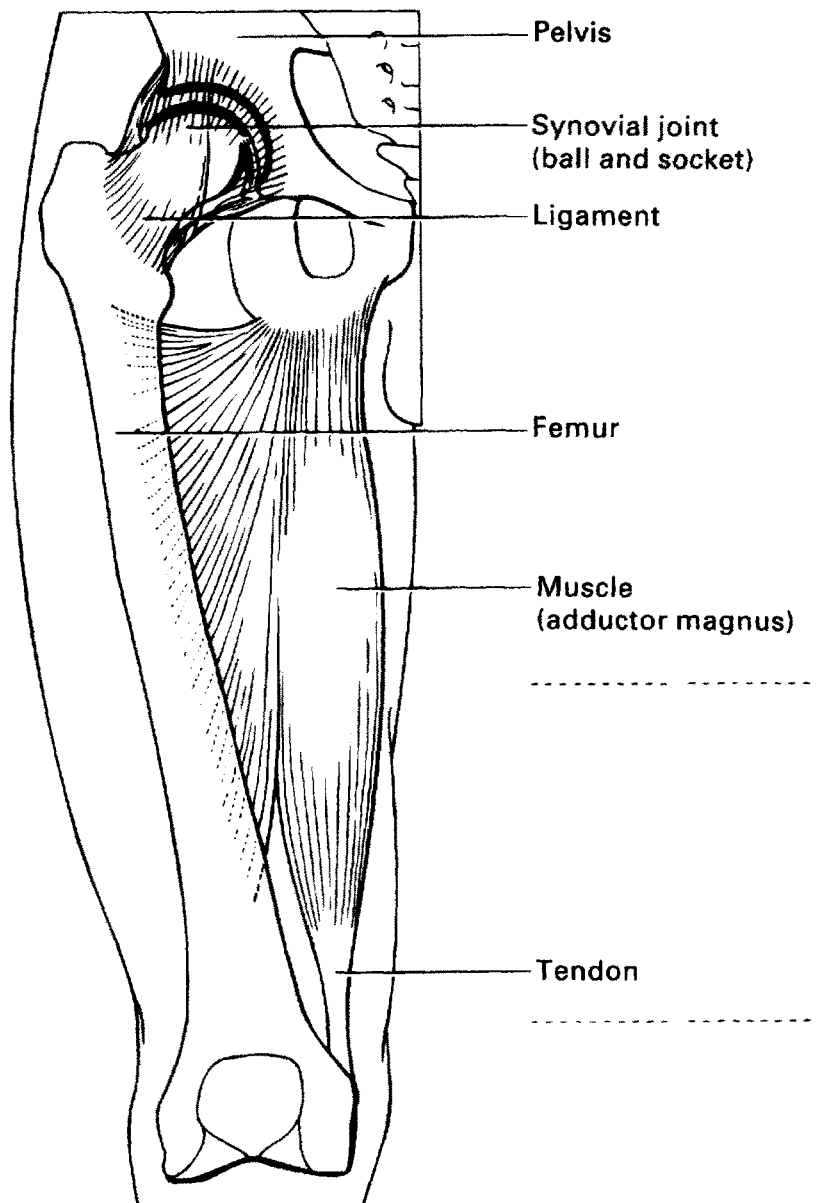


Figure 68 Muscle arrangement in the thigh



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–7, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figure 68 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line – more than one component may relate to the same position. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 166.)

Muscul/o
My/o

Tendin/o
Ten/o

The muscular system

Muscles compose 40–50% of the body's weight. The function of muscle is to effect the movement of the body as a whole and to move internal organs involved in the vital processes required to keep the body alive. There are three types of muscle tissue:

- Skeletal muscle – moves the vocal chords, diaphragm and limbs.
- Cardiac muscle – moves the heart.
- Smooth muscle – moves the internal organs, bringing about movement of food through the intestines and urine through the urinary tract. It is also found in the walls of blood vessels where it acts to maintain blood pressure.

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–7 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

My

(From a Greek word **myos**, meaning muscle.)

Combining forms **My/o, myos**



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- myo/neural**
- myo/cardio/pathy**
- myo/dys/trophy**
- myos/itis**
- myo/fibr/osis**

Using your Exercise Guide, build words using my/o that mean:

- abnormal condition of hardening of a muscle
- tumour of a muscle
- muscle protein
- spasm of a muscle

The combining form **lei/o** (from Latin, meaning smooth) is added to myo to give **leiomy/o**, which refers to smooth muscle. A **leiomyoma** is a tumour/swelling of smooth muscle.

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- myo/kymia**
- myo/tonia**
- myo/paresis**
- myo/rrhexis**
- myo/malacia**

The contraction of a muscle can be measured, using an instrument known as a **myograph**.

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- the technique of recording muscular contraction
- the technique of recording the electrical currents generated in muscular contraction
- trace/recording made by a myograph

Root

Rhabd

(From a Greek word **rhabdos**, meaning stripe. It is used with my/o when referring to striped/striated muscle.)

Combining forms **Rhabd/o**



WORD EXERCISE 2

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- rhabdo/my/oma**

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- rhabdo/myo/lysis**

Root

Muscul

(From a Latin word **musculus**, meaning muscle.)

Combining forms **Muscul/o**



WORD EXERCISE 3

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **musculo/tropic**
 (b) **musculo/phren/ic**

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) **muscul/ar dys/trophy**

Note. Loss or impairment of muscular movement due to a lesion in neural or neuromuscular mechanisms is known as a paralysis or palsy. A paresis is a partial paralysis and a pseudoparesis, a condition simulating paralysis (*pseudo*-meaning false). The latter is of hysterical (neurotic) origin and not due to organic disease within a muscle or nerve.

Root

Kine

(From a Greek word **kinein**, meaning movement/motion.)

Combining forms **Kine/s/i/o, kinet/o**



WORD EXERCISE 4

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **kine/aesthes/ia**
 (Am. kin/esthes/ia)
 (b) **myo/kinesi/meter**
 (c) **kineto/genic**
 (d) **hyper/kines/ia**

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word using kines/o that means:

- (e) condition of difficult/
painful movement

A Greek word *taxis* is sometimes used when describing an ordered movement in response to a stimulus. **Ataxia** refers to a disordered movement that is irregular and jerky (*a-* meaning without, i.e. condition of without normal movement). There are many types of ataxia, e.g. motor ataxia – an inability to control muscles; Friedreich's ataxia – an inherited movement disorder.

Root

Ten

(From a Greek word **tenontos**, to stretch. It is used to mean tendon.)

Combining forms **Ten/o, tenont/o** (Greek) **Tend/o, tendon/o, tendin/o** (Latin).
 Note that the combining forms **tend/o** and **tendin/o** are derived from Latin (**tendonis/tendines**, meaning tendon).



WORD EXERCISE 5

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **ten/algia**
 (b) **tendo/tome**

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) **tendin/itis**
 (d) **tenonto/logy**

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (e) repair of a muscle and
tendon (use ten/o)
 (f) incision of a muscle and
tendon (use ten/o)

A tendon is a fibrous non-elastic cord of connective tissue that is continuous with the fibres of a skeletal muscle; its function is to attach muscle to bone. Tendons must be strong in tension because they are used to pull bones and thereby move the body. If a tendon is wide and thin, it is known as an **aponeurosis**. This word is derived from *apo-* meaning detached/away from, *neuro-* tendon (also used to mean nerve) and *-osis* condition of.

Several words are used with **aponeur/o** meaning an aponeurosis.

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (g) **aponeuro/rrhaphy**

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (h) **aponeur/itis**

Root

Orth

(From a Greek word **orthos**, meaning straight)

Combining forms **Ortho/o**



WORD EXERCISE 6

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **ortho**/paed/ic
(Am. ortho/ped/ic)
(Formerly this word just applied to the correction of deformities in children. It is now a branch of surgery dealing with all conditions affecting the locomotor system.)

Other common words related to this include:

Orthosis

a structure/appliance used to correct a deformity.

Orthotics

the knowledge of use of orthoses.

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

Revise the names of all instruments and examinations in this unit before completing Exercise 7.



WORD EXERCISE 7

Match each term in Column A with a description in Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) myography	1. appliance used to straighten deformities of the locomotor system
(b) electromyography	2. recording/trace of muscular movement
(c) myogram	3. a recording of the electrical activity of muscle

Column A

Column B

Column C

- | | | |
|----------------------|-------|--|
| (d) myokinesio-meter | ..... | 4. technique of recording electrical activity of muscle |
| (e) orthosis | ..... | 5. technique of making a recording of muscle (contraction) |
| (f) electromyogram | ..... | 6. instrument for measuring movement of muscle |



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 162.



CASE HISTORY 13

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on Duchenne muscular dystrophy; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD)

Miss M, a single parent, consulted her GP about her 4-year-old son R who appeared to have difficulty in climbing the stairs and running. Her son had been slow to sit up and walk and seemed less able than his peers. Her GP observed the child to have a 'waddling' gait and stand up by 'climbing up his legs' using his hands against his ankles, knees and thighs (Gower's sign). His calf muscles appeared to be bulky and lacking strength. He was referred to the Paediatric Hospital with suspected muscular **dystrophy**.

Detailed examination revealed R to have proximal weakness in his limbs and **pseudohypertrophy** of his calf muscles. A muscle biopsy showed **dystrophic** changes with muscle fibre necrosis and their replacement with fat. Immunochemical staining detected an absence of dystrophin. His serum creatine phosphokinase levels were grossly elevated. **Electromyography** indicated a **myopathic** pattern with short polyphasic action potentials.

R's mother was also investigated and also found to have raised serum creatine phosphokinase levels and an abnormal **electromyogram**. R was diagnosed as having Duchenne muscular dystrophy, a fatal sex-linked condition inherited from his mother. DMD is due to a mutant gene located on the X-chromosome and as there appeared to be no previous incidence of this condition in the family, it was likely this was a spontaneous mutation. Miss M was advised by the genetics counsellor that she was a carrier of DMD and if she produced another boy there was a 50% chance that he would also have DMD.

By the age of 10 R was severely disabled and receiving daily passive physiotherapy to help prevent contractures of his muscles. At 14 he was unable to move his arms and legs and his limb bones were long and thin (disuse **atrophy**). He died at the age of 16 from **myocardial** involvement and pulmonary infection.

WORD HELP

- action potential** electrochemical impulse generated by a muscle or nerve
- biopsy** removal and examination of living tissue
- contractures** abnormal shortening/contraction of muscle
- dystrophin** an essential structural protein found in muscle fibres
- gait** manner of walking
- GP** general practitioner (family doctor)
- immunochemical** pertaining to chemical basis of immunity
- mutant** gene that has changed from normal form resulting in a change to the organism inheriting it
- mutation** sudden change in the genetic material of cells (in this case in the mother's sex cells)
- necrosis** condition of localized death of tissue
- passive** not produced by the active effort of (the patient)
- physiotherapy** treatment using physical means to maintain or build physique or correct deformities due to injury or disease (AM. physical therapy)
- polyphasic** pertaining to many phases (here electrical potentials out of phase)
- proximal** near to origin/point of attachment
- pulmonary** pertaining to the lungs
- serum** clear fluid separated from blood when it is allowed to clot
- sex-linked** gene linked to a sex-chromosome (may result in increased frequency of certain disorders in one particular sex e.g. DMD affects boys only)
- X-chromosome** one of a pair of sex chromosomes that determine the sex of an individual

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) dystrophy
- (b) pseudohypertrophy
- (c) dystrophic

- (d) electromyography
- (e) myopathic
- (f) electromyogram
- (g) atrophy
- (h) myocardial

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the muscular system:

Aponeur/o	aponeurosis
Fibr/o	fibre
Kinesi/o	movement
Lei/o	smooth (muscle)
Muscul/o	muscle
My/o	muscle
Paed/o	child
Ped/o (Am.)	child
Rhabd/o	striated (muscle)
Tax/o	ordered movement
Tendin/o	tendon
Tend/o	tendon
Ten/o	tendon
Tenont/o	tendon

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the muscular system are listed below. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

DTR	deep tendon reflex
EMG	electromyogram/electromyography
im	intramuscular
IMHP	intramuscular high potency
MAMC	mid-arm muscle circumference
MAP	muscle action potential
MD	muscular dystrophy
MFT	muscle function test
MNJ	myoneural junction
MS	muscle shortening/strength/ musculoskeletal
Ortho	orthopaedics (Am. orthopedics)
TJ	triceps jerk

NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

a-	.....
dys-	.....
electro-	.....
hyper-	.....
ortho-	.....
pseudo-	.....

Combining forms of word roots

aesthesi/o	.....
(Am. esthesi/o)	.....
aponeur/o	.....
cardi/o	.....
fibr/o	.....
kinesi/o	.....
lei/o	.....
muscul/o	.....
my/o	.....
neur/o	.....
paed/o	.....
(Am. ped/o)	.....
phren/o	.....
rhabd/o	.....
tax/o	.....
tendin/o	.....

tend/o	.....
ten/o	.....
tenont/o	.....
<i>Suffixes</i>	
-al	.....
-algia	.....
-genic	.....
-globin	.....
-gram	.....
-graph	.....
-graphy	.....
-ic	.....
-itis	.....
-kymia	.....
-logy	.....
-lysis	.....
-meter	.....
-oma	.....
-osis	.....
-paresis	.....
-pathy	.....
-rrhaphy	.....
-rrhexis	.....
-sclerosis	.....
-spasm	.....
-taxia	.....
-tome	.....
-tonia	.....
-trophy	.....
-tropic	.....

➤ NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT ◀



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 13A

Prefixes, suffixes and combining forms of word roots

Match each word component from Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) aesthesi/o (Am. esthesi/o)	1. child
(b) cardi/o	2. movement
(c) electro-	3. tumour/ swelling
(d) fibr/o	4. diaphragm
(e) -globin	5. slight paralysis/ weakness
(f) kinesi/o	6. rupture/ break
(g) muscul/o	7. condition of hardening
(h) my/o	8. electrical
(i) -oma	9. protein
(j) ortho-	10. involuntary contraction of muscle
(k) paed/o (Am. ped/o)	11. condition of continuous slight contraction of muscle
(l) paresis	12. nourishment
(m) phren/o	13. fibre
(n) -rrhexis	14. pertaining to affinity for/ acting on

Column A	Column B	Column C
(o) -sclerosis	15. heart
(p) -spasm	16. muscle (i)
(q) ten/o	17. muscle (ii)
(r) -tonia	18. sensation
(s) -trophy	19. straight
(t) -tropic	20. tendon

Score

20

Test 13B

Write the meaning of:

(a) electromyograph	.....
(b) kinesiology	.....
(c) myototomy	.....
(d) myoatrophy	.....
(e) musculoaponeurotic	.....

Score

5

Test 13C

Build words that mean:

(a) condition of softening of muscle	.....
(b) pertaining to originating in muscle	.....
(c) disease of muscle	.....
(d) suturing of a tendon (use ten/o)	.....
(e) cutting of a tendon (use ten/o)	.....

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

The skeletal system

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 14 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the skeletal system
- build medical words relating to the skeletal system
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the skeletal system.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

dys-	bad/difficult/painful
endo-	within/inside
poly-	many

Roots/Combining forms

calcin/o	calcium
cost/o	rib
fibr/o	fibre
lith/o	stone
my/o	muscle
petr/o	stone/rock (brittle)
por/o	pore
py/o	pus

Suffixes

-al	pertaining to
-algia	condition of pain
-blast	cell that forms ... /immature germ cell
-centesis	puncture to remove fluid
-clasis	breaking
-clast	a cell that breaks
-desis	fixation/bind together by surgery
-eal	pertaining to
-ectomy	removal of
-genesis	capable of causing/forming
-genic	pertaining to formation/originating in
-gram	X-ray/tracing/recording
-graphy	technique of recording/making an X-ray
-ic	pertaining to
-itis	inflammation of
-logist	specialist who studies ...
-lysis	breakdown/disintegration
-lytic	pertaining to breakdown/disintegration
-malacia	condition of softening
-oid	resembling
-olisthesis	slipping
-oma	tumour/swelling
-osis	abnormal condition/disease/abnormal increase
-ous	pertaining to/of the nature of
-pathy	disease of
-phyte	plant/plant-like growth
-plasty	surgical repair/reconstruction
-scope	viewing instrument
-scopy	visual examination
-tome	cutting instrument
-trophy	nourishment/development

Details of synovial joint

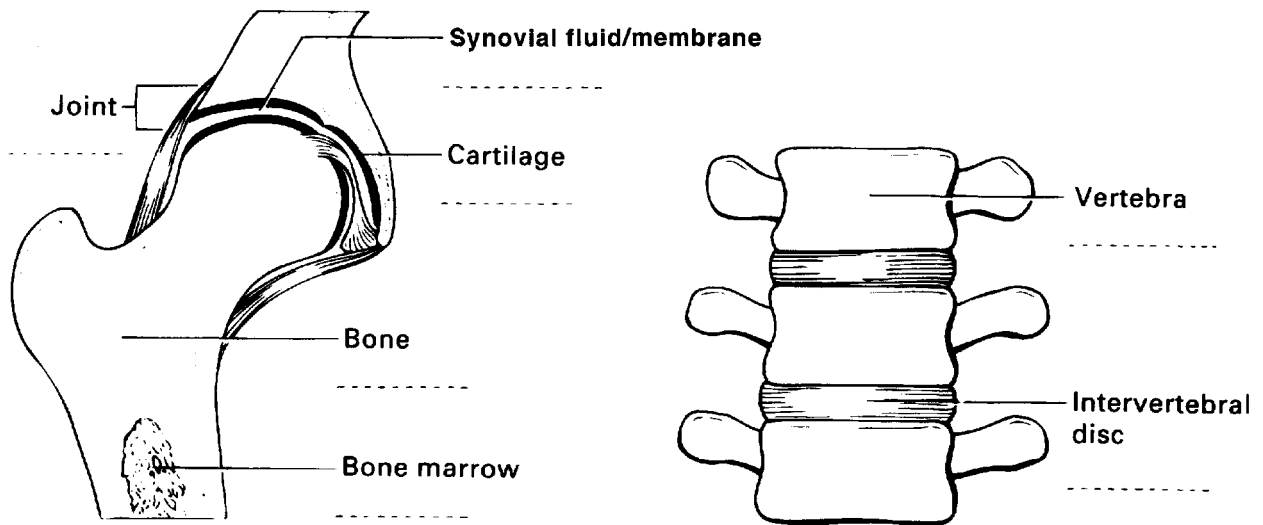


Figure 69 Joints



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–10, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figure 69 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 176.)

Arthr/o
Chondr/o
Disc/o

Myel/o
Oste/o

Spondyl/o
Synovi/o

The skeletal system

The supporting structure of the body consisting of 206 bones is known as the skeletal system. This system has five main functions:

- it supports all tissues
- it protects vital organs and soft tissues
- it manufactures blood cells
- it stores minerals that can be released into the blood
- it assists in movement.

Cartilage is found at the ends of bones and functions to form a smooth surface for the movement of one bone over another at a joint. In joints, bones are held together by tough fibrous connective tissues called ligaments. (The function of ligaments is to connect bone to bone.)

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–10 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Oste

(From a Greek word **osteon**, meaning bone.)

Combining forms **Oste/o**



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- osteo**/phyte _____
(refers to a bony outgrowth at joint surface)
- osteo**/por/osis _____
(refers to loss of calcium/phosphorus/bone density)
- osteo**/petr/osis _____
(refers to spotty calcification of bone, which becomes brittle)

- (d) **osteo**/clasis _____
- (e) **osteo**/clast _____
(a type of cell, compare with osteoblast)
- (f) **osteo**/dys/trophy _____

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (g) a cell that forms bone _____
- (h) pertaining to breaking down of bone _____
- (i) instrument to cut bone _____
- (j) specialist who studies bones _____

(*Osseus* is a Latin word meaning of bone. It is used in **osseous**, meaning pertaining to bone/of the nature of bone, and **ossification**, meaning to form bone.)

Root

Arthr

(From a Greek word **arthron**, meaning joint or articulation, i.e. the point where two or more bones meet.)

Combining forms **Arthr/o**



WORD EXERCISE 2

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **arthro**/endo/scope _____
- (b) **arthro**/py/osis _____
- (c) **arthro**/graphy _____
- (d) poly/**arthr**/itis _____

Rheumatoid arthritis refers to a polyarthritis accompanied by general ill health and varying degrees of crippling joint deformities, pain and stiffness (*rheumat/o* refers to rheumatism, a condition marked by inflammation, degeneration and metabolic disturbance of connective tissues especially those associated with joints).

- (e) **arthro**/desis _____
(Also known as an artificial **ankylosis** (from Greek *agkylos* meaning bent/fusion). An arthrodesis is achieved by surgery; see Fig. 70.)

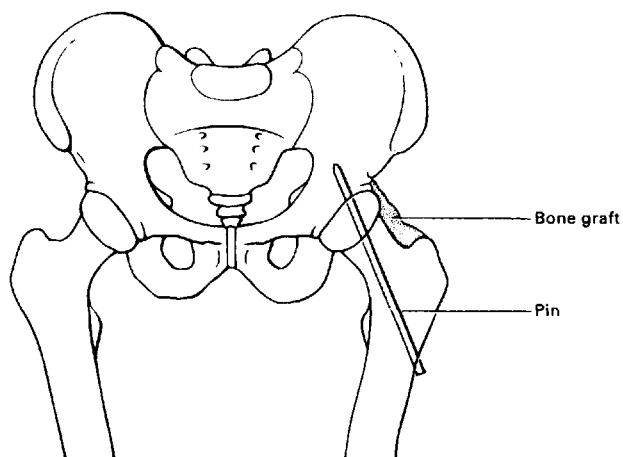


Figure 70 Arthrodesis of hip

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (f) **arthro**/clasis _____

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (g) technique of viewing a joint _____
- (h) puncture of a joint _____
- (i) X-ray picture of a joint _____
- (j) disease of a joint _____
- (k) stony material in a joint _____
- (l) surgical repair of a joint _____
(This operation includes the formation of artificial joints, e.g. in a hip replacement where the natural joint is replaced with a metallic prosthesis; Fig. 71.)

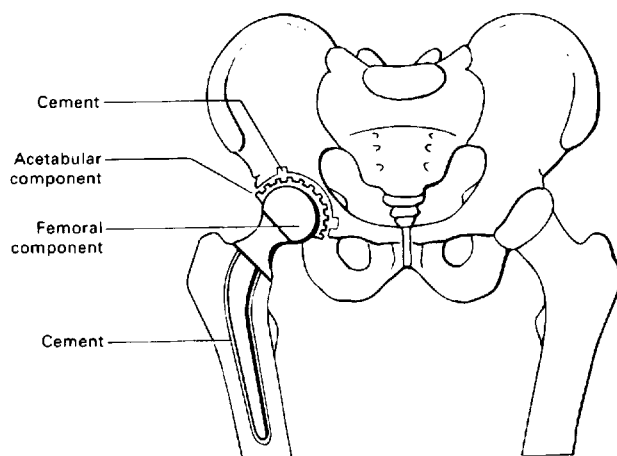


Figure 71 Arthroplasty

Root

Synovi

(From a New Latin word **synovia**, meaning the fluid secreted by the synovial membrane that lines the cavity of a joint. Here the combining form is used to mean synovial membrane.)

Combining forms **Synovi/o**



WORD EXERCISE 3

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) arthro/**synov**/itis

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(b) **synov**/ectomy

(c) **synovi**/oma

Bursae are sacs of synovial fluid surrounded by a synovial membrane. They are found between tendons, ligaments and bones. Inflammation due to pressure, injury or infection results in **bursitis** (from Latin *bursa*, meaning purse).

Root

Chondr

(From a Greek word **chondros**, meaning cartilage, the plastic-like connective tissue found at the ends of bones, e.g. in joints where it forms a smooth surface for movement of a joint.)

Combining forms **Chondr/o**



WORD EXERCISE 4

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **chondro**/phyte
(actually a cartilaginous growth)

(b) **chondr**/osse/ous

(c) **chondro**/por/osis

(d) **chondro**/dys/trophy

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(e) **chondro**/cost/al

(f) endo/**chondr**/al

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

(g) condition of pain in a cartilage

(h) condition of softening of cartilage

(i) formation of cartilage

(j) breakdown of cartilage

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(k) **chondro**/calcin/osis

A cartilage which is often damaged and removed is the crescent-shaped cartilage in the knee joint. The operation to remove this cartilage is known as **meniscectomy** (from Latin *meniscus*, meaning crescent; combining forms **menisc/o**).

Root

Spondyl

(From Greek word **spondylos**, meaning vertebra or vertebral column.)

Combining forms **Spondyl/o**



WORD EXERCISE 5

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **spondyl**/algia

(b) **spondylo**/py/osis

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

(c) breakdown/disintegration of vertebrae

(d) any disease of vertebrae

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(e) **spondyl**/olisthesis
(this applies to lumbar vertebrae)

Here we need to mention three other conditions of the vertebrae:

Kyphosis

An abnormally curved spine (as viewed from the side), commonly called hunch/humpback or dowager's hump. (**Kyph/o** is from Greek *kyphos*, meaning crooked/hump.) See Figure 72(a).

Scoliosis

A lateral curvature of the vertebral column. (**Scoli/o** is from a Greek word *scoli*, meaning crooked/twisted.) See Figure 72(b).

Lordosis

A forward curvature of the spine in the lumbar region (from a Greek word meaning to bend the body forward).

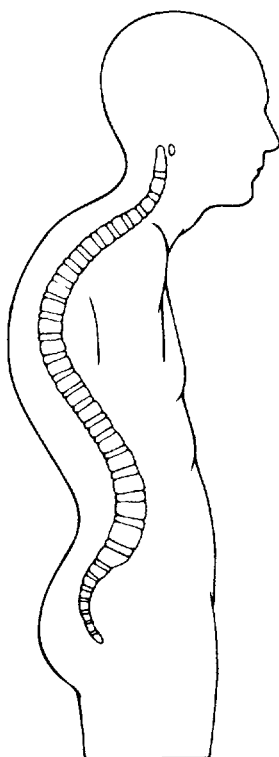


Figure 72 (a) Kyphosis

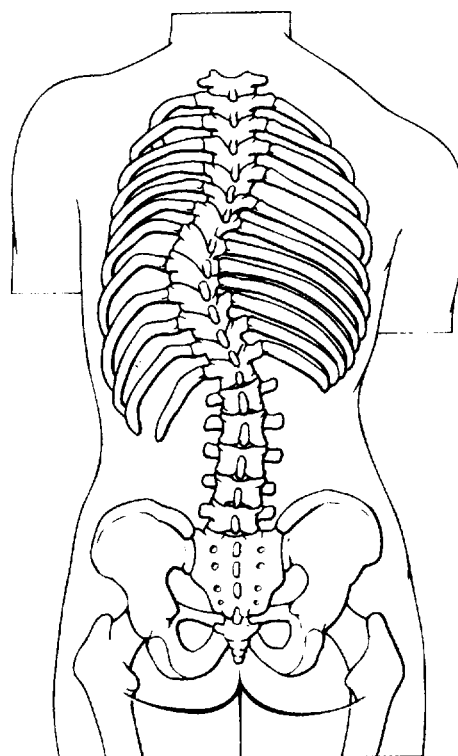


Figure 72 (b) Scoliosis



WORD EXERCISE 6

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(a) **disc/oid**

(b) **disco/genic**

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

(c) technique of making
an X-ray of an
intervertebral disc

(d) removal of an
intervertebral disc

The excision of degenerated intervertebral discs requires the removal of a thin layer of bone from the vertebral arch. This operation is termed a **laminectomy** (from Latin *lamina*, meaning thin plate; combining forms **lamin/o**).

Two of these words can be combined as in:

Scoliokyphosis	}	both meaning lateral and posterior curvature of the spine.
Kyphoscoliosis		

Root

Disc

(From a Latin word **diskus**, meaning disc. It refers to pads of connective tissue that act as shock absorbers between vertebrae, i.e. intervertebral discs.)

Combining forms **Disc/o Disk/o (Am.)**

Root

Myel

(From a Greek word **myelos**, meaning marrow. Here we use it to mean the marrow of bones. Remember we have already used this root in reference to the spinal marrow and blood cells of the marrow cavities.)

Combining forms **Myelo/o**



WORD EXERCISE 7

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) osteo/**myel**/itis

(b) **myelo**/fibr/osis

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

Revise the names of all instruments and clinical procedures used in this unit and then try Exercise 8.



WORD EXERCISE 8

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) osteotome	_____	1. puncture of a joint to withdraw synovial fluid
(b) arthrodesis	_____	2. technique of making an X-ray of a joint
(c) replacement arthroplasty	_____	3. fixation of a joint by surgery
(d) arthrocentesis	_____	4. chisel-like instrument used to cut bone
(e) arthrography	_____	5. insertion of a metallic prosthesis to replace a joint

The skeleton

There are many terms that refer to specific bones within the skeleton. Look at the diagram (Fig. 73) and then complete Exercises 9 and 10.

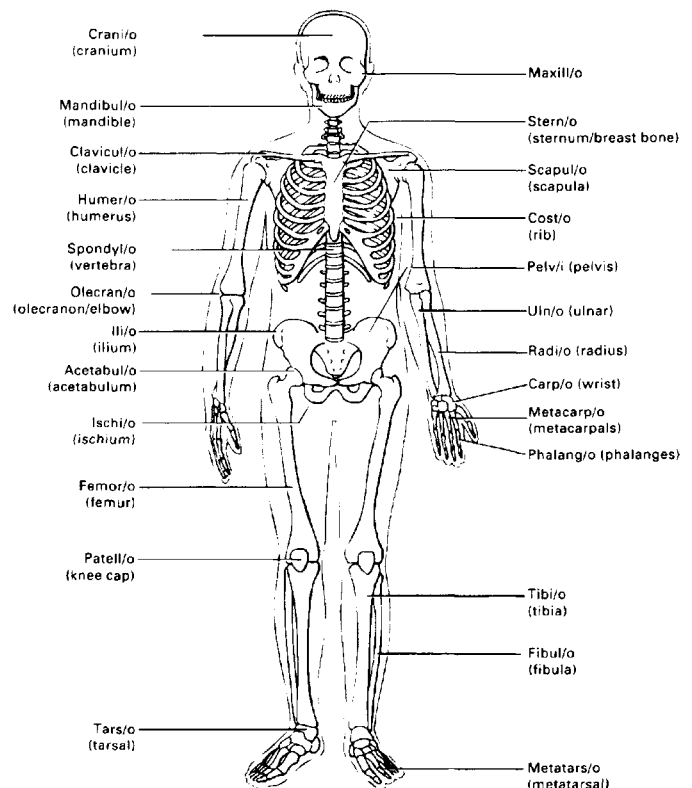


Figure 73 The skeleton



WORD EXERCISE 9

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- surgical repair/reconstruction of the collar bone
- condition of softening of the cranium
- pertaining to between the ribs
- removal of a finger
- pertaining to the pelvis
- inflammation of an elbow joint

- (g) pertaining to the femur and tibia
- (h) surgical fixation of the scapula
- (i) condition of pain in the metatarsal region
- (j) surgical operation to reconstruct the hip socket



WORD EXERCISE 10

Using your Exercise Guide and Fig. 73, find the meaning of:

- (a) inter/**phalang**/eal
- (b) **metatars**/algia
- (c) tarso/**metatars**/al
- (d) **metacarp**/al



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 170.



CASE HISTORY 14

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on rheumatoid arthritis; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Rheumatoid arthritis

Mrs N, a 58-year-old female, was referred to the **rheumatologist** by her **GP** with a generalized **arthralgia** and **aggravating** symptoms in her left shoulder. Her GP prescribed **NSAIDs** for 7 weeks bringing some relief. Five years previously she had a **bursitis** in the same shoulder that had been successfully treated. There was no history of **rheumatoid** arthritis in her family.

Examination revealed a widespread **symmetrical polyarthritis** with swelling and tenderness in her **metacarpophalangeal** joints, **proximal interphalangeal** joints and **metatarsophalangeal** joints. Both wrists were swollen and tender, and all metatarsal heads were painful on **compression**. There were signs of small muscle wasting in both hands. Her back was not affected and those joints that were, seemed to be stiff in the mornings for several hours. She complained of recurrent fatigue.

Mrs N had diminished movement of the chest with dullness on **percussion**; breath sounds were absent at the right **base**.

Joint **radiography** indicated an **erosion** in the 3rd metatarsophalangeal joint and a **CXR** confirmed a right sided **pleural effusion**. **Haematology** reported a high **rheumatoid factor**. A diagnosis of erosive rheumatoid arthritis with pleural effusion was made. Initial treatment of her inflammatory **arthropathy** was **enteric** coated aspirin 4g/day; she was advised of possible side effects.

WORD HELP

aggravating making worse

base here it refers to the base/lower part of the right lung

compression pressing

CXR chest X-ray

effusion a fluid discharge into a part/escape of fluid into an enclosed space

enteric pertaining to the intestine, here refers to a coating on a pill or tablet that allows it to pass to the intestine without being affected in the stomach

erosion destruction (here of a piece of bone)

GP general practitioner (family doctor)

haematology the study of blood, here refers to the department that analyses blood

NSAID non-steroid anti-inflammatory drug

percussion striking the body to produce a sound (here striking the thoracic wall)

pleural pertaining to the pleura (membranes that surround the lungs)

proximal near to origin/point of attachment

radiography technique of making an X-ray/recording

rheumatoid resembling rheumatism (a painful condition marked by inflammation and degeneration of connective tissues especially around joints)

rheumatoid factor type of antibody found in the sera of patients with rheumatoid arthritis

symmetrical correspondence on opposite sides of the body/equality of parts on either side of the midline of the body

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) rheumatologist
- (b) arthralgia

- (c) bursitis
- (d) polyarthritis
- (e) metacarpophalangeal
- (f) interphalangeal
- (g) metatarsophalangeal
- (h) arthropathy

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Abbreviations (Contd.)

CDH	congenital dislocation of the hip
Fx	fracture
L 1–5	lumbar vertebrae 1–5
OA	osteoarthritis
Osteo	osteomyelitis
PID	prolapsed intervertebral disc
RA	rheumatoid arthritis
RF (RhF)	rheumatoid factor
T 1–12	thoracic vertebrae 1–12
THR	total hip replacement

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the skeletal system:

Ankyl/o	fusion/adhesion/bent
Arthro	joint
Burs/o	bursa
Calcin/o	calcium
Chondr/o	cartilage
Cost/o	rib
Disc/o	intervertebral disc
Fibr/o	fibre
Kyph/o	crooked/humped
Lamin/o	lamina/part of vertebral arch
Lord/o	bend forward
Menisc/o	meniscus
Myel/o	bone marrow
Osse/o	bone
Oste/o	bone
Petr/o	stone/rock
Por/o	passage/pore
Scoli/o	crooked/twisted
Spondyl/o	vertebra
Synovi/o	synovial fluid/membrane



NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

- dys-
- endo-
- inter-
- poly-

Combining forms of word roots

- ankyl/o
- arthro
- burs/o
- calcin/o
- chondr/o
- cost/o
- disc/o
- fibr/o

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the skeletal system are listed below. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

BM(T)	bone marrow trephine
C 1–7	cervical vertebrae 1–7

kyph/o

lamin/o

lith/o

lord/o

menisc/o

myel/o

osse/o

oste/o

petr/o

phyt/o

por/o

py/o

rheumat/o

scoli/o

spondyl/o

synovi/o

Suffixes

-al

-algia

-blast

-centesis

-clasis

-clast

-desis

-eal

-ectomy

-genesis

-genic

-gram

-graphy

-ic

-itis

-logist

-lysis

-lytic

-malacia

-oid

-olisthesis

-oma

-osis

-pathy

-plasty

-scope

-scopy

-tome

-trophy

Combining forms referring to specific parts of the skeleton

acetabul/o

carp/o

clavicul/o

cost/o

crani/o

femor/o

fibul/o

humer/o

ili/o

ischi/o

mandibul/o

maxill/o

metacarp/o

metatars/o

olecran/o

patell/o

pelv/i

phalang/o

radi/o

scapul/o

spondyl/o

stern/o

tars/o

tarsometatars/o

tibi/o

uln/o

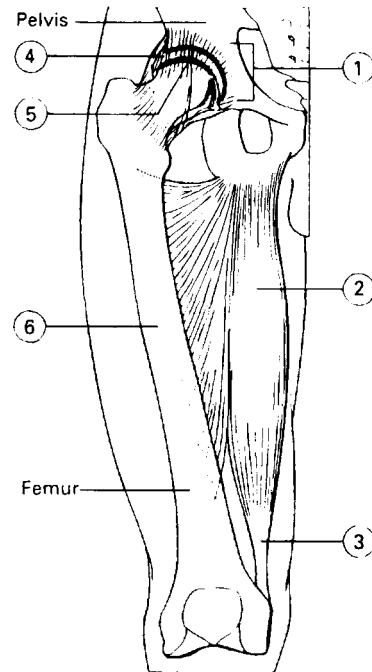


Figure 74

Muscle and skeletal arrangement in the thigh

Score

6

➤ NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT ◀



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 14A

Below are some combining forms that refer to the anatomy of the skeletal system and its movement. Indicate which part of the system they refer to by putting a number from the diagram (Fig. 74) next to each word.

(a) synovi/o

(b) tendin/o

(c) my/o

(d) arthr/o

(e) oste/o

(f) chondr/o

Test 14B

Prefixes and suffixes

Match each prefix or suffix in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A

Column B

Column C

(a) -al

(b) -algia

(c) -blast

(d) -centesis

(e) -clast

(f) -desis

1. resembling

2. tumour/swelling

3. slipping/
dislocation

4. condition of pain

5. technique of
viewing

6. surgical repair

Column A	Column B	Column C	Column A	Column B	Column C
(g) dys-	_____	7. cell that breaks down a matrix	(a) arthr/o	_____	1. bone
(h) -genesis	_____	8. pertaining to destruction/ breaking down	(b) burs/o	_____	2. marrow (of bone)
(i) -ic	_____	9. condition of softening	(c) calcin/o	_____	3. synovia/synovial membrane
(j) inter-	_____	10. instrument to cut	(d) chondr/o	_____	4. pus
(k) -itis	_____	11. inflammation of	(e) cost/o	_____	5. joint
(l) -lytic	_____	12. puncture to remove fluid	(f) disc/o	_____	6. vertebrae
(m) -malacia	_____	13. producing/ forming	(g) fibr/o	_____	7. bursa/sac of fluid
(n) -oid	_____	14. pertaining to (i)	(h) kyph/o	_____	8. stone/rock
(o) -olisthesis	_____	15. pertaining to (ii)	(i) lamin/o	_____	9. calcium
(p) -oma	_____	16. instrument to view	(j) lord/o	_____	10. meniscus/ crescent-shaped
(q) -plasty	_____	17. difficult/painful/ bad	(k) menisc/o	_____	11. bend forward
(r) -scope	_____	18. germ cell	(l) myel/o	_____	12. cartilage
(s) -scopy	_____	19. to bind together	(m) oste/o	_____	13. crooked
(t) -tome	_____	20. between	(n) petr/o	_____	14. fibre
			(o) phyt/o	_____	15. hunchback
			(p) por/o	_____	16. thin plate/lamina of vertebra
			(q) py/o	_____	17. rib
			(r) scoli/o	_____	18. passage/pore
			(s) spondyl/o	_____	19. plant-like growth
			(t) synovi/o	_____	20. intervertebral disc

Score

20

Test 14C

Combining forms of word roots

Match each combining form in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Score

20

Test 14D

Write the meaning of:

- (a) arthrochondritis
- (b) bursolith
- (c) spondylodesis
- (d) chondroclast
- (e) kyphotic

Score

5

Test 14E

Build words that mean:

- (a) condition of pain in a joint
- (b) inflammation of synovia
and adjacent bones
- (c) condition of softening of
vertebrae
- (d) disease of joints and bones
- (e) germ cell of the synovial
membrane

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

The male reproductive system

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 15 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the male reproductive system
- build medical words relating to the male reproductive system
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the male reproductive system.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

a-	without
crypt-	hidden
oligo-	deficiency/few
trans-	across/through

Roots/Combining forms

cyst/o	bladder
fer/o	to carry

posth/o
phren/o

prepuce/foreskin
diaphragm

Suffixes

-al	pertaining to
-algia	condition of pain
-cele	swelling/protrusion/hernia
-cide	something that kills/killing
-ectomy	removal of
-genesis	forming/capable of causing
-graphy	technique of recording/making an X-ray
-ia	condition of
-ic	pertaining to
-ism	process of
-itis	inflammation of
-lysis	breakdown/disintegration
-megaly	enlargement
-meter	measuring instrument
-oma	tumour/swelling
-ous	pertaining to/of the nature of
-pathia	condition of disease
-pathy	disease of
-pexy	surgical fixation/fix in place
-plasty	surgical repair/reconstruction
-rrhagia	condition of bursting forth/discharge of blood
-rrhaphy	suture/stitch/suturing
-rrhea (Am.)	excessive flow/discharge
-rrhoea	excessive flow/discharge
-sect(ion)	cut/cutting/excision
-stomy	opening into
-tomy	incision into
-uria	condition of urine

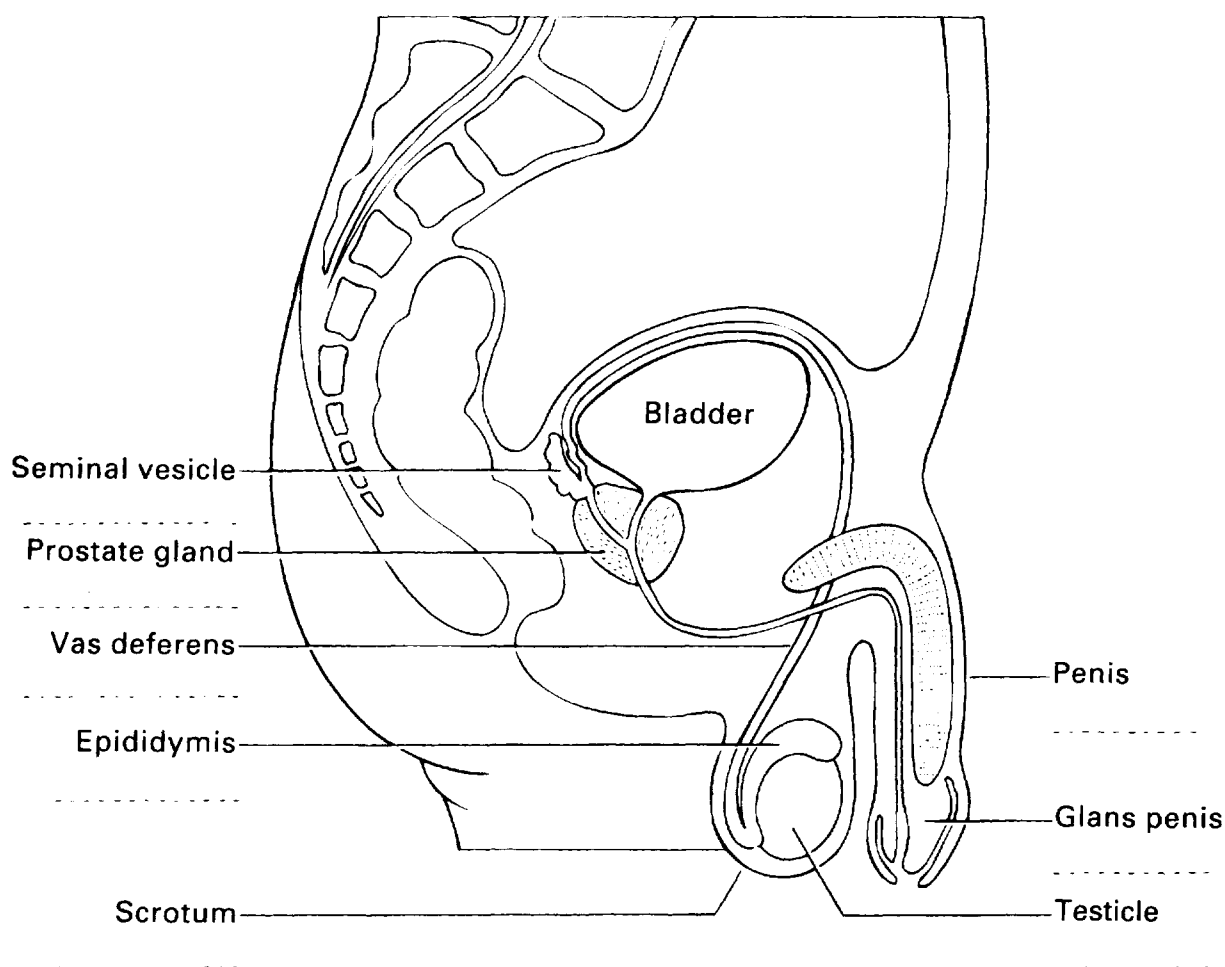


Figure 75 The male reproductive system



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–11, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figure 75 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 188.)

Balan/o
Epididym/o
Orchi/o

Phall/o
Prostat/o
Scrot/o

Vas/o
Vesicul/o

The male reproductive system

The male possesses paired reproductive organs known as the testes (synonymous with testicles). These are held in position outside the main cavities of the body by a sac known as the scrotum. Each testis produces millions of sperm cells (spermatozoa) that carry the male's genetic information. Once mature, sperms are mixed with glandular secretions to form a liquid known as semen.

Semen containing active swimming sperms is ejaculated from the penis during sexual intercourse. Sperms swim along the reproductive tract of the female to the oviducts where they may fuse with an egg in the process of fertilization.

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–11 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Orch

(From a Greek word **orchi**, meaning *testis (or testicle)*, i.e. the male reproductive organ that produces spermatozoa.)

Combining forms **Orch/i/o, orchid/o**



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **orchido**/pathy
- (b) **orchio**/cele
(synonymous with scrotal hernia/scrotocele)
- (c) crypt/**orch**/ism
(The testes should descend from the abdominal cavity approximately 2 months prior to birth. Failure to do this produces an undescended testis.)
- (d) **orchio**/pexy (**orchido**/pexy)

Using your Exercise Guide, build words (using either **orch/i/o** or **orchid/o**) that mean:

- (e) incision into a testicle
- (f) surgical repair of a testicle
- (g) removal of a testicle
- (h) condition of pain in a testicle

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (i) crypt/**orchido**/pexy
(synonymous with **orchido**/pexy)

Note. The word testicle comes from the Latin *testiculus* meaning testis or male gonad (reproductive organ). The combining form **test/icul/o** is used in several common medical terms for example, **testosterone** (-sterone meaning steroid hormone) and intra/**testicul**/ar (intra- meaning within, -ar meaning pertaining to).

Root

Scrot

(From a Latin word **scrotum**. It refers to the scrotum, the pouch containing the testicles.)

Combining forms **Scrot/o**



WORD EXERCISE 2

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) removal of the scrotum
- (b) plastic surgery/repair of the scrotum
- (c) hernia/protrusion of the scrotum
(synonymous with **orchiocele**)

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (d) trans/**-scrot**/al

Two other conditions can result in a swelling of the testis:

Hydrocele

a swelling/protrusion/hernia due to an accumulation of fluid within the testis.

Varicocele

a swelling/protrusion/hernia of veins of the spermatic cords within the testis (from Latin *varicosus*, meaning varicose vein). Varicoceles need to be removed as they lead to pain and infertility.

Root

Phall

(From a Greek word **phallos**, meaning the penis or male copulatory organ. It is also the male organ of urination.)

Combining forms **Phall/o**



WORD EXERCISE 3

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) inflammation of the penis
- (b) pertaining to the penis

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (c) removal of the penis

Penis is a Latin word referring to the male organ of copulation. **Penitis** and **penile** are synonymous with

(a) and (b) above. An abnormally enlarged penis is known as a **megalopenis** or **megalophallus**.

Several abnormalities of the penis have been noted at birth. The urethra sometimes opens on to the dorsal (upper) surface of the penis. This is known as an **epispadia** (*epi-* meaning above, and *-spadia* condition of drawing out). Sometimes the urethra opens on to the posterior (lower) surface. This is a **hypospadia** (condition of drawing out below).

The swelling of the penis during erotic stimulation is known as tumescence (from Latin *tumescere*, meaning to swell). The subsidence of the swelling is known as detumescence (*de* meaning lack of). Once erect the penis can be inserted into the vagina in the act of sex. Words used synonymously with sex include:

Coitus

from Latin *coire*, meaning to come together.

Intercourse

from Latin *intercurrere*, meaning to run between.

Copulation

from Latin *copulare*, meaning to bind together.

The failure to produce an erection and perform the sexual act is known as impotence (from Latin *impotentia*, meaning inability). This condition is often due to psychological problems, but it can arise from lesions within the reproductive tract or nervous system.

Root

Balan

(From a Greek word **balanos**, meaning acorn. Here it refers to the sensitive, swollen end of the penis, known as the glans penis, which is covered with the prepuce of foreskin.)

Combining forms **Balan/o**



WORD EXERCISE 4

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

(a) inflammation of the glans penis

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(b) **balano/rrhagia**

(c) **balano/posth/itis**

The **prepuce**, or covering foreskin of the glans penis, sometimes needs to be cut, a process known as

preputiotomy. This is performed to relieve phimosis, a condition in which the foreskin is too tight and cannot retract.

The prepuce is removed in the process of circumcision (i.e. cutting around). This is often performed for religious rather than medical reasons.

Root

Epididym

(Derived from Greek words **epi** – on, **didymos** – twins/testicles. It refers to a coiled tube, the epididymis, which forms the first part of the duct system of each testis. The epididymes store sperm.)

Combining forms **Epididym/o**



WORD EXERCISE 5

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

(a) inflammation of the epididymis

(b) removal of the epididymis

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(c) **epididymo/-orch/itis**

Root

Vas

(A Latin word meaning vessel or duct. Here it is used to mean **vas deferens**, the main secretory duct of the testis along which mature sperms move towards the penis.)

Combining forms **Vas/o**



WORD EXERCISE 6

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **vas/ectomy**
(This operation (Fig. 76) is performed to sterilize the male, i.e. to make him incapable of reproduction. The cut ends of a section of the vas are tied off, a procedure known as bilateral ligation (from Latin *ligare*, meaning to bind). Following vasectomy, a reduced volume of semen is produced containing no sperm.)

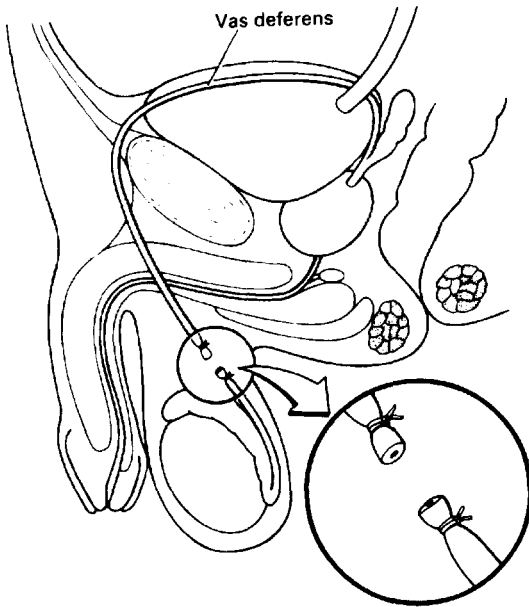


Figure 76 Vasectomy

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (b) **vaso**/epididymo/stomy
- (c) **vaso**/epididymo/graphy
- (d) **vaso**/section
- (e) **vaso**/rrhaphy

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (f) **vaso**/-orchido/stomy
- (g) **vaso**/**vaso**/stomy
- (h) **vaso**/tomy

Root

Vesicul

(From a Latin word **vesicula**, meaning vesicle/little bladder. It refers to the seminal vesicles, small pouches lying near the base of the bladder that secrete a nutrient fluid which becomes a component of semen.)

Combining forms **Vesicul/o**



WORD EXERCISE 7

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) technique of making an X-ray of the seminal vesicles
- (b) incision into a seminal vesicle

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) vaso/**vesicul**/ectomy

Root

Prostat

(From Greek **prostates**, meaning one who stands before. It is used to refer to the prostate gland surrounding the neck of the bladder and urethra in males. Secretions from the prostate gland are added to the semen during intercourse.)

Combining forms **Prostat/o**



WORD EXERCISE 8

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **prostat**/cysto/tomy
- (b) **prostat**/megaly

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) **prostat**/ectomy
(In elderly men there is a progressive enlargement of the prostate (prostatism) that obstructs the urethra, interfering with the passage of urine. Part or all of the gland can be removed by transurethral resection (TUR) to alleviate this condition (*trans*, meaning across, *resection*, meaning removal/excision). TUR involves inserting an endoscope into the urethra and using it to view and cut out pieces of prostate gland.)
- (d) **prostat**/vesicul/ectomy

Root

Semin

(From a Latin word **seminis**, meaning seed. It now refers to semen, the liquid secretion of the testicles, or to glands associated with the reproductive system.)

Combining forms **Semin/i**



WORD EXERCISE 9

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **semini**/fer/ous
(Spermatozoa flow along seminiferous tubules of the testis.)
- (b) **semin**/uria
- (c) **semin**/oma
(A malignancy of the testis. A change in size and shape of the testes is a symptom of this condition; their size can be measured with an **orchidometer**. When a testis is removed it can be replaced with a prosthesis.)

Insemination refers to the deposition of semen in the female reproductive tract (from Latin *seminare*, meaning to sow).

Artificial insemination (AI) refers to the insertion of semen into the uterus via a cannula (tube) instead of by coitus. The sperm used in this procedure can be from two sources:

- AI by husband (AIH). In this procedure semen from the patient's husband is inseminated into the wife. It is used when there is difficulty in conceiving because of physical and/or psychological problems.
- AI by donor (AID). In this procedure semen from a male other than the female's partner is used. AID is used when the partner is sterile.

Root

Sperm

(From a Greek word **sperma**, meaning seed. It is used to mean sperm cells or spermatozoa (sing. spermatozoon). Sperm are ejaculated from the male during the peak of sexual excitement known as orgasm.)

Combining forms

Sperm/o, spermat/o

Also **sperm/i** (from New Latin **spermium**)



WORD EXERCISE 10

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) a/**sperm**/ia
- (b) oligo/**sperm**/ia

- (c) **spermi**/cide
(often used in conjunction with condoms and other contraceptives)

Using your Exercise Guide, build words using spermat/o that mean:

- (d) condition of disease/
abnormality of sperms
- (e) formation of sperms
- (f) breakdown/disintegration
of sperms
- (g) flow of sperm
(abnormal, without orgasm)

Sperm counts are performed to estimate the number of sperms, the percentage of abnormal sperms and their mobility. The actual number of sperms is important in determining the fertility of the male. A sperm count of less than 60 million sperms per cm³ of semen results in decreased fertility, even though only one sperm is required to fertilize an egg!

Semen containing sperms can be preserved at very low temperatures in a cryostat. Once thawed, the sperm are capable of fertilizing eggs and are used for artificial insemination.

Recently it has become possible to use sperm to fertilize eggs outside the body in laboratory glassware, a process known as in vitro fertilization (*vitro* meaning glass).

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

Revise the names of all instruments and procedures mentioned in this unit and then try Exercise 11.



WORD EXERCISE 11

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

- | Column A | Column B | Column C |
|-----------------------------|----------|---|
| (a) sperm count | | 1. fusion of an egg and sperm in laboratory glassware |
| (b) transurethral resection | | 2. material used to tie a cut vas |

Column A	Column B	Column C
(c) vasectomy	3.	instrument to measure the size of a testicle
(d) orchidometer	4.	cutting of prostate through the urethra
(e) in vitro fertilization	5.	estimate of numbers of spermatozoa in 1 cm ³ semen
(f) vasoligature	6.	the cutting and removal of a section of the sperm duct



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 182.



CASE HISTORY 15

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on seminoma; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Seminoma

Mr O, a 32-year-old father of two children, consulted his GP about a severe back pain. Although a regular football player he could not recall any recent injury that could account for his condition. During his consultation he mentioned that several months ago he had noticed his right testicle was swollen. It felt heavy and sometimes uncomfortable but he had ignored it assuming it would resolve. When his early medical record was checked it revealed a history of **cryptorchism** of the right testicle that had been rectified by **orchidopexy** at the age of 5 years.

Palpation showed the right testicle to be hard, smooth and swollen. It was easily separated from the epididymis and did not transilluminate. Mr O had not felt any pain and otherwise appeared in good health. There was no evidence of **orchitis**, epididymitis or torsion. He was counselled by his GP who referred him to the Urology department with suspected cancer of the testis.

Ultrasonography determined the presence of an **intratesticular** mass in the right testicle. A chest X-ray was negative for lung metastases, but a CT scan of his abdominopelvic region revealed retroperitoneal and para-aortic lymphadenopathy. He had elevated levels of the serum tumour markers βHCG and lactate dehydrogenase.

Mr O was advised of the need for surgical **orchidectomy** and the procedure was explained to him by the consultant.

Mr O's scrotal contents were examined and his right testicle removed through an inguinal approach with early clamping of the **spermatic** cord and its vessels. (Note, **trans-scrotal** biopsy is contra-indicated as a means of evaluating scrotal masses as it causes tumour cell shedding and spread of the tumour).

Histopathological analysis confirmed the presence of a malignant seminoma in the right testicle; the contralateral testis was biopsied at the same time and found to be normal.

Mr O's condition was assessed as Stage IIC and he was given chemotherapy with follow up chest X-ray, abdominopelvic CT scan and serum tumour marker determination every 3 months. At 6 months the residual retroperitoneal mass has shrunk and calcified, and he remains progression free.

WORD HELP

βHCG a serum tumour marker

calcified referring to deposition of calcium salts into a tissue

chemotherapy treatment using drugs (here cytotoxic drugs that destroy cancer cells)

contralateral pertaining to the opposite side

CT computed tomography

epididymis the first part of the duct system that leaves the testis and stores maturing sperm

epididymitis inflammation of the epididymis

GP general practitioner (family doctor)

histopathological pertaining to disease of a tissue

inguinal pertaining to the groin

lactate dehydrogenase a serum tumour marker

lymphadenopathy disease of lymph nodes (lymph glands)

malignant dangerous, capable of spreading

metastases parts of a tumour that have spread from one site to another

palpation act of feeling with the fingers using light pressure

para-aortic pertaining to beside the aorta

progression advancing, moving forward of a disease

retroperitoneal pertaining to behind the peritoneum

serum tumour marker certain chemicals are elevated to higher than normal levels in blood serum when tumours are present, they act as signs or markers of the presence of disease

WORD HELP (Contd.)

Stage IIC staging is a system of classifying malignant disease that will influence its treatment; this patient is at Stage IIC

torsion act of twisting/rotation

transilluminate shine a bright light through (note, a solid tumour will prevent transmission of light)

ultrasonography technique of recording (an image) using high frequency sound waves

urology study of the urinary tract (here department that diagnoses and treats disease and disorders of the urinary tract)

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) cryptorchism
- (b) orchidopexy
- (c) orchitis
- (d) intratesticular
- (e) orchidectomy
- (f) spermatic
- (g) trans-scrotal
- (h) seminoma

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the reproductive system:

Balan/o	glans penis
Cyst/o	bladder
Epididym/o	epididymis
Orchi/o	testis
Phall/o	penis
Posth/o	prepuce/foreskin
Prostat/o	prostate
Scrot/o	scrotum
Semin/i	semen/testis
Sperm/i	spermatozoa/sperm
Varic/o	varicose vein
Vas/o	vas deferens/vessel
Vesicul/o	seminal vesicle

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the male reproductive system are listed below. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

AI	artificial insemination
AID	artificial insemination by donor
ICSH	interstitial cell stimulating hormone
pros	prostate
PSA	prostate specific antigen
SPP	suprapubic prostatectomy
STD	sexually transmitted disease
Syph	syphilis
TUR	transurethral resection
TURP	transurethral resection of prostate
VD	venereal disease
WR	Wasserman reaction test for syphilis

NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

- a-
- crypt-
- epi-
- hypo-
- intra-
- oligo-
- trans-

Combining forms of word roots

balan/o	.....
cyst/o	.....
epididym/o	.....
fer/o	.....
hydr/o	.....
megal/o	.....
orchi/o	.....
phall/o	.....
posth/o	.....
prostat/o	.....
scrot/o	.....
semin/i	.....
sperm/i	.....
varic/o	.....
vas/o	.....
vesicul/o	.....

Suffixes

-al	.....
-algia	.....
-ar	.....
-cele	.....
-cide	.....
-ectomy	.....
-genesis	.....
-graphy	.....
-ia	.....
-ic	.....
-ism	.....

-itis	.....
-ligation	.....
-lysis	.....
-oma	.....
-ous	.....
-pathia	.....
-pexy	.....
-plasty	.....
-rrhagia	.....
-rrhaphy	.....
-rrhoea (Am. -rrhea)	.....
-sect(ion)	.....
-spadia	.....
-stomy	.....
-tomy	.....
-uria	.....

➤ NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT ◀

**SELF-ASSESSMENT****Test 15A**

Below are some combining forms that refer to the anatomy of the male reproductive system. Indicate which part of the system they refer to by putting a number from the diagram (Fig. 77) next to each word.

- (a) scrot/o
- (b) orchid/o
- (c) phall/o
- (d) balan/o
- (e) vas/o

- (f) prostat/o _____
- (g) vesicul/o _____
- (h) epididym/o _____

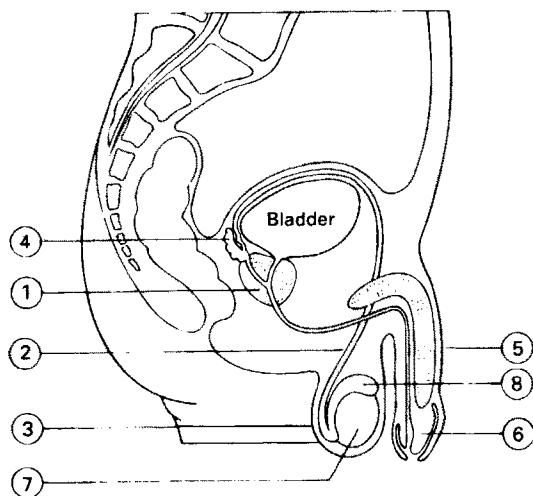


Figure 77 The male reproductive system

Score

8

Column A	Column B	Column C
(h) -ism	_____	8. suturing
(i) oligo-	_____	9. on/above/upon
(j) -ous	_____	10. condition of bursting forth (of blood)
(k) -pexy	_____	11. pertaining to (i)
(l) re-	_____	12. pertaining to (ii)
(m) -rrhagia	_____	13. process of
(n) -rrhaphy	_____	14. excessive flow/discharge
(o) -rrhoea (Am. -rrhea)	_____	15. producing/forming
(p) -sect	_____	16. hernia/protrusion/swelling
(q) -spadia	_____	17. condition of
(r) -stomy	_____	18. to kill
(s) trans-	_____	19. cut
(t) -uria	_____	20. little/scanty/few

Score

20

Test 15B

Prefixes and suffixes

Match each prefix or suffix in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) -cele	_____	1. fixation
(b) -cide	_____	2. condition of drawing out
(c) crypt-	_____	3. hidden
(d) epi-	_____	4. condition of urine/urination
(e) -genesis	_____	5. opening into
(f) -ia	_____	6. across
(g) -ic	_____	7. back

Test 15C

Combining forms of word roots

Match each combining form in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) balan/o	_____	1. to carry
(b) cyst/o	_____	2. testis
(c) epididym/o	_____	3. penis
(d) fer/o	_____	4. glans penis

Column A	Column B	Column C
(e) hydr/o	5. prostate gland
(f) megal/o	6. prepuce
(g) orchid/o	7. semen
(h) phall/o	8. epididymis
(i) posth/o	9. varicose vein
(j) prostat/o	10. vessel
(k) scrot/o	11. vesicle (seminal)
(l) semin/i	12. water
(m) varic/o	13. scrotum
(n) vas/o	14. bladder
(o) vesicul/o	15. abnormal enlargement

Score

15

Test 15E

Build words that mean:

- (a) stitching/suturing of the testis
- (b) condition of pain in the prostate
- (c) formation of an opening between the vas and epididymis
- (d) inflammation of the scrotum
- (e) excessive flow/discharge from the prostate

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

Test 15D

Write the meaning of:

- (a) orchidoepididymectomy
- (b) phallorrhoea
- (Am. phallorrhea)
- (c) epididymovasectomy
- (d) vasoligation
- (e) spermaturia

Score

5

This page intentionally left blank

The female reproductive system

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 16 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the female reproductive system
- build medical words relating to the female reproductive system
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the female reproductive system.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

a-	without
ante-	before
dys-	difficult/painful
endo-	within/inside
eu-	good
micro-	small
multi-	many
neo-	new
nulli-	none
oligo-	deficiency/little/few
peri-	around
pre-	before/in front of
primi-	first
pro-	before
secundi-	second

Roots/Combining forms

cyst/o	bladder (cyst)
cyt/e	cell
fer/o	to carry
haem/o	blood
hem/o (Am.)	blood
myc/o	fungus
perine/o	perineum
periton/e/o	peritoneum
phleb/o	vein
placent/o	placenta
rect/o	rectum
trachel/o	neck
vesic/o	bladder

Suffixes

-a	noun ending/a name e.g. of a condition
-agogue	agent that induces/promotes
-al	pertaining to
-algia	condition of pain
-arche	beginning
-blast	cell that forms ... /immature germ cell
-cele	swelling/protrusion/hernia
-centesis	puncture
-dynia	condition of pain
-ectomy	removal of
-fuge	agent that suppresses/removes
-genesis	formation of
-genic	pertaining to formation
-gram	X-ray/tracing/recording
-graphy	making an X-ray/technique of recording
-ia	condition of
-ic	pertaining to
-ischia	condition of reducing/holding back
-itis	inflammation of
-lithiasis	abnormal condition of stones
-logy	study of
-malacia	condition of softening
-meter	measuring instrument
-metry	process of measuring
-oma	tumour/swelling
-osis	abnormal condition/disease of
-ous	pertaining to/of the nature of
-pathia	condition of disease
-pathy	disease of
-pause	stopping
-pexy	surgical fixation/fix in place
-plasty	surgical repair/reconstruction
-poiesis	formation
-ptosis	falling/displacement/prolapse
-rrhagic	pertaining to bursting forth (of blood)
-rrhaphy	suturing/stitching
-rrhexis	breaking/rupturing
-rrhea (Am.)	excessive discharge/flow
-rrhoea	excessive discharge/flow
-sclerosis	abnormal condition of hardening
-scope	viewing instrument
-scopy	visual examination/technique of viewing
-staxis	dripping
-stenosis	abnormal condition of narrowing
-stomy	formation of an opening/an opening
-tic	pertaining to
-tome	cutting instrument
-tomy	incision into
-toxic	pertaining to poisoning
-trophin	hormone that stimulates/nourishes
-tropic	pertaining to stimulating/affinity for
-tubal	pertaining to a tube

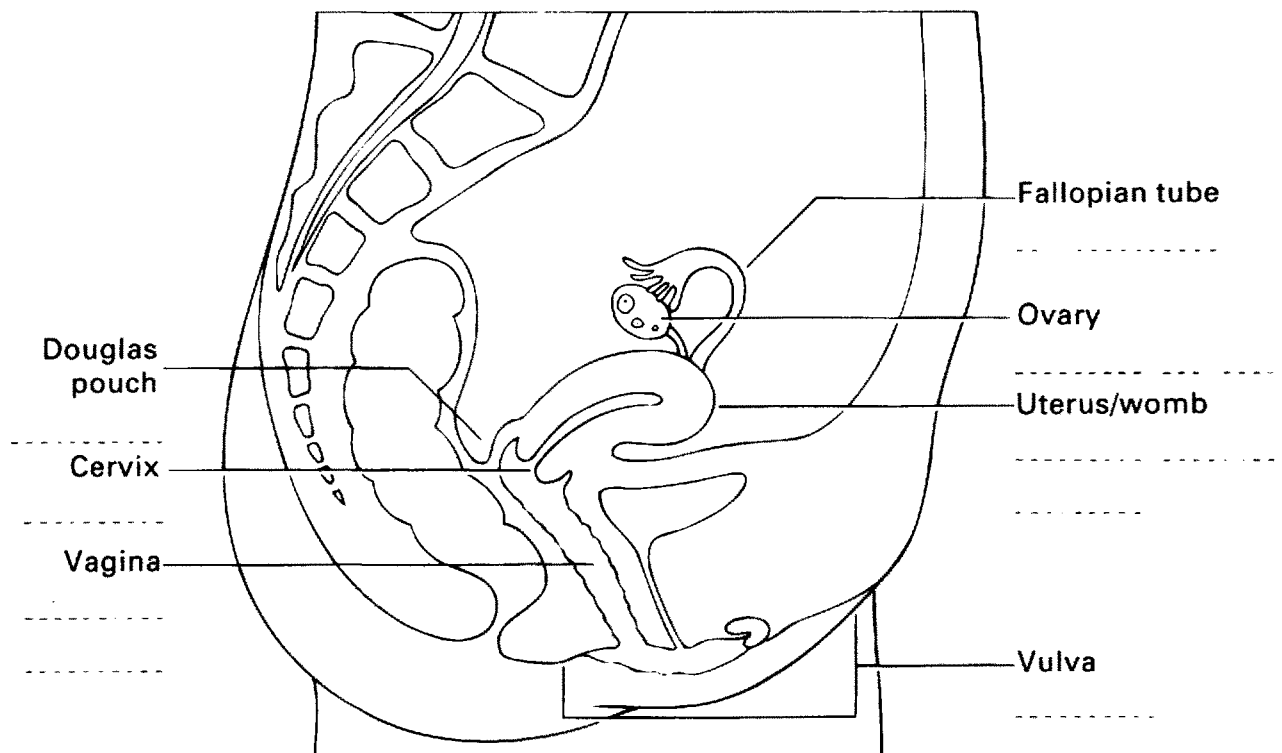


Figure 78 Section through female

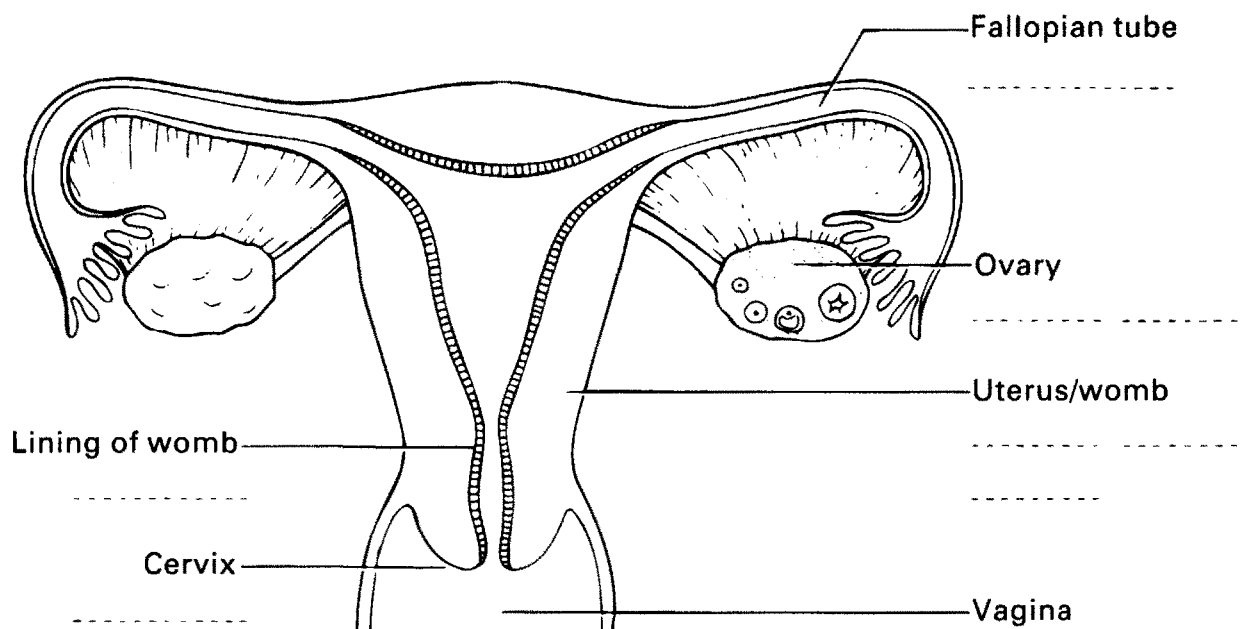


Figure 79 The female reproductive system



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–14, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figures 78 and 79 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line – more than one component may relate to the same position. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 206.)

Cervic/o

Colp/o

Culd/o

Endometr/i

Hyster/o

Metr/o

Oophor/o

Ovari/o

Salping/o

Uter/o

Vagin/o

Vulv/o

The female reproductive system

The female possesses paired reproductive organs known as ovaries; these are located in the upper pelvic cavity on either side of the uterus. The function of the ovaries is to produce reproductive cells known as ova (eggs). The ovaries pass through a regular ovarian cycle in which one egg is released (ovulation) every 28 days. The egg passes into the oviduct where it may be fertilized by sperms ejaculated into the female reproductive tract by the male. Should an egg be fertilized, it will divide and grow into a new individual after implanting into the uterus. If the egg is not fertilized, it will disintegrate and may pass out of the body at menstruation.

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–26 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Oo(From a Greek word **oon**, meaning egg.)Combining forms **Oo-**

WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **oo/blast**
- (b) **oo/cyte**
- (c) **oo/genesis**

Root

Oophor(From a Greek word **oophoron**, derived from **oion** – egg, **pherein** – to bear. We use it to mean ovary, the egg-bearing gland.)Combining forms **Oophor/o**

WORD EXERCISE 2

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) removal of an ovary
- (b) fixation of an ovary
- (c) incision of an ovary

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (d) **oophoro/cyst/ectomy**
(Cyst refers to an ovarian cyst, a bladder-like growth in the ovary.)
- (e) **oophoro/stomy**

Root

Ovari(From a New Latin word **ovarium**, meaning ovary, derived from **ova**, meaning egg.)Combining forms **Ovari/o**

WORD EXERCISE 3

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) removal of an ovary
(synonymous with oophorectomy)
- (b) incision into an ovary
(often used to mean the removal of an ovarian cyst)

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (c) **ovario/rrhexis**

- (d) **ovario**/tubal _____
(The tube refers to an oviduct.)

- (e) **ovario**/centesis _____

Approximately every 28 days an egg (or ovum) is released from one of the ovaries. This process is known as **ovulation**. Once released, the egg is picked up by the oviduct and it moves towards the uterus. An ovary that fails to release an egg is described as **anovular** (i.e. without eggs).

Root

Salping

(From Greek **salpingos**, meaning trumpet tube. Here it refers to the trumpet-shaped oviduct or Fallopian tube. This collects eggs ovulated from the ovary and passes them to the uterus.)

Combining forms **Salping/o**



WORD EXERCISE 4

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **salpingo**/-oophor/ectomy _____
(b) ovario/**salping**/ectomy _____
(c) **salpingo**/pexy _____

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (d) **salpingo**/cele _____
(e) **salpingo**/-oophor/itis _____

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (f) technique of making an X-ray of the oviduct
(follows an injection of opaque dye) _____
(g) abnormal condition of calcareous stones/deposits in oviduct _____
(h) surgical repair of the oviduct _____

Root

Uter

(From a Latin word **uterus**, meaning womb. Here it is used to mean the uterus, the chamber in which a fertilized egg grows into a fetus and baby.)

Combining forms **Uter/o**



WORD EXERCISE 5

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) condition of pain in the uterus _____
(b) hardening of the uterus _____

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) **utero**/tubal _____
(d) **utero**/salpingo/graphy _____

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (e) **utero**/vesic/al _____
(f) **utero**/rect/al _____
(g) **utero**/placent/al _____
(The placenta is a disc-shaped structure that attaches the fetus to the lining of the uterus.)

Benign tumours of dense fibrous tissue and muscle called **fibroids** are frequently found in the uterus. They are removed by **fibroid/ectomy** or **myom/ectomy**. (**Myom** is from *myoma*, meaning muscle tumour.)

Root

Hyster

(From Greek word **hystera**, meaning womb. Here it is used to mean the uterus.)

Combining forms **Hyster/o**



WORD EXERCISE 6

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) instrument to view the womb _____
(b) abnormal condition of falling/displaced womb
(also known as a prolapse) _____
(c) X-ray picture of the womb _____

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (d) **hystero**/salpingo/graphy _____

- (e) **hystero**/salpingo/stomy
- (f) **hystero**/salpingo/-oophor/ectomy

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (g) **hystero**/trachelo/rrhaphy
- (h) **hystero**/trachelo/tomy

Root

Metr

(From a Greek word **metra**, meaning womb. Here it is used to mean the uterus.)

Combining forms **Metr/ai/o**



WORD EXERCISE 7

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **metro**/staxis
- (b) **metro**/path/ia
haemo/rrhag/ic/a
(Am. metro/path/ia hemo/rrhag/ic/a)
- (c) **metro**/periton/itis
- (d) **metro**/phleb/itis
- (e) **metro**/cyst/osis
- (f) **metro**/ptosis

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (g) condition of narrowed womb
- (h) condition of softening of uterus

The endometrium (meaning part within the womb) refers to the lining of the mucosa of the uterus. The endometrium grows during the 28-day menstrual cycle and disintegrates when it ends, producing the menstrual flow.

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (i) endo/**metr**/itis
- (j) endo/**metri**/oma

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (k) endo/**metri**/osis
- (refers to the endometrial tissue in abnormal locations)

Root

Men

(From a Latin word **mensis**, meaning month. It refers to menstruation, that is, monthly bleeding from the womb. The bleeding arises from the disintegration of the endometrium.)

Combining forms **Men/o**



WORD EXERCISE 8

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **meno**/staxis

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (b) **men**/arche
- (c) **meno**/pause
- (d) a/**meno**/rrhoea
(Am. a/meno/rrhea)
- (e) dys/**meno**/rrhoea
(Am. dys/meno/rrhea)
- (f) oligo/**meno**/rrhoea
(Am. oligo/meno/rrhea)
- (g) pre/**menstru**/al

Hysteroscopy and biopsy

In this procedure, a narrow endoscope known as a **hysteroscope** is inserted through the cervix to examine the uterus. Modern hysteroscopes are thin telescopes that fit through the cervix with minimal or no dilatation. The standard 4mm hysteroscope gives a panoramic view of the cervical canal and uterine cavity and is suitable for most purposes. A diagnostic sheath around the main viewing telescope of the instrument allows saline or carbon dioxide to be pumped in,

thereby inflating the uterus and improving the field of view.

Hysteroscopy is a simple, inexpensive diagnostic technique used to investigate women with abnormal uterine bleeding. It has been particularly valuable in the investigation of post menopausal bleeding to exclude endometrial cancer. Once positioned, the hysteroscope is used to observe fibroids, polyps and adhesions, and to biopsy the endometrium (i.e. remove living suspicious tissue for examination). Benign polyps are usually removed and examined as they are difficult to differentiate from malignant lesions.

A more complex instrument the **microcolpohysteroscope** has different levels of magnification (1–150×) as well as diagnostic and operative sheaths. It can produce a panoramic view of the endocervix and uterine cavity or be used at close range to examine the cellular and vascular structure of the endometrium. During **operative hysteroscopy** various instruments including biopsy or grasping forceps, scissors, diathermy probes and laser fibres are passed into the body through the operative sheath. The surgeon controls the instruments whilst viewing the uterine cavity through the telescope component of the device.

Another instrument called a **resectoscope** used over many years for prostate and bladder surgery, has been modified for use as an operative hysteroscope. It has a built in wire loop that uses a high frequency electric current to cut and coagulate the tissues of the endometrium. The resectoscope is used for transcervical resection of the endometrium (TCRE), a technique of ablating (cutting away) the endometrium in women with dysfunctional uterine bleeding (menorrhagia). It can also remove small to medium submucous fibroids and provide biopsy specimens for histological analysis.

Flexible endoscopy using a 3–5 mm directional endoscope with an insufflating channel (to blow in gas or fluid) is also proving useful in hysteroscopy and salpingoscopy. The larger endoscopes also have a channel wide enough to accommodate surgical instruments.

Biopsy specimens removed by any of these instruments are sent to the pathology laboratory for processing and histological analysis. (The word biopsy is formed from *bio-* meaning life and *-opsy* meaning process of viewing. A biopsy is the removal and examination of tissue from a living body.)

Root

Cervic

(From a Latin word **cervix**, meaning the neck of the uterus, the cervix uteri.)

Combining forms **Cervic/o**



WORD EXERCISE 9

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) inflammation of the cervix
- (b) removal of the cervix

Adult women are advised to have periodic cervical smears. This procedure involves taking a sample of cells from the cervix and subjecting them to cytological examination (Pap test, named after cytologist G. Papanicolaou). Neoplastic cells can be removed in their early stages of growth, thereby preventing cervical cancer. The risk of developing cervical cancer is related to the number of sexual partners and is the result of transmission of a virus (HPV – human papilloma virus).

Root

Colp

(From a Greek word **colpos**, meaning hollow. It is now used to mean vagina, a hollow chamber that receives the penis during copulation and through which the baby will pass at birth.)

Combining forms **Colp/o**



WORD EXERCISE 10

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **colpo**/scopy
- (b) **colpo**/micro/scope
- (used in situ, i.e. to examine the vagina directly)

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (c) **colpo**/gram
- (d) **colpo**/perineo/rhaphy

The perineum is the region between the thighs bounded by the anus and vulva in the female. Perineotomy is used synonymously with episio/tomy (*episi* – meaning pubic region). This incision is made during the birth of a child when the vaginal orifice does not stretch sufficiently to allow an easy birth.

- (e) **colpo**/hyster/ectomy

- (f) metro/**colpo**/cele
- (g) cervico/**colp**/itis

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (h) surgical repair of the perineum and vagina
- (i) surgical fixation of the vagina

Root

Vagin

(From a Latin word **vagina**, meaning sheath. It refers to the vagina, the musculo-membranous passage extending from the cervix uteri to the vulva. Synonymous with *colpos*.)

Combining forms **Vagino/o**



WORD EXERCISE 11

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **vagino**/perineo/tomy
- (b) **vagino**/perineo/rrhaphy
- (c) **vagino**/vesic/al

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (d) abnormal condition of fungal infection of the vagina
- (e) disease of the vagina

Investigations of disorders of the vagina and cervix usually require the use of a vaginal speculum to hold the walls of the vagina apart. There are many types of vaginal specula, one of which is shown in Figure 80.

Two small glands situated on either side of the external orifice of the vagina are known as the **greater vestibular glands** or **Bartholin's glands** (after C. Bartholin, a Danish anatomist). They produce mucus to lubricate the vagina. Sometimes the glands become inflamed, a condition known as **bartholinitis**.

Root

Vulv

(From a Latin word **vulva**, meaning womb. It is used to mean vulva, pudendum femina or external genitalia.)

Combining forms **Vulv/o**

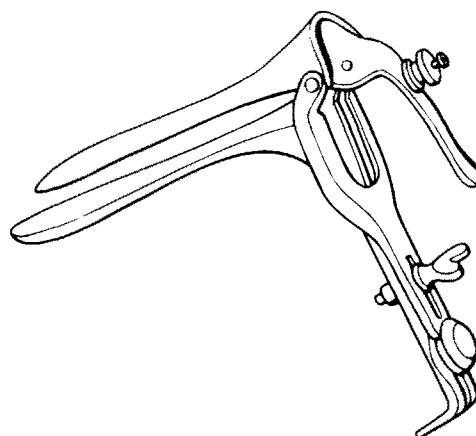


Figure 80 Vaginal speculum



WORD EXERCISE 12

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **vulvo**/vagin/itis
- (b) **vulvo**/vagino/plasty

Root

Culd

(From a French word **cul-de-sac**, meaning bottom of the bag or sack. Here it is used to mean the blindly ending Douglas cavity or rectouterine pouch, which lies above the posterior vaginal fornix.)

Combining forms **Culd/o**



WORD EXERCISE 13

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **culdo**/scope
- (This allows examination of the uterus, oviducts, ovaries and peritoneal cavity; Fig. 81)
- (b) **culdo**/scopy
- (c) **culdo**/centesis

Root

Gynaec

(From a Greek word **gyne**, meaning woman. Here it refers to the female reproductive system.)

Combining forms **Gynaec/o, Gynec/o**

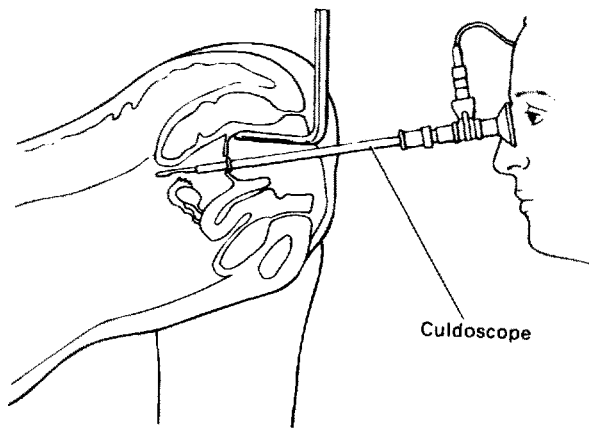


Figure 81 Culdoscopy



WORD EXERCISE 14

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **gynaeco**/logy
(Am. gyneco/logy; refers to diseases peculiar to women, i.e. of the female reproductive tract)
- (b) **gynaeco**/genic
(Am. gyneco/genic)



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 195.

Abbreviations

You should learn common abbreviations related to the female reproductive system. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

CACX	cancer of the cervix
DUB	dysfunctional uterine bleeding
Gyn	gynaecology (Am. gynecology)
in utero	within the uterus
IUCD	intrauterine contraceptive device

Abbreviations (Contd.)

IUFB	intrauterine foreign body
LMP	last menstrual period
Pap	Papanicolaou smear test
PMB	post-menopausal bleeding
PMS	premenstrual syndrome
PV	per vagina
VE	vaginal examination

Terms relating to pregnancy, birth and lactation

After approximately 9 months (**the period of gestation**) a baby is expelled from the mother's body by muscular contractions of the uterus. The onset of uterine contractions is termed labour (or **parturition**). The period immediately following birth is known as the **puerperium**, in which time the reproductive organs tend to revert to their original state. The terms **antepartum** and **postpartum** are also used to indicate the periods before and after birth. **Ante** is usually used to mean up to 3 months before birth.

Occasionally, fertilized eggs grow outside the uterus (extrauterine development). When these implant and grow they are known as **ectopic** pregnancies. The most common ectopic site is the Fallopian tube; rupture of this by a pregnancy constitutes a surgical emergency.

The successful entry of a sperm into an egg at fertilization is known as **conception** and it is this event that creates a new individual. The fertilized egg then divides and forms into a ball of cells (the **blastocyst**) that must implant into the lining (endometrium) of the uterus to complete its development. **Pregnancy** begins when implantation is complete.

Following implantation, a structure known as the **placenta** (from Latin meaning cake) forms. This is a vascular structure, developed about the third month of pregnancy and attached to the wall of the uterus. Through the placenta the fetus is supplied with oxygen and nutrients and wastes are removed. The placenta is expelled as the afterbirth, usually within 1 hour of birth.

Root

Gravida

(A Latin word meaning heavy or pregnant. It is used to describe a woman in relation to her pregnancies. e.g. first pregnancy.)

Combining forms **-gravida**



WORD EXERCISE 15

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) primi/**gravid**a
(gravida I)
- (b) secundi/**gravid**a
(gravida II)
- (c) multi/**gravid**a
(more than twice)
- (d) nulli/**gravid**a

Root

Para

(From a Latin word **parere**, meaning to bear/bring forth. It is used to refer to a woman and the number of her previous pregnancies.)

Combining forms **-para**



WORD EXERCISE 16

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) primi/**para**
(Primi/para can be used synonymously with uni/para (*uni* – one).)
- (b) secundi/**para**
- (c) multi/**para**
- (d) nulli/**para**

Another word that refers to pregnancy is **cyesis** (from Greek *kyesis*, meaning conception). **Pseudocyesis** refers to a false pregnancy, i.e. signs and symptoms of early pregnancy, a result of an overwhelming desire to have a child.

Root

Fet

(From a Latin word **fetus**, i.e. an unborn baby. A human embryo becomes a fetus 8 weeks after fertilization, i.e. when the organ systems have been laid down.)

Combining forms **Fet/o**

Note. Foetus is an alternative spelling of fetus. Once the usual spelling in British English, it is becoming less common.



WORD EXERCISE 17

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **feto**/logy
- (b) **feto**/scope
- (c) **feto**/placent/al

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (d) pertaining to poisoning of the fetus
- (e) measurement of the fetus

The part of the fetus that lies in the lower part of the uterus is known as the presenting part. In a normal birth the vertex of the skull forms the presenting part and it enters the birth canal first. If other parts enter first, e.g. the buttocks, they are known as **malpresentations**.

Various manoeuvres can be made to turn or change the position of the fetus in the uterus. The term **version** (from Latin *vertere*, meaning to turn) is used for these manoeuvres. Many types have been described, e.g.:

Cephalic version

changes the position of the fetus from breech (buttocks first) to cephalic (head first) towards the birth canal.

External version

changes the position of the fetus by manipulation through the abdominal wall.

Internal version

changes the position of the fetus by hand within the uterus.

Root

Amni

(From a Greek word **amnia**, meaning the bowl in which blood was caught. It is now used to mean the amnion, the fetal membrane that retains the amniotic fluid surrounding a developing fetus.)

Combining forms **Amni/o**



WORD EXERCISE 18

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(a) **amnio**/tome

(b) **feto**/**amnio**/tic

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

(c) technique of cutting the amnion

(d) an instrument to visually examine the amnion (see Fig. 82)

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(e) **amnio**/graphy

(f) **amnio**/gram

(g) **amnio**/centesis

Figure 82 shows the developing amnion and Figure 83 the position of the needle used to withdraw amniotic fluid during amniocentesis.

This procedure is used to remove amniotic fluid for analysis, to inject solutions that will induce abortion or infuse dyes for radiographic studies. Various fetal abnormalities can be detected by analysing the amniotic fluid, e.g. spina bifida. In this condition the vertebral arches fail to surround the spinal cord, exposing the cord and meninges which may protrude through the defective vertebrae. The disorder can be detected before birth by the presence of increased levels of alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) in the amniotic fluid. AFP is also raised when the fetus is anencephalic.

Genetic disorders can also be identified by analysing the chromosomes present in cells sloughed off the developing fetus into the amniotic fluid, e.g. Down's

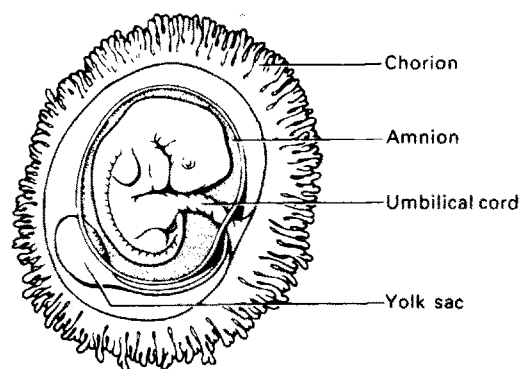


Figure 82 Amnion and related structures (showing 5-week embryo)

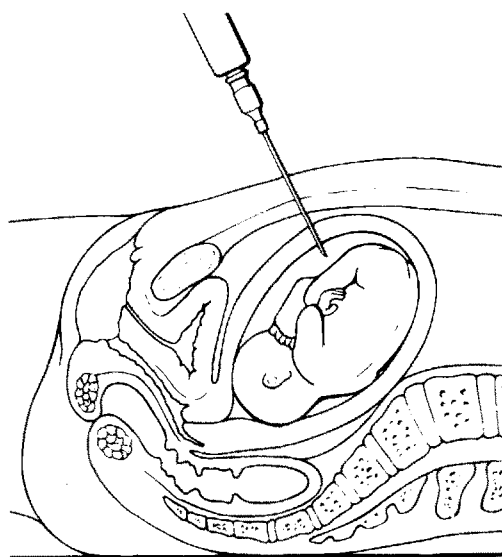


Figure 83 Amniocentesis (performed at 15 weeks)

syndrome (mongolism). In this condition 47 chromosomes are present instead of the normal 46. Parents can use the information from amniocentesis to decide to continue a pregnancy or abort a defective fetus.

The outermost of the fetal membranes is known as the **chorion** (from Greek, meaning afterbirth/outer membrane). It develops extensions, known as villi, that become part of the placenta. The combining form **chori/o** is used to mean chorion (see Fig. 82).

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(h) **chorio**/**amnion**/ic

(i) **chorio**/**amnion**/itis

Root

Obstetric

(From a Latin word **obstetrix**, meaning midwife.)

Combining forms **Obstetr/ic-**

Obstetric- is mainly used in:

Obstetrics

The science dealing with the care of the pregnant woman during all stages of pregnancy and the period following birth.

Obstetrician

A person who specializes in obstetrics (-ician meaning person associated with ...). Often doctors specialize in obstetrics and gynaecology.

Obstetrical forceps

Large forceps consisting of two flat blades connected to a handle. They are used to pull on a fetal head or rotate it to facilitate vaginal delivery (Figs 84 and 85) (-ical means pertaining to).

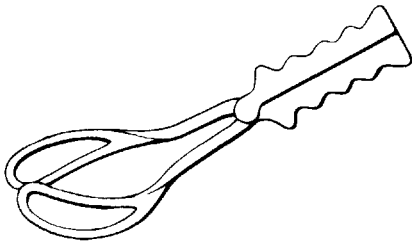


Figure 84 Obstetrical forceps

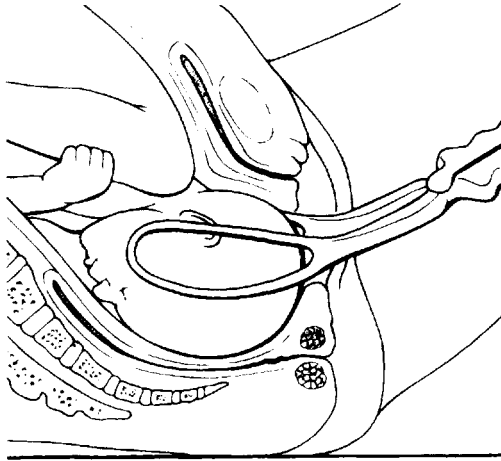


Figure 85 Obstetrical forceps in use

Another device used by obstetricians to assist delivery is the **vacuum extractor**. This suction device is attached to the head as it presents through the birth canal and is used to pull the baby out.

Root

Placent

(From a Latin word **plakoenta**, meaning a flat cake. Here it is used to mean placenta).

Combining forms **Placent/o**



WORD EXERCISE 19

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- technique of making an X-ray of the placenta
- any disease of the placenta

Many abnormalities of the placenta have been noted. Two common disorders are:

Adherent placenta

This placenta is fused to the uterine wall so that separation is slow and delivery of the placenta is delayed. When the placenta is not expelled it is known as a retained placenta.

Placenta praevia (Am. placenta previa)

This placenta forms abnormally in the lower part of the uterus over the internal opening of the cervix. The condition gives rise to haemorrhage (Am. hemorrhage) during pregnancy and threatens the life of the fetus.

Root

Toc

(From a Greek word **tokos**, meaning birth/labour.)

Combining forms **Toc/o, tok/o**



WORD EXERCISE 20

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- dys/**toc**/ia
- toco**/logy
(synonymous with obstetrics)

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- eu/**toc**/ia

Labour can be monitored by recording uterine contractions using a device called a **tocograph**; the procedure is known as **tocography**. When the fetal heart is monitored with the uterine contractions during delivery, it is known as **cardiotocography**.

If labour is late or slow, the uterus can be induced to produce forcible contractions by the administration of **oxytocin**, a hormone that is produced naturally by the pituitary gland. Various compounds with oxytocin-like activity are available for this purpose.

The 6–8 weeks following birth is known as the **puerperium** (from Latin *puerperus*, meaning child-bearing). This is the time when the reproductive system involutes (reverts) to its state before pregnancy. Puerperal sepsis is a serious infection of the genital tract occurring within 21 days of abortion or childbirth.

Other problems can arise following birth, e.g.:

Postpartum haemorrhage

(Am. postpartum hemorrhage) excessive bleeding from birth canal.

Eclampsia

sudden convulsion due to toxemia of pregnancy. The signs of pre-eclampsia in pregnancy include albuminuria, hypertension and oedema.

Root

Nat

(From a Latin word **natalis**, meaning birth.)

Combining forms **Nat/o**



WORD EXERCISE 21

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) neo/**nat**/al
 (b) ante/**nat**/al
 (c) peri/**nat**/al

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (d) pre/**nat**/al
 (e) neo/**nato**/logy
 (A neonate is a newborn baby up to 1 month old.)

Root

Mamm

(From a Latin word **mamma**, meaning breast. It refers to the mammary glands (breasts) that secrete milk during lactation following birth.)

Combining forms **Mamm/o**



WORD EXERCISE 22

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **mammo**/graphy
 (b) **mammo**/plasty
 (sometimes performed to increase or decrease the size of breasts)

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (c) **mammo**/tropic

Root

Mast

(From a Greek word **mastos**, meaning breast.)

Combining forms **Mast/o**



WORD EXERCISE 23

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) technique of making X-ray of breast
 (b) surgical repair of breast
 (c) removal of breast

There are two forms of this operation:

- Simple mastectomy – removal of the breast and overlying skin
- Radical mastectomy – removal of the breast, overlying skin, underlying muscle and lymphatic tissue.

Some patients opt for the removal of a breast cancer (mastadenoma) by a simpler procedure known as a lumpectomy. In this just the mass of abnormal cells is removed.

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (d) **gynaeco**/mast/ia
 (Am. gyneco/mast/ia; seen in males)

Root

Lact

(From a Latin word **lactis**, meaning milk.)

Combining forms **Lact/i/o**



WORD EXERCISE 24

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **lact**/agogue
 (b) **lacti**/fer/ous
 (c) **lacto**/meter
 (for specific gravity)
 (d) **lacto**/trophin
 (a hormone synonymous with prolactin)
 (e) pro/**lactin**
 (hormone acts on breasts)
 (f) **lacti**/fuge

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(g) **lacto**/genic

Root

Galact

(From a Greek word **galaktos**, meaning milk.)

Combining forms **Galact/o**



WORD EXERCISE 25

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

(a) **galact**/agogue

(b) **galacto**/rrhoea ..
(Am. galacto/rrhea; an abnormal condition)

(c) **galact**/ischia

(d) **galacto**/poiesis

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

Revise the names of all instruments and procedures introduced in this unit before completing Exercise 26.



WORD EXERCISE 26

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) vaginal speculum	1. technique of recording uterine contractions
(b) colposcope	2. instrument used to view the uterus
(c) Pap test	3. technique of examining peritoneal cavity via vaginal fornix and rectouterine pouch
(d) culdoscopy	4. instrument used to cut amnion

Column A	Column B	Column C
(e) fetoscope	5. instrument used to view the vagina and cervix
(f) hysteroscope	6. instrument used to measure the specific gravity of milk
(g) amniotome	7. technique of examining cells from a cervical smear
(h) lactometer	8. instrument to assist passage of a baby through the birth canal
(i) obstetrical forceps	9. instrument to hold walls of the vagina apart
(j) tocography	10. instrument inserted into amniotic cavity to visually examine a fetus



CASE HISTORY 16

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on pregnancy associated hypertension; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Pregnancy associated hypertension

Mrs P, a **primigravida** aged 25, presented to her GP with 12 weeks of **amenorrhoea** (Am. amenorrhea); examination confirmed the dates of **gestation**. Her **BP** was at 120/80, her urine was sterile and showed no protein on **dipstick testing**.

Mrs P's pregnancy progressed normally until 35 weeks of gestation when her BP rose to 150/95 mm Hg. She was admitted to the **Obs-Gyn** Unit for rest and observation. Serial **ultrasound cephalometry** was commenced and twice weekly 24 hour urine collection for **oestrogen** excretion estimation.

In addition, daily fetal **cardiotocography** was performed. All these tests were normal and her BP fell to 124/80 within 2 days of admission. After 5 days she was allowed home with instructions to rest and was seen weekly at **antenatal** clinic.

Antenatal investigations continued to be normal with evidence of good fetal growth until 3 days before term

when her blood pressure increased to 155/95 and her urine was protein ++. Over the next 24 hours her blood pressure was maintained and she had proteinuria of 3g/24 hours. Vaginal examination showed a long cervix that was not dilated.

Mrs P had developed pregnancy associated hypertension or pre-eclamptic toxæmia, increasing the risk of perinatal mortality. The **obstetrician** considered performing a lower section Caesarean section (LSCS) since the risk becomes minimal after 24 hours of **puerperium**. Instead, the decision was taken to induce labour. Her cervix was dilated with a catheter left in place for 24 hours and partially ripened by local application of prostaglandin. Labour was induced by artificial rupture of the **amniotic** membranes and an infusion of oxytocin. After 8 hours she gave birth to a healthy male and her recovery was uneventful.

WORD HELP

BP blood pressure

dipstick testing tests using paper sticks coated with indicators that change colour when protein is present

gestation period of pregnancy

GP general practitioner (family doctor)

hypertension high blood pressure

mortality death rate

Obs-Gyn obstetrics and gynaecology (Am. gynecology)

oestrogen female sex hormone

oxytocin hormone that stimulates uterine contractions (to induce birth)

pre-eclamptic condition before or leading to eclampsia, (due to toxæmia (Am. toxemia))

prostaglandin agent that stimulates uterine contractions

proteinuria condition of protein in the urine

toxæmia the word means condition of poisoned blood, but refers to the toxic effects of eclampsia: high blood pressure, proteinuria etc. There is a risk of convulsion and toxic effects on the baby

ultrasound cephalometry using ultrasound images to measure the size of the head

(f) obstetrician

(g) puerperium

(h) amniotic

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the female reproductive system:

Amni/o	amnion
Bartholin/o	greater vestibular glands/ Bartholin's glands of the vagina
Cervic/o	cervix
Chori/o	chorion/outer fetal membrane
Colp/o	vagina
Culd/o	Douglas cavity/ rectouterine pouch
Endometr/i	endometrium/lining of womb/uterus
Fet/o (Am.)	fetus
Galact/o	milk
-gravida	pregnancy/pregnant woman
Gynaec/o	female
Gynec/o (Am.)	female
Hyster/o	uterus
Lact/o/i	milk
Mamm/o	breast
Mast/o	breast
Men/o	menses/menstruation/ monthly flow
Metr/o	uterus/womb
Nat/o	birth
Obstetric	pertaining to midwifery
Oo-	egg
Oophor/o	ovary
Ovari/o	ovary
-para	to bear/bring forth offspring
Perine/o	perineum
Placent/o	placenta
Salping/o	Fallopian tube
Toc/o	labour/birth
Trachel/o	neck
Uter/o	uterus
Vagin/o	vagina
Vulv/o	vulva

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

(a) primigravida

(b) amenorrhoea
(Am. amenorrhea)

(c) cardiotocography

(d) antenatal

(e) perinatal

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to obstetrics are listed below. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

AB, ab, abor	abortion
AFP	alpha-fetoprotein
APH	antepartum haemorrhage (Am. hemorrhage)
BBA	born before arrival
C-Sect	caesarean section (Am. cesarean)
FDIU	fetal death in utero
GI and GII	gravida I and gravida II
IUD	intrauterine death
LCCS	low cervical caesarean section (Am. cesarean)
LGA	large for gestational age
NFTD	normal full-term delivery
Obs-Gyn	obstetrics and gynaecology (Am. gynecology)

NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

a-	
ante-	
dys-	
endo-	
eu-	
extra-	
micro-	
multi-	

neo-	
nulli-	
oligo-	
peri-	
post-	
pre-	
primi-	
pro-	
pseudo-	
secundi-	

Combining forms of word roots

amni/o	
bartholin/o	
cardi/o	
cervic/o	
chori/o	
colp/o	
culd/o	
cyst/o	
cyt/o	
fer/o	
fet/o	
fibr/o	
galact/o	
gravida	
gynaec/o (Am. gynec/o)	
haem/o (Am. hem/o)	
hyster/o	
lact/o	
mamm/o	

mast/o

men/o

metr/o

myc/o

nat/o

obstetric-

oo-

oophor/o

ovari/o

-para

perine/o

peritone/o

phleb/o

placent/o

rect/o

salping/o

sten/o

toc/o

trachel/o

uter/o

vagin/o

vesic/o

vulv/o

Suffixes

-a

-agogue

-al

-algia

-arche

-blast

-cele

-centesis

-dynia

-ectomy

-fuge

-genesis

-genic

-gram

-graphy

-ia

-ic

-ischia

-itis

-lithiasis

-logy

-malacia

-meter

-metry

-natal

-osis

-ous

-pathia

-pathy

-pause

-pexy

-plasty

-poiesis

-ptosis

-rrhagic

-rrhaphy

-rrhexis

-rrhoea
(Am. -rrhea)

- sclerosis
- scope
- scopy
- staxis
- stenosis
- stomy
- tome
- tomy
- toxic
- trophic
- tropic
- tubal

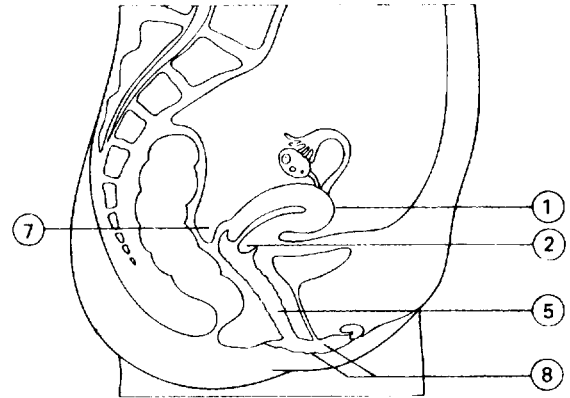


Figure 86 Section through female

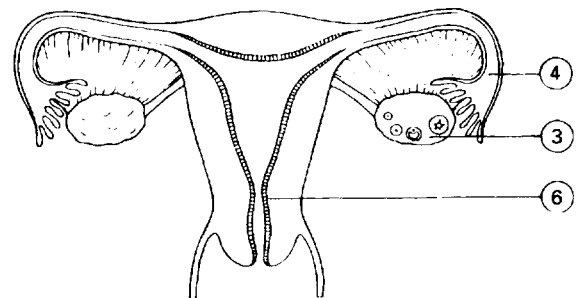


Figure 87 The female reproductive system

> NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT <



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 16A

Below are some combining forms that refer to the anatomy of the female reproductive system. Indicate which part of the system they refer to by putting a number from the diagrams (Figs 86 and 87) next to each word.

- (a) oophor/o
- (b) salping/o
- (c) hyster/o
- (d) endometr/o
- (e) cervic/o
- (f) colp/o
- (g) vulv/o
- (h) culd/o

Score

8

Test 16B

Prefixes and suffixes

Match each prefix and suffix in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) -agogue		1. to drip (blood)
(b) ante-		2. pertaining to birth
(c) eu-		3. stop/pause
(d) -ischia		4. new
(e) multi-		5. stimulate/induce
(f) -natal		6. after
(g) neo-		7. few/little
(h) nulli-		8. condition of bursting forth (of blood)

Column A	Column B	Column C	Column A	Column B	Column C
(i) oligo-	_____	9. pertaining to tube/ oviduct	(e) gynaec/o (Am.ynec/o)	_____	5. birth
(j) -ous	_____	10. before (i)	(f) hyster/o	_____	6. vulva (external genitalia)
(k) -pause	_____	11. before (ii)	(g) lact/o	_____	7. placenta
(l) -pexy	_____	12. good	(h) mamm/o	_____	8. pregnant heavy/ pregnant woman
(m) post-	_____	13. fixation by surgery	(i) mast/o	_____	9. perineum/area between anus and vulva
(n) pre-	_____	14. pertaining to stimulating	(j) men/o	_____	10. pertaining to midwifery and childbirth
(o) primi-	_____	15. pertaining to	(k) metr/o	_____	11. to bear/bring forth baby
(p) -rrhagia	_____	16. second	(l) nat/o	_____	12. uterus (i)
(q) secundi-	_____	17. none	(m) obstetric-	_____	13. uterus (ii)
(r) -staxis	_____	18. first	(n) oo-	_____	14. uterus (iii)
(s) -tropic	_____	19. condition of blocking/holding back	(o) oophor/o	_____	15. neck (of womb)
(t) -tubal	_____	20. many	(p) ovari/o	_____	16. Douglas pouch/ rectouterine cavity
Score			(q) -para	_____	17. vagina (i)
20			(r) perine/o	_____	18. vagina (ii)
			(s) placent/o	_____	19. egg
			(t) salping/o	_____	20. ovary (i)
			(u) trachel/o	_____	21. ovary (ii)
			(v) uter/o	_____	22. cervix uteri
			(w) vagin/o	_____	23. Fallopian tube
			(x) vesic/o	_____	24. milk
			(y) vulv/o	_____	25. bladder

Score**25**

Test 16C

Combining forms of word roots

Match each combining form in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) cervic/o	_____	1. woman
(b) colp/o	_____	2. breast (i)
(c) culd/o	_____	3. breast (ii)
(d) gravida	_____	4. menstruation/ monthly

Test 16D

Write the meaning of:

- (a) tocometer
- (b) oophorohysterectomy
- (c) mastopexy
- (d) hysterorrhexis
- (e) metropathy

Score

5

Test 16E

Build words that mean:

- (a) surgical repair of the Douglas pouch/rectouterine pouch
- (b) formation of an opening into a Fallopian tube
- (c) rupture of the amnion
- (d) displacement/prolapse of the vagina (use colp/o)
- (e) study of cells of the vagina (use colp/o)

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

This page intentionally left blank

The endocrine system

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 17 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the endocrine system
- build medical words relating to the endocrine system
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to the endocrine system.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

acro-	extremities/point
hyper-	above normal/excessive
hypo-	below normal/deficient
para-	beside/near

Roots/Combining forms

aden/o	gland
blast/o	germ cell/cell that forms ...

chondr/o	cartilage
gloss/o	tongue
-gyne	woman
kal/i	potassium
natr/i	sodium

Suffixes

-aemia	condition of blood
-al	pertaining to
-ectomy	removal of
-emia (Am.)	condition of blood
-genesis	formation of
-genic	pertaining to formation/originating in
-globulin	protein
-ia	condition of
-ic	pertaining to
-ism	process of/state or condition
-itis	inflammation of
-megaly	enlargement
-micria	condition of small size
-oma	tumour/swelling
-osis	abnormal condition/disease of
-plasia	condition of growth/formation of (cells)
-ptosis	falling/displacement/prolapse
-static	pertaining to stopping/controlling
-tomy	incision into
-toxic	pertaining to poisoning
-trophic	pertaining to nourishment
-tropic	pertaining to affinity for/stimulating
-uresis	excrete in urine/urinate
-uria	condition of urine

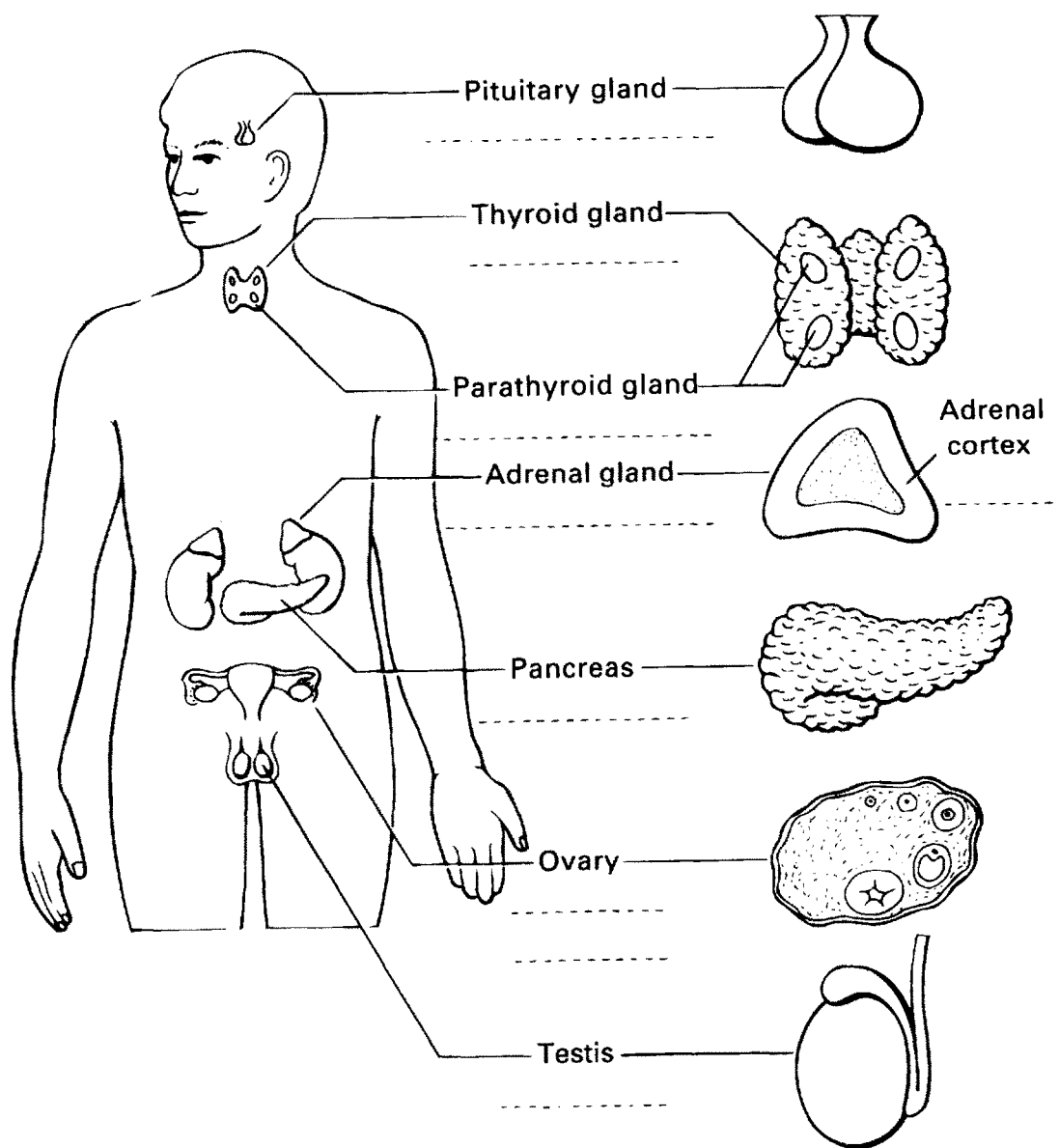


Figure 88 The endocrine system



ANATOMY EXERCISE

When you have finished Word Exercises 1–6, look at the word components listed below. Complete Figure 88 by writing the appropriate combining form on each dotted line – more than one component may relate to the same position. (You can check their meanings in the Quick Reference box on p. 220.)

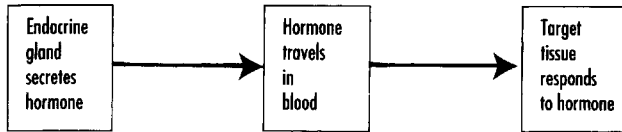
Adren/o
Adrenocortic/o
Hypophys-
Oophor/o

Orchid/o
Ovari/o
Pancreat/o

Parathyroid/o
Pituitar-
Thyr/o

The endocrine system

The endocrine system is composed of a diverse group of glands that secrete hormones directly into the bloodstream. Once released, hormones travel in the blood to all parts of the body. Low concentrations of hormones in the blood stimulate specific target tissues and exert a regulatory effect on their cellular processes.



The concentration of hormones that circulate in the blood is precisely regulated by the brain and the endocrine glands. Many endocrine disorders are brought about by changes in the output of hormones. Abnormal levels of hormones produce symptoms that range from minor to severely disabling disease and death.

In this unit we will examine terms associated with each endocrine gland.

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–6 unless you are asked to work without it.

The pituitary gland

Root

Pituitar

(From a Latin word **pituita**, meaning *slime/phlegm*. It refers to the pituitary, a small gland that grows from the base of the brain on a stalk. It is commonly called the 'master' gland of the endocrine system because it releases tropic hormones that regulate other endocrine glands.)

Combining forms **-pituitar-**
(**-pituitarism** is used when referring to the process of pituitary secretion.)



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) hypo/**pituitar**/ism
- (b) hyper/**pituitar**/ism

One of the hormones produced by the pituitary gland is somatotrophin or human growth hormone (HGH). Underproduction of this results in **acromicria** and **dwarfism**. Overproduction of growth hormone produces **acromegaly** and **giantism**.

(c) acro/**micria**

(d) acro/**megaly**

Once it was realized that the pituitary gland is not the source of spit and phlegm, scientists renamed the gland the **hypophysis** (*hypo* – below, *physis* – growth, i.e. growth below the brain). Pituitary and hypophysis are now used synonymously. The hypophysis consists of a down-growth from the brain, known as the neurohypophysis, and attached to it a glandular part, known as the adenohypophysis.

Removal of the hypophysis is known as **hypophysectomy**.

The thyroid gland

Root

Thyr

(From a Greek word **thyreoidos**, meaning *resembling a shield*. It refers to the shield-shaped thyroid gland that lies above the trachea. It secretes the thyroid hormones tri-iodothyronine, T_3 and thyroxine, T_4 , which control the metabolic rate of all cells.)

Combining forms **Thyro/o**, **-thyroid-**



WORD EXERCISE 2

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **thyro**/gloss/al
- (b) **thyro**/aden/itis
- (c) **thyro**/globulin
- (d) **thyro**/chondro/tomy
- (e) **thyro**/toxic/osis
(Graves' disease, generally replaced by the term hyper/thyroid/ism)

A symptom of this disorder is **exophthalmos**, protruding eyes. The extent of this can be measured using a technique known as **exophthalmometry**.

- (f) **parathyroid**
(This refers to endocrine glands called the parathyroids that lie beside the thyroid gland. The parathyroids consists of four small glands that secrete parathyroid hormone.)
- (g) **parathyroid**/ectomy

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (h) hyper/**parathyroid**/ism
 (leads to excess calcium in blood, hyper/calc/aemia; Am. hyper/calc/emia)
- (i) **thyro**/megaly

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (j) process of secreting above normal levels of thyroid hormone
- (k) process of secreting below normal levels of thyroid hormone

In infants this results in poor growth and mental retardation and is known as **congenital hypothyroidism** (formerly cretinism). In adults the condition is known as **hypothyroidism** (also myxoedema (Am. myxedema) a term that refers to the accumulation of mucopolysaccharides under the skin). It gives rise to 'puffy' swollen skin, dry hair, weight gain, bradycardia, sensitivity to cold and lethargy.

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (l) downward displacement of the thyroid
- (m) pertaining to affinity for the thyroid gland
- (n) pertaining to originating in the thyroid gland

Any enlargement of the thyroid gland is also known as a **goitre** and it is a feature of many thyroid diseases. Goitres have been grouped in different ways and a simple classification is shown here:

Simple

Goitres that are not producing the signs and symptoms of hyperthyroidism.

Toxic

Goitres that are producing the signs and symptoms of hyperthyroidism. Also known as hyperthyroiditis, exophthalmic goitre and Graves' disease).

Malignant

Goitres that are the seat of new, malignant growth (carcinomas of the thyroid).

Thyroid goitres are investigated by the administration of radioactive iodine. The iodine is taken up by the thyroid gland which becomes slightly radioactive. The

presence of radioactivity in the gland is detected with a scanner that outlines the gland and generates an image. We will look at this in more detail in Unit 18.

The pancreas

We have already examined the role of the pancreas in digestion in Unit 2; here we examine its role as an endocrine gland. Among the cells in the pancreas that produce digestive enzymes, are small patches of tissue called the **Islets of Langerhans**. The Islets secrete the hormones **insulin** and **glucagon** directly into the blood. These play a major role in the regulation of blood glucose concentration.

Root

Pancreat

(Derived from Greek **pankreas**, **pan** – all, **kreas** – flesh. Here it is used to mean the pancreas.)

Combining forms **Pancreat/o**



WORD EXERCISE 3

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **pancreato**/tropic
 (Some of the pituitary hormones have such an action.)

Insulin (named after Latin *insula*, meaning island) is secreted by the Islets of Langerhans. Once in the bloodstream, it stimulates the uptake of sugar by tissue cells. Its overall effect is to lower blood sugar levels in the body following the intake of glucose in the diet. The combining forms derived from this are **insulin/o** (meaning insulin or Islets of Langerhans).

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (b) **insulino**/genesis
- (c) **insulin**/oma
- Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:
- (d) **insulin**/itis
- (e) hyper/**insulin**/ism

If the body fails to produce insulin, blood sugar levels rise and glucose appears in the urine; this abnormal condition is known as **diabetes mellitus**. The name diabetes is derived from two Greek words, one meaning a siphon and the other meaning to pass through. The

name reflects the most obvious symptoms; excessive thirst (**polydipsia**) followed by drinking and excessive urination (**polyuria**), just like the passing of water through a siphon. The second name mellitus is a Latin word meaning honey/sugar. Diabetes mellitus therefore refers to the passing of large quantities of water containing sugar through the body.

(**Polydipsia** is formed from *poly* – meaning too much, *dips/o* – thirst and *-ia* condition of).

There are two main types of diabetes mellitus:

Type 1

early onset diabetes, seen in young subjects, due to hereditary factors and/or autoimmune disease. It is also known as insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM). These patients require insulin injections to remain alive.

Type 2

late onset diabetes mellitus. This is also known as non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (NIDDM). Dietary factors are involved and it can be controlled by a change in diet and/or drugs that lower blood sugar levels.

Complications of diabetes mellitus include a tendency to develop cataracts, retinopathy and neuropathy. It is diagnosed by blood glucose estimation and glucose tolerance tests. The latter test involves administering a known quantity of glucose and measuring the amounts that appear in the blood and urine in a set time.

Below are terms that can be used to describe sugar levels in blood and urine. The combining form **glyc/o** is used to mean sugar (from Greek *glykys*, meaning sweet).

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (f) hypo/**glyc**/aemia
(Am. hypo/**glyc**/emia)
- (g) hyper/**glyc**/aemia
(Am. hyper/**glyc**/emia)
- (h) **glycos**/uria
(Patients can estimate the state of their own blood sugar level from the amount present in their urine. Glucose oxidase papers are used to test for glucose in the urine; they change colour in the presence of glucose.)
- (i) **glyco**/static

Untreated diabetes results in the tissue cells using fatty acids as a source of energy instead of sugar. This leads to the release of chemicals known as ketones into the blood and urine. Ketones such as acetone have a toxic effect on the body that is known as **ketosis**. The ketones are strong acids and their accumulation causes a

progressive increase in the acidity of the blood called **ketoacidosis**; this may be fatal in uncontrolled diabetes.

The adrenal gland

Root

Adren

(From Latin **ad** – to/near, **renes** – kidneys. It refers to the adrenal gland, a small triangle-shaped gland that lies above each kidney. The inner part of the gland called the medulla, secretes adrenalin, the outer part called the cortex, secretes steroid hormones.)

Combining forms **Adren/o**



WORD EXERCISE 4

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (a) enlarged adrenal gland
- (b) pertaining to poisonous
to the adrenal
- (c) pertaining to stimulating/
acting on the adrenal

The adrenal cortex forms the outer layer of the adrenal gland; it produces a variety of steroid hormones (**steroidogenesis**). There are three main types:

Androgens

types of male sex hormone.

Glucocorticoids

hormones that control glucose, protein and lipid metabolism.

Mineralocorticoids

hormones that regulate fluid and electrolyte balance.

Aldosterone is an example of a mineralocorticoid. It enables the body to retain sodium and excrete potassium. Abnormal aldosterone production results in the disturbances of sodium and potassium levels named in (d), (e) and (f) below.

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (d) hyper/**natr**/aemia
(Am. hyper/**natr**/emia)
- (e) hypo/**kal**/aemia
(Am. hypo/**kal**/emia)

(f) natri/uresis

The combining form **adrenocortic/o** is used when referring to the adrenal cortex itself. Corticosteroid refers to the steroid hormones of the adrenal cortex.

(g) **adrenocortico/trophic**
(Some of the hormones of the pituitary have this effect.)

(h) **adrenocortico/hyper/plasia**

Major disorders of hormone production by the adrenal cortex include:

Hyperfunction

Cushing's syndrome

A condition, in which over-production of adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) by the pituitary stimulates the adrenal cortex to release steroid hormones; these raise blood pressure, increase sodium retention and bring about hyperglycaemia (Am. hyperglycemia).

Adrenogenital syndrome

A condition in which over-production of male sex hormones leads to virilization (masculinization) in women and precocity (premature sexual maturity) in boys.

Hypofunction

Addison's disease

A condition due to the failure of the adrenal cortex to produce sufficient glucocorticoids and mineralocorticoids. It results in loss of sodium and water, and a fall in blood pressure. Patients will die within 4–14 days unless given specific hormone replacement therapy.

The ovary and testis

The ovary and the testis are endocrine organs as well as reproductive organs. In their endocrine role they produce sex hormones that function to control the development of the reproductive system and maintain its activity. Note that we have already used the combining forms for the ovary (oophor/o and ovari/o) and testis (orchid/o).

First, let's examine the endocrine role of the testis. This gland secretes male sex hormones called **androgens** that stimulate the development of the male reproductive tract and secondary sexual characteristics such as beard growth, a deep voice and the male physique. The main androgen produced by the testis is **testosterone**; it is also produced in small quantities by the adrenal cortex of both men and women. In women excess secretion leads to masculinization, one obvious effect being the growth of facial hair (hirsutism).

Root

Andr

(From a Greek word **andros**, meaning man/male.)

Combining forms **Andr/o**



WORD EXERCISE 5

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **andro/gyne**
(actually a female hermaphrodite)
- (b) **andro/blast/oma**

The ovary is also an endocrine gland secreting several types of sex hormone, for example:

Oestrogens (Am. estrogens)

Steroid hormones that regulate the development of the female reproductive tract, menstrual cycle and secondary sexual characteristics, such as the growth of pubic hair and the female body form. Compounds that have oestrogen-like actions on the body are described as **oestrogenic** (Am. estrogenic).

Progestogens

Steroid hormones that maintain the receptivity of the uterus to fertilized eggs and stimulate the growth of the uterus during pregnancy.

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

Revise the names of medical equipment and procedures mentioned in this unit and then try Exercise 6. Some imaging procedures used for examining the endocrine system will be studied in Unit 18 as the techniques involved are similar to those used for other systems.



WORD EXERCISE 6

Match each term in Column A with a description from Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) adrenal function test	_____	1. imaging of the thyroid gland following administration of radioactive iodine

Column A	Column B	Column C
(b) glucose tolerance test	2. test for hypothyroidism by measuring concentration of iodine in blood
(c) protein bound iodine test (PBI)	3. a test used to diagnose diabetes mellitus
(d) glucose oxidase paper strip test (Clinistix)	4. measurement of 24-hour output of corticosteroids
(e) thyroid scan	5. indicates the relative amount of glucose in urine



ANATOMY EXERCISE

Now complete the Anatomy Exercise on page 214.



CASE HISTORY 17

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on diabetes mellitus; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Diabetes mellitus

W, a 14-year-old boy on holiday in the locality, was brought into Accident and Emergency by his worried parents. Prior to admission he had complained of tiredness, insomnia and his mother had noticed that despite a good appetite he had become thinner. On the morning of admission he suffered abdominal pain, nausea and vomiting, his breathing had become irregular and at times he appeared semiconscious. Further questioning of the parents indicated the patient had recently developed polydipsia and polyuria.

On admission he was conscious and hyperventilating; he was dehydrated and his breath had the fruity odour of ketones. Blood and urine samples were analysed

and quickly indicated clinically significant levels of glycosuria, hyperglycaemia and ketonaemia. W's condition was diagnosed as diabetic ketoacidosis and emergency treatment was commenced.

Vital signs on admission

Pulse	Oral temp	BP 110/70
98 per minute	36.0°C	
Blood glucose	Urine 3+	Hyperventilating
28 mmol/litre	ketones	

He was given an initial intravenous infusion of 6 units of soluble insulin followed by 6 units hourly. His fluid and electrolyte loss were replaced by an intravenous saline infusion. His blood glucose was monitored hourly and electrolytes 2 hourly in the initial phase of treatment. When his blood glucose reached its normal value, he was given a saline infusion of 5% Dextrose containing 20 mmol KCL litre⁻¹. The dose of insulin was adjusted according to the hourly blood glucose results.

W's parents were informed their son was suffering from Type 1 diabetes mellitus also known as insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM), a chronic incurable condition brought on by a failure of the pancreatic islets to produce insulin.

Once recovered from his acute attack he was referred to the diabetic clinician for advice on insulin therapy and his GP was informed. He responded well to advice, and now self-administers two daily injections of insulin. His regimen was adjusted to avoid hypoglycaemia and give good glycaemic control. Both injections consist of a mixture of short and intermediate-acting insulins, the first before breakfast and the second before his evening meal.

WORD HELP

- clinician** expert on treating and advising patients
- chronic** lasting/lingering for a long time
- electrolyte** the ionized salts in the blood (e.g sodium and potassium ions)
- GP** general practitioner (family doctor)
- hyperventilating** above normal ventilation rate of the lungs (rapid deep breathing)
- insomnia** condition of inability to sleep
- insulin** a hormone secreted by the pancreas that lowers blood sugar
- islets** small islands of cells that secrete insulin in the pancreas (Islets of Langerhan's)
- ketones** ketone bodies (chemicals formed in diabetes from breakdown of fat)
- polydipsia** condition of too much/excessive thirst
- regimen** regulated scheme (e.g. of taking drugs/medication)

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) polyuria
- (b) glycosuria
- (c) hyperglycaemia
(Am. hyperglycemia)
- (d) ketonaemia
(Am. ketonemia)
- (e) ketoacidosis
- (f) pancreatic
- (g) hypoglycaemia
(Am. hypoglycemia)
- (h) glycaemic
(Am. glyceemic)

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to the endocrine system are listed below. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

ACTH	adrenocorticotrophic hormone
BSS	blood sugar series
FSH	follicle-stimulating hormone
HGH	human growth hormone
HRT	hormone replacement therapy
IDDM	Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus
LH	luteinizing hormone
NIDDM	non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus
OGTT	oral glucose tolerance test
PRL	prolactin
T ₃ , T ₄	tri-iodothyronine, tetraiodothyronine (thyroxine)
TSH	thyroid stimulating hormone

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the endocrine system:

Aden/o	gland
Adren/o	adrenal gland
Adrenocortic/o	adrenal cortex
Andr/o	male
Cortic/o	cortex
Estr/o (Am.)	estrogen
-globulin	protein
Glyc/o	sugar
Hypophys-	hypophysis/ pituitary gland
Insulin/o	insulin
Kal/i	potassium
Ket/o	ketones
Natr/i	sodium
Oestr/o	oestrogen
Oophor/o	ovary
Orchid/o	testis
Ovari/o	ovary
Pancreat/o	pancreas
Parathyroid/o	parathyroid gland
Pituitar-	pituitary
Progest/o	progesterone
Thyr/o	thyroid gland

NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

- acro-
- hyper-
- hypo-
- para-
- poly-

Combining forms of word roots

- acid/o

aden/o

adren/o

andr/o

blast/o

chondr/o

cortic/o

dips/o

globulin

gloss/o

-gyne

insulin/o

kal/i

ket/o/n

natr/i

oestr/o
(Am. estr/o)

pancreat/o

physis

pituitar-

progest/o

thyr/o

Suffixes-aemia
(Am. -emia)

-al

-ectomy

-genesis

-genic

-ia

-ic

-ism

-itis

-megaly

-micria

-oid

-oma

-osis

-plasia

-ptosis

-static

-tomy

-toxic

-trophic

-tropic

-uresis

-uria


NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT

**SELF-ASSESSMENT****Test 17A**

Below are some combining forms that refer to the anatomy of the endocrine system. Indicate which part of the system they refer to by putting a number from the diagram (Fig. 89) next to each word.

(a) adren/o

(b) parathyroid/o

(c) andr/o

- (d) thyroid/o _____
- (e) insulin/o _____
- (f) oestr/o
(Am. estr/o) _____
- (g) pituitar- _____
- (h) adrenocortic/o _____

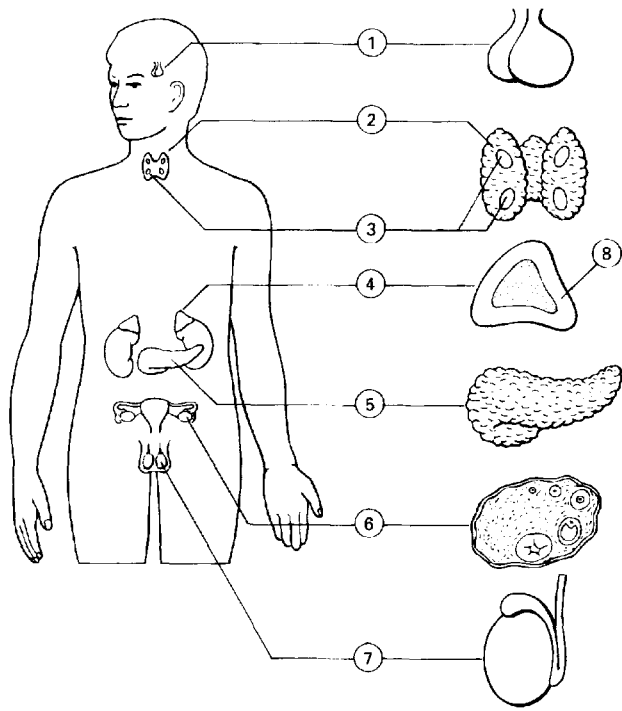


Figure 89 The endocrine system

Score

8

Test 17B

Prefixes, suffixes and combining forms of word roots

Match a word component from Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) acro-	_____	1. germ cell
(b) aden/o	_____	2. small

Column A	Column B	Column C
(c) andr/o	_____	3. pancreas
(d) blast/o	_____	4. progesterone
(e) -globin	_____	5. pertaining to constant/ unchanging/ controlling
(f) glyc/o	_____	6. condition of growth (increase of cells)
(g) hyper-	_____	7. oestrogen (Am. estrogen)
(h) hypo-	_____	8. sugar
(i) insulin/o	_____	9. hypophysis
(j) micr/o	_____	10. below
(k) oestr/o (Am. estr/o)	_____	11. gland
(l) pancreat/o	_____	12. thyroid
(m) para-	_____	13. pertaining to affinity for/ acting on
(n) -plasia	_____	14. pertaining to nourishment
(o) pituitar-	_____	15. insulin/islets of Langerhans
(p) progest/o	_____	16. extremity/point
(q) -static	_____	17. beside/near
(r) thyr/o	_____	18. above
(s) -trophic	_____	19. protein
(t) -tropic	_____	20. man/male

Score

20

Test 17C

Write the meaning of:

- (a) thyroparathyroidectomy
- (b) pituicyte
- (c) adrenomegaly
- (d) glycotropic
- (e) hyperketonaemia
(Am. hyperketonemia)

Score

5

Test 17D

Build words that mean:

- (a) process of producing too
much insulin
- (b) condition of too little
sodium in the blood
- (c) pertaining to nourishing
the thyroid gland (use thyr/o)
- (d) pertaining to acting on/
stimulating the adrenal
- (e) process of producing too
little parathyroid hormone

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

This page intentionally left blank

Radiology and nuclear medicine

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 18 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to radiology and nuclear medicine
- build medical words relating to radiology and nuclear medicine
- understand medical abbreviations relating to radiology and nuclear medicine.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

ultra-	beyond
--------	--------

Roots/Combining forms

angi/o	vessel
cardi/o	heart
encephal/o	brain
esophag/o (Am.)	esophagus/gullet
oesophag/o	oesophagus/gullet

Suffixes

-er	one who
-genic	pertaining to formation/ originating in
-gram	X-ray picture/tracing/recording
-graph	usually an instrument that records/an X-ray picture
-graphy	technique of recording/making an X-ray
-ist	specialist
-logist	specialist who studies
-logy	study of
-scope	viewing instrument
-therapist	specialist who treats (disease)
-therapy	treatment

Radiology

Radiology is the study of the diagnosis of disease by the use of radiant energy (radiation). In the past this meant the use of X-rays to make an image of the internal components of the body. Today many other forms of radiation are used to aid both diagnosis and treatment of disease. Developments in physics and technology are bringing rapid changes to this branch of medicine.

Before completing the first exercise, review the terms below:

-gram

recording/picture/tracing/X-ray.

-graph

usually refers to an instrument that records by making a picture or tracing but it is also used here to mean a recording or X-ray picture.

-graphy

technique of making a recording, i.e. a picture, X-ray, tracing or writing.

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–10 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Radi

(From a Latin word **radius**, meaning a ray. Here it is used to mean X-rays, the invisible rays produced by an X-ray machine. Also used to mean radiation/radioactivity.)

Combining forms **Radi/o**



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- radio**/logist _____
(a physician, i.e. medically qualified)
- radio**/graph _____
(refers to an X-ray picture)
- radio**/graphy _____
- radio**/graph/er _____
(refers to a technician who is not medically qualified)
- radio**/therapist _____

Some radiographic procedures require the use of a contrast medium or agent to improve the quality of the

image. Contrast agents are required because there is little difference in the density of the soft parts of the body and X-rays pass through them without producing a distinct image of individual organs. The contrast medium is administered to the patient, filling a cavity such as the stomach. The X-ray is taken and the outline of the cavity recorded on the radiograph.

An example of a contrast medium is barium sulphate, a radio-opaque substance that absorbs X-rays. It shows up on X-ray film as a white area that has not allowed X-rays to pass. This property of barium sulphate makes it particularly useful for outlining the digestive tract where it is administered as:

A barium 'meal' (swallow)

To outline the upper parts of the digestive system the barium is given as a drink.

A barium enema

To outline the lower parts of the digestive system. In this procedure barium is injected via the anus into the rectum and colon. Sometimes air is also administered with the barium to increase contrast; this is known as a **double contrast radiograph**.

Iodine is another contrast agent that can be added to make various fluids radio-opaque. It is often the contrast agent used in angiocardiology, arteriography and venography.

Root

Roentgen

(From the name of Wilhelm K. **Roentgen**, a German physicist who discovered X-rays. It is used to mean X-rays.)

Combining forms **Roentgeno/o**



WORD EXERCISE 2

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- roentgeno**/graphy _____
- roentgeno**/logist _____
(synonymous with radiologist)

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- roentgeno**/gram _____
(synonymous with radiograph, but as this German name is difficult to pronounce, radiograph is more commonly used)
- roentgeno**/cardio/gram _____

The movement of internal parts of the body can be observed using a technique known as fluoroscopy. In this procedure X-rays pass through the body on to a phosphor screen (a fluorescent screen, i.e. one from which light flows). As the X-rays strike the screen, the phosphor emits light, producing an image which is viewed as it is generated. Fluoroscopy is useful for observing movement of the oesophagus (Am. esophagus), stomach and heart. If necessary, a recording/picture can be made of the light image from the screen. (**Fluor** is from Latin *fluere*, meaning to flow. It is used to mean something that is luminous, i.e. emitting light.)

Using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (e) instrument used for the direct X-ray examination of the body (fluoroscopy)

Without using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (f) technique of recording a radiographic image produced by fluoroscopy

Root

Cine

(From a Greek word **kinein**, meaning movement. Here the combining forms are used to mean a moving film, i.e. a motion picture on film or video.)

Combining forms **Cine, cinemat/o**



WORD EXERCISE 3

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **cine**/radio/graph
 (b) roentgeno/**cinemat/o**/graphy

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (c) **cine**/angio/cardio/graphy
 (d) **cine**/oesophago/gram
 (Am. cine-esophago/gram)

Root

Tom

(From a Greek word **tomos**, meaning a slice or section.)

Combining forms **Tom/o**

A **tomograph** is an instrument that uses X-rays to obtain images of sections through the body. It uses a thin beam of X-rays that rotates around the patient. X-ray photons emitted from the patient are detected and converted into an image by a computer. The images produced by this device show more detail than a simple X-ray.



WORD EXERCISE 4

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **tomo**/gram
 (b) **tomo**/graphy
 (This procedure is usually called computed tomography (CT), but it is also known as CT scanning, computerized axial tomography (CAT) and CAT scanning).

Nuclear medicine

This branch of medicine uses **radioisotopes** (also called **radionuclides**) to diagnose and treat disease. In some texts it is called nuclear radiology. Terms used for diagnostic radiology include nuclear imaging and radionuclide imaging.

Radioisotopes

Radioisotopes are elements that exhibit the property of spontaneous decay, emitting radiation in the process. The radiation is in the form of high-speed particles and energy-containing rays. Elements that emit alpha, beta or gamma radiation are used as diagnostic labels to trace the route and uptake of chemicals administered into the body. The radioisotope behaves like a transmitter, passing radiation from inside to the outside of the body. Ideally, radioisotopes should give off gamma radiation as alpha and beta particles can damage cells. Many different diagnostic techniques have been devised that use radioisotopes; one procedure is described below.

First the specific isotope or tracer is given to the patient. Once in the body it continues to emit radiation and is absorbed or excluded from the tissues and organs under investigation. Next a Geigy-Muller tube or gamma camera is passed over the surface of the body to detect gamma rays emitted by the isotope; this is also known as a **radioisotope scan**. Finally an image is constructed showing the distribution of radioactivity within the tissues and organs. **Radioisotope scans** are used to image the heart, liver, biliary tract, bone, thyroid and kidney.

Here are some examples of the use of specific radioisotopes:

^{99m}Tc (technetium)

^{99m}Tc is administered to the patient in trace quantities. It is excluded from normal brain tissue but accumulates in some brain tumours. A tumour can be detected by locating the gamma rays emitted from it.

¹²³I (iodine)

¹²³I is rapidly taken up by the thyroid gland. A radioisotope scan of the gland will outline the now radioactive gland and information from this will aid the diagnosis of various thyroid disorders, e.g. thyrotoxicosis.

⁵⁷Co (cobalt)

⁵⁷Co is used to trace the uptake of vitamin B₁₂ by the body and from this a diagnosis of megaloblastic anaemia can be made.

Scintigraphy

Scintigraphy is the technique of producing a radioisotope scan. A radioisotope with an affinity for a particular organ or tissue is injected into the body and the distribution of the radioactivity is followed using an instrument called a **scintillation counter (scintiscanner)**. This device contains a **scintillator**, a substance that emits light in contact with ionizing radiation. There is a flash of light for each ionizing event and the number of flashes (or counts) is related to the radioactivity present in the area being scanned. Scintillation counters can be moved over the outer surface of the body to locate radioisotopes within particular organs and build an image (scintigram/scintiscan) of their distribution. The **gamma camera** mentioned earlier is a scintillation counter.

Root

Scint

(From a Latin word **scintilla**, meaning spark/emitting sparks/light.)

Combining forms **Scinti/i, scintill/a**



WORD EXERCISE 5

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **scinti/gram** _____
- (b) **scinti/graphy** _____

Positron Emission Tomography (PET)

This is another imaging technique that traces the distribution of radioisotopes within the body. **Positron emission tomography** (PET scanning) uses radioisotopes (radionuclides) that emit short-lived particles called positrons (β^+ radiation). The isotopes, which are injected intravenously, are taken up by particular tissues, for example 11C-2-deoxy-D-glucose can penetrate the blood-brain barrier and is used by brain cells as a source of energy. Once inside brain cells the isotope decays emitting positrons; the more active the cells, the more labelled glucose is taken up and the more positrons are emitted.

The positrons immediately collide with electrons, yielding gamma ray photons that have sufficient energy to leave the body. These photons are detected by a large array of scintillation detectors that surround the patient. The position of the emerging photons is determined and used to construct a cross sectional computerized image that shows the distribution of the radioisotopes in the tissues.

PET is used to investigate physiological processes such as the blood perfusion of organs and metabolism and has found particular application in the study of the brain in patients with neurological deficits caused by strokes and epilepsy.

The half-life of radionuclides used in PET is short-lived so they cannot be stored and used when required. The technique is dependent on the immediate production of radionuclides in a complex and expensive device called a **cyclotron** and the services of **radiochemical** and **radiopharmaceutical** laboratories. These restrictions have limited its use to special centres with appropriate facilities. Recently, mini cyclotrons have been designed for on site production of radionuclides and these are leading to increased use of this imaging technique.

Radiotherapy

Radiotherapy is the treatment of disease by X-rays and other forms of radiation. In particular the radiation is used to destroy malignant cancer cells by exposing them to a lethal dose of radiation.

Teletherapy (External beam therapy)

This is the administration of radiation from an external source at a distance from the body (*tele-* meaning far away/operating at a distance). Radiotherapy machines generate the radiation used in this form of treatment and there has been a move towards ever more powerful devices. To maximize the therapeutic advantages of radiotherapy, it is necessary to give a tumouricidal (Am. tumoricidal) dose of radiation to a planned target volume and minimize the dose to surrounding tissue.

(Here *tumour-* means a mass of cancer cells, *-cidal* pertaining to killing).

The first high energy beams were produced by the decay of radioactive sources. The cobalt sixty (^{60}Co) radiotherapy machine still in use produces radiation at energies of between 1 and 4 MeV (mega-electronvolts, 1 MeV = 1 million electronvolts). At its centre is a cobalt sixty high energy radiation source that emits gamma(γ)-ray photons which are directed at the patient through an opening called a collimator. This machine has been particularly useful for treating tumours of the head, neck and metastatic spread to lymph nodes.

Cobalt sixty machines have been largely superseded by linear accelerators that generate X-ray photons or electron beams at very high energy levels (3–35 MeV) and contain no radioactive sources. In electron mode these complex machines accelerate a beam of electrons to near the speed of light and direct them on to superficial lesions near the surface of the body. In photon mode the beam of electrons is made to collide with a metal target generating high energy X-ray photons that can be used to destroy tumours deep within the body.

Brachytherapy

The term **brachytherapy** (*brachy-* meaning short) means the administration of radiation in close proximity to a tumour. It is accomplished by the implantation of radioactive sources into the body. The sealed source has been used to deliver radiation in three main ways: into the surface of the skin, into a cavity (intracavity) and directly into a tissue or tumour (interstitial).

Needles containing radium (^{226}Ra) and emitting gamma ray photons at 0.2–2.4 MeV were first used. A needle consists of a platinum or alloy tube with a sharp (trocar) point at one end and an eyelet for a thread at the other. The radioactive material is loaded into the needle in cells (this minimizes spillage if damaged) and they are sealed in with gold solder. The needle is inserted directly into a tumour and left for a fixed time before being withdrawn. Caesium (^{137}Cs) (Am. Cesium) has been used as a radium substitute for intracavity and interstitial brachytherapy.

Tubes and seeds are similar to needles, but they have no sharp points; instead they fit into an applicator for insertion into a body cavity. Radon gas seeds (^{222}Rn) were used as a substitute for radium, and these have been superseded by gold (^{198}Au) seeds for interstitial implants. Typically they have a length of 5 mm and a diameter of 1.35 mm, small enough to be inserted into a tumour and left forming harmless foreign bodies once their radioactivity has decayed to a negligible value (half-life 3.8 days).

Other sources include: Caesium (^{137}Cs) needles, Gold (^{198}Au) grains and tubes, and iridium (^{192}Ir) wires, hairpins, seeds and ribbons.

In the 1930s brachytherapy needles were inserted into the patient manually; this exposed medical and nursing staff to high doses of radiation. The afterloading technique has been developed to reduce the handling times of radioactive sources. In this procedure, non-radioactive needles, tubing and applicators are precisely positioned in the patient before the introduction of the radioactive sources. The sources are only introduced when they can be quickly loaded into the appropriate points in the patient, thereby reducing exposure to medical staff. Improved afterloading machines are now available that further reduce unwanted exposure. This, with the development of new radionuclides, has made brachytherapy a much safer form of treatment.

Radionuclides are also administered to patients in unsealed forms, for example, Iodine (^{131}I) emits beta radiation and is used as a treatment for thyrotoxicosis. The iodine is available as an injection, drink or capsule, the latter being safer as it reduces the risk of spillage. Once absorbed, the iodine is preferentially absorbed by the thyroid gland delivering a therapeutic dose of radiation. This causes the gland to atrophy and reduce its output of thyroid hormones.



WORD EXERCISE 6

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **radio/therapy** _____
- (b) **radio/therapist** _____
(a physician, medically qualified)

Ultrasonography

When high-frequency sound waves are directed at the body, internal organs and masses reflect the sound to a different extent. They are said to have different echo textures. These internal echoes are detected and converted into an image. The size and shape of easily recognized organs can be investigated using this technique and it is widely used for examining a fetus in utero.

Root

Son

(From a Latin word **sonus**, meaning sound.)

Combining forms **Son/o**

Note the next exercise refers to techniques using **ultrasound**, high-frequency sounds beyond human hearing.



WORD EXERCISE 7

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) ultra/**sono**/gram
(a picture/tracing)

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (b) ultra/**sono**/graphy
(c) ultra/**sono**/graph
(an instrument)

Root

Echo

(A Greek word meaning the repetition of sounds owing to reflection by an obstacle. Here it is used to mean ultrasound echoes.)

Combining forms **Echo-**



WORD EXERCISE 8

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **echo**/encephalo/gram

Using your Exercise Guide, build a word that means:

- (b) pertaining to forming/
generating an echo

Without using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (c) recording/picture of echo
(synonymous with ultrasonogram)
(d) instrument that records
echoes from the brain
(e) recording/picture of
heart echoes
(f) technique of making
a picture/tracing using echoes

Thermography

Thermography is the technique of recording temperature differences throughout the body on film.

Our bodies radiate a range of infrared waves at different frequencies. The frequency of the radiation depends on the temperature of the body. Thermography uses electronic equipment to convert infrared radiation into visible light which is used to form an image. Thermography has proved of great benefit in the detection of breast and testicular tumours. Tumours contain abnormally active cells and so tend to be warmer than surrounding areas.

Root

Therm

(From a Greek word **therme** meaning heat.)

Combining forms **Therm/o**



WORD EXERCISE 9

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **thermo**/gram
(b) scrotal **thermo**/graphy

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

Revise the names of all instruments and techniques used in this unit before trying Exercise 10.



WORD EXERCISE 10

Match each term in Column A with a description in Column C by placing an appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) radiography	1. instrument that detects gamma rays from radioisotopes
(b) fluoroscopy	2. technique of using ultrasound echoes to image the heart
(c) thermography	3. chemical used to improve detail of an X-ray
(d) ultrasonograph	4. technique of making an X-ray

Column A	Column B	Column C
(e) computerized tomograph	5. instrument that makes tracing/picture using reflected sound
(f) radiotherapy	6. instrument that uses X-rays to image a slice through the body
(g) cineradiography	7. direct observation of X-ray picture using a fluorescent screen
(h) gamma camera	8. technique of recording body heat on film
(i) echocardiography	9. treatment of disorders using radiation
(j) contrast medium	10. technique of using X-rays to make a moving picture



CASE HISTORY 18

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on cancer of the larynx; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Cancer of the larynx

Mr R, aged 42, was referred to the ENT clinic with suspected cancer of the larynx. He had been a 15 per day cigarette smoker for 22 years. His main symptom was hoarseness (dysphonia) which had been present for about 2 months; otherwise, he seemed to be in good health. He was admitted to have his larynx formally assessed.

Direct laryngoscopy under anaesthesia confirmed the presence of a glottic tumour affecting both vocal cords. Following biopsy, histological analysis classified the tumour as a squamous cell carcinoma.

A chest radiograph excluded the presence of metastatic deposits and bronchial carcinoma. Computed tomography excluded lymph node and cartilage involvement with no spread into the hypopharynx.

Following discussion at a joint clinic, the ENT surgeon and radiotherapist staged Mr R's tumour at T1b N0 with

no metastatic involvement. He was prescribed a course of radical radiotherapy to try to conserve his larynx.

Immobilization of Mr R's neck was achieved by a well-fitting perspex shell reaching from the angle of the jaw down to just below the clavicle. The radiotherapist placed him in the supine position (without a mouthbite) with his neck straight to prevent the spinal cord curving anteriorly. The tumour was localized using CT scanning and the dose distribution outlined on the tomogram centering on the proposed target volume.

Mr R was placed in the same perspex shell and position for radiotherapy. The aim of his treatment was to administer a tumouricidal dose of radiation centred on his vocal cords. As he had a short neck, two anterior, oblique beams were used to irradiate the whole larynx. The wedged beams were angled at 90° to give a homogeneous dose to the target volume and to reduce the dose to the skin and spinal cord. He was administered 60 Gy in twenty-five fractions in 5 weeks (4–6 MeV) from a linear accelerator.

Mr R was advised of the possibility of side-effects such as difficulty in swallowing, exacerbated hoarseness, desquamation and rarely oedema (Am. edema) leading to obstruction. These often peak around the twelfth treatment with resolution of the tumour in approximately 2 months.

Mr R made an uneventful recovery, his only complaints being difficulty in swallowing and a sore throat. Recent follow-up examinations by the ENT surgeon and diagnostic ultrasonography showed no evidence of tumour recurrence. He appears well, and his voice is showing signs of recovery.

WORD HELP

anterior front/from the front of the body

biopsy removal and examination of living tissue

carcinoma malignant growth from epidermal cells

clavicle collar bone

desquamation the shedding of cells from the epidermis

dysphonia condition of difficulty/pain on speaking

ENT ear, nose and throat

glottic pertaining to the glottis (vocal apparatus of the larynx)

Gy gray (SI unit of absorbed radiation dose)

histological pertaining to histology (here histological analysis for classification and signs of malignancy)

hoarseness rough, grating, discordant voice making speech difficult

homogeneous uniform quality in all parts

hypopharynx the laryngeal part of the pharynx

laryngoscopy technique of viewing the larynx

localized here refers to determination of the position of the target volume in relation to the patient's anatomy and skin reference points

WORD HELP (Contd.)

metastatic pertaining to metastases (parts of a tumour that have spread from one site to another)

MeV mega-electronvolt

oblique slanting

oedema (Am. edema) accumulation of fluid in a tissue

squamous pertaining to scale-like/from squamous epithelium

supine lying on the back so the face is upward

target volume tumour volume

radical direct to the root or cause (treatment to eliminate disease) extensive

resolution abatement of a pathological process and the return of affected tissues to normal

T1b N0 staging symbols T – tumour N – node

T1b – tumour at stage 1b N0 – no node involvement

wedge wedge-shaped devices that act as filters to absorb radiation. They are used to adjust the dose received on either side of the body

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) radiograph
- (b) tomography
- (c) radiotherapist
- (d) radiotherapy
- (e) tomogram
- (f) tumouricidal
(Am. tumoricidal)
- (g) linear accelerator
- (h) ultrasonography

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to radiology and nuclear medicine:

Cine/o	movement/motion (picture)
Ech/o	reflected sound
Fluor/o	fluorescent/luminous/ flow
Radi/o	radiation/X-ray
Roentgen/o	X-ray
Scint/i	spark/flash of light
Son/o	sound
Therm/o	heat
Tom/o	slice/section
Ultrason/o	ultrasound

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to radiation and nuclear medicine are listed below. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

AXR	abdominal X-ray
Ba	barium
CAT	computerized axial tomography
CXR	chest X-ray
DSA	digital subtraction angiography
DXT	deep X-ray therapy
EUA	examination under anaesthesia (Am. anesthesia)
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
NMR	nuclear magnetic resonance
PET	positron emission tomography
US	ultrasound/ultrasonography
XR	X-ray

NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

ultra-

Combining forms of word roots

angi/o

cardi/o

cine/o

ech/o

encephal/o

fluor/o

oesophag/o
(Am. esophag/o)

radi/o

roentgen/o

scint/o

son/o

therm/o

tom/o

Suffixes

-cidal

-er

-genic

-gram

-graph

-graphy

-ist

-logy

-scope

-scopy

-therapy

Column A Column B Column C

(a) angi/o 1. X-ray/radiation

(b) cinemat/o 2. X-rays

(c) ech/o 3. specialist

(d) -er 4. treatment

(e) fluor/o 5. beyond/excess

(f) -genic 6. slice/section/cut

(g) -gram 7. sound

(h) -graph 8. heat

(i) -graphy 9. technique of
recording/making
picture

(j) -ist 10. technique of visual
examination

(k) radi/o 11. vessel

(l) roentgen/o 12. picture/tracing/X-ray
picture

(m) scint/i 13. movement/motion
picture

(n) -scope 14. pertaining to
formation/originating
in

(o) -scopy 15. reflected sound

(p) son/o 16. instrument to view

(q) -therapy 17. luminous (to flow)

(r) -therm/o 18. spark (flash or light)

(s) tom/o 19. instrument that
records/tracing or
picture, or the
picture/tracing/
X-ray itself

(t) ultra- 20. one who

Score

20

➤ NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT ◀



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 18A

Prefixes, suffixes and combining forms of word roots

Match each word component in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Test 18B

Write the meaning of:

- (a) roentgenotherapy _____
- (b) sonologist _____
- (c) thermoradiotherapy _____
- (d) radiocinematograph _____
- (e) ultrasonotomography _____

Score

5

Test 18C

Build words that mean:

- (a) treatment using ultrasound _____
- (b) pertaining to examination
by a fluoroscope _____
- (c) technique of making a
picture of vessels using
sparks/ flashes of light _____
- (d) instrument used to detect
and image heat from the body _____
- (e) technique of imaging the brain
using echoes (use ech/o) _____

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 19 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to oncology
- build medical words relating to oncology
- understand medical abbreviations relating to oncology.

Exercise guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Roots/Combining forms

angi/o	vessel
chondr/o	cartilage
haem/o	blood
hem/o (Am.)	blood
leiomy/o	smooth muscle
mening/i	meninges (membranes of CNS)
rhabdomy/o	striated muscle

Suffixes

-eal	pertaining to
-genesis	formation of
-genic	pertaining to formation/ originating in
-ia	condition of
-ic	pertaining to
-ist	specialist
-logist	specialist who studies
-logy	study of
-lysis	breakdown/disintegration
-oma	tumour/swelling
-osis	abnormal condition/disease/ abnormal increase
-static	pertaining to stopping/controlling
-tropic	pertaining to stimulating/affinity for

Oncology

This branch of medicine deals with the study and treatment of malignant tumours (Am. tumors) commonly called cancers. A tumour is a mass or swelling forming from dividing cells which appear to be out of control. Benign tumours remain localized and do not threaten life but malignant tumours spread and may lead to death. Tumours spread when they release cells into the blood and lymph; the tumour cells multiply in new sites forming secondary growths or **metastases** (from Greek *meta* + *histanai*, *meta* meaning changed in form, *histanai* to place/set, i.e. a growth in a different position).

As tumours grow they consume nutrients, depriving normal cells of essential metabolic components. A clinical feature called **cachexia** is seen in advanced stages of disease (from Greek *kakos* meaning bad and *hexis* meaning state). The body appears to suffer from malnutrition and becomes thin and 'wastes' away.

In this unit we will examine terms that relate to common types of tumour.

Use the Exercise Guide at the beginning of this unit to complete Word Exercises 1–3 unless you are asked to work without it.

Root

Onc

(From a Greek word **onkos**, meaning bulk. Here it is used to mean a tumour (Am. tumor).)

Combining forms **Onc/o**



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **onc/osis**
- (b) **onco/genesis**
- (c) **onco/tropic**

Using your Exercise Guide, build words that mean:

- (d) pertaining to formation of a tumour
- (e) destruction/disintegration of a tumour
- (f) person who specializes in the study and treatment of tumours

The process of tumour formation is also known as **neoplasia** (*neo-* meaning new, *-plas-* forming/growing and *-ia* condition of) and the tumour itself as a **neoplasm**. Neoplastic, derived in the same way, is also used to mean pertaining to a new growth (synonymous with oncogenic).

Before we study the next word root, we need to examine the use of the suffix *-oma*. Used by itself in combination with a tissue type, it indicates a benign tumour, e.g. **osteoma** – a benign bone tumour.

Malignant tumours may also be designated by *-oma* but they are usually preceded by the word **malignant**, e.g. **malignant melanoma**, a malignant tumour of the pigment cells and **malignant lymphoma**, a malignant tumour of lymphatic tissue.

The suffix *-oma* is also used in **blastoma**, meaning a tumour that forms from embryonic (germ) cells of an organ. Examples include: **glioblastoma**, a tumour that contains neuroglia (a type of brain cell or gliocyte) and **retinoblastoma** a tumour that grows from embryonic cells in the retina of the eye.

(To confuse matters, *-oma* is occasionally used for a non-neoplastic condition such as **haematoma** (Am. **hematoma**), that refers to a swelling filled with blood and is not a new growth of cells.)

Two terms that are widely used when referring to malignant tumours are:

Carcinoma

a malignant tumour of epithelial origin. Remember epithelia cover organs and line cavities and form membranes and glands.

Sarcoma

a malignant tumour of supporting tissues, including connective tissues and muscle.

These terms are studied in the exercises that follow:

Root

Carcin

(From a Greek word **karkinos**, meaning crab. It is used to mean a malignant tumour/cancer.)

Combining forms **Carcin/o**

A **carcinoma** is a tumour of an epithelium and there are numerous types. They are usually named by using the word carcinoma preceded by the histological type and followed by the organ of origin, for example:

Squamous cell carcinoma of the lung

originates in non-glandular epithelium.

Adenocarcinoma of the breast

originates in a glandular epithelium within the breast.

Often carcinomas are more simply named, e.g. as carcinoma of the colon or carcinoma of the urinary bladder.

Note. A substance that stimulates the formation of a malignant tumour is known as a **carcinogen**.



WORD EXERCISE 2

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **carcino**/genic
- (b) **carcino**/lysis

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (c) **carcino**/static

Also from this root we have the word cancer, which is imprecisely used to mean carcinoma or cancer in situ. It is sometimes preceded by words that indicate the cause of a cancer, e.g.:

- radiologist's cancer
- smoker's cancer
- asbestos cancer.

Root

Sarc

(From a Greek word **sarkoma**, meaning a fleshy growth. Here it is used to mean a malignant tumour.)

Combining forms **Sarc/o**

Sarcomas are malignant tumours that are less common than carcinomas. They are derived from cells that have developed from the supporting tissues of the body, such as the connective tissues, i.e. bone, cartilage, blood and lymph, and from muscle tissue. The word **sarcoma** is preceded by the tissue type as in **osteosarcoma**, a malignant bone tumour. (**Sarcomat/o** is the combining form of sarcoma).



WORD EXERCISE 3

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) **chondro**/**sarcoma**

- (b) **leiomyo**/**sarcoma**
- (c) **rhabdomyo**/**sarcoma**
- (d) **mening**/**eal sarcoma**
- (e) **haem**/**angio**/**sarcoma**
(Am. **hem**/**angio**/**sarcoma**)

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (f) **sarcomat**/osis

Most malignant tumours arise from epithelial tissues. When a malignant tumour no longer resembles its tissue of origin and its cells are disordered, it is described as **anaplastic** (*ana-* meaning backward, *-plast* growth and *-ic* pertaining to).

Another form of malignant tumour is the mixed tissue tumour. These contain cells that resemble both epithelial and connective tissue cells.

Diagnosis of malignant tumours

Precise classification of malignant tumours is essential for determining their likely growth characteristics. Once a tumour has been classified, appropriate treatment can be planned and the patient can be given a prognosis (forecast of the probable course of their disease).

Attempts to develop an international language for describing the extent of malignant disease have been made. One of these is in widespread use and is known as the **TNM** system.

T – tumour

categorizes the primary tumour and its size.

N – nodes

defines the number of lymph nodes that have been invaded.

M – metastases

indicates the presence or absence of metastases.

The extent of malignant disease defined by these categories is termed **staging**. Staging defines the size of tumour, its growth and progression at any one point.

Many different staging systems are in use for different cancers. It is not possible to study them here, but we have included a basic system which is outlined below.

T	
T ₀	no primary tumour
T ₁	primary tumour limited to site of origin
T ₂₋₄	progressive increase in size of primary tumour
T _x	primary tumour cannot be assessed
T _{is}	primary tumour in situ
N	
N ₀	no evidence of spread to nodes
N ₁	spread to nodes in immediate area
N ₂₋₄	increasing number of lymph nodes invaded
N _x	lymph nodes cannot be assessed
M	
M ₀	no evidence of metastases
M ₁₋₃	ascending degrees of metastases

Using the above system, we can see the principle of how a cancer is staged. For example, if a tumour was classified at T₂ N₁ M₀, this stage would indicate that the primary tumour is large and has spread to deeper structures (T₂). It has spread to one lymph node draining the area (N₁) and there is no evidence of a distant metastasis (M₀).

Staging is not an exact description of a tumour's progress but it is a useful way to estimate the course of the disease when planning treatment (therapy).

Medical equipment and clinical procedures

We have already described the main instruments and procedures that are used in the diagnosis and treatment of cancers in Unit 18. Tumours can be detected using radiography, computerized tomography, thermography, magnetic resonance imaging, positron emission tomography etc.

The main types of treatments are:

- radiotherapy: the use of radiation/X-rays by medically qualified radiotherapists (*-ist* meaning specialist) to destroy tumour cells
- chemotherapy: the use of chemicals i.e. cytotoxic drugs to poison tumour cells
- excision surgery: the use of surgery to remove a mass of tumour cells.



CASE HISTORY 19

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on glioblastoma multiforme; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

Glioblastoma multiforme

Mr S, a 59-year-old male senior office worker noticed a loss of verbal fluency and had difficulty in recalling the names of common objects and friends. He was reprimanded by his employer over a decline in his previously high standard of written work. His condition worsened, and he was persuaded by his colleagues to seek medical advice. He was referred to the neurology unit by his GP.

On examination by the neurologist he appeared alert and intelligent but made several mistakes when asked to name common objects and spell simple words. He could not remember a simple name and address after 5 minutes.

His optic discs were normal, but there was no venous pulsation. Vision was restricted in the upper temporal visual field in the right eye and upper nasal field in the left eye. There was a mild lower facial weakness and a slight increase in reflexes of the right arm and leg. The right plantar reflex was extensor.

The presence of dysphasia, memory loss, right homonymous field restriction and mild pyramidal signs suggested a lesion affecting the upper temporal lobe of the left cerebral hemisphere.

A CXR excluded a bronchial **neoplasm** which is the commonest cause of cerebral **metastases** in a smoker. A CT scan demonstrated a mixed, high and low density intracranial lesion in the left temporal region and excluded **meningioma**. EEG demonstrated a wave abnormality in the left temporal region and a left carotid arteriogram indicated displacement of cerebral branches by a temporal **mass**. The commonest cause of lesions presenting in this way is malignant glioma.

A case conference was arranged with the **oncologist** to disclose the prognosis to Mr S and his family and to outline the options for treatment. The **radiotherapist** required histological confirmation of the diagnosis before commencing treatment. Mr S was administered dexamethasone to reduce the oedema (Am. edema) around the tumour and improve the symptoms of raised intracranial pressure. A brain biopsy confirmed glioblastoma multiforme.

Mr S underwent neurosurgery, part of the temporal lobe was removed to provide an internal decompression and the tumour was sucked out. Unfortunately, malignant gliomas infiltrate into brain tissue and are difficult to remove completely. Surgery was followed by a radical course of cobalt sixty radiotherapy in

combination with **chemotherapy** and small doses of steroids. His speech defect and writing improved considerably for many months following surgery. Now, a year later, he shows signs of deterioration with a right hemiparesis, dysphasia and occasional grand mal seizures.

WORD HELP

arteriogram tracing/X-ray picture of arteries
biopsy removal and examination of living tissue
carotid the carotid artery in the neck
cerebral hemisphere lateral half of the cerebrum
cobalt sixty (⁶⁰Co) isotope of cobalt that emits gamma rays that can destroy cancer cells
CT computed tomography
CXR chest X-ray
decompression relief of pressure
dysphasia condition of difficulty in speaking
EEG electroencephalogram/electroencephalography
extensor straightening (here refers to the Babinski reflex, a response in which the toes curl upwards or dorsiflex when the sole of the foot is stroked, instead of the normal plantar flexion in which the toes curl down)
glioblastoma tumour of embryonic/germ cells that contains neuroglia (a type of brain cell)
GP general practitioner (family doctor)
grand mal seizure form of epileptic fit in which consciousness is lost
hemiparesis partial or slight paralysis, weakness of a limb
histological pertaining to histology (here histological analysis for classification and signs of malignancy)
intracranial pertaining to within the cranium
homonymous corresponding halves
lesion pathological change in a tissue
malignant dangerous, capable of spreading
multiforme having many forms (here referring to the fact that the tumour may be derived from different types of cells)
oedema (Am. edema) accumulation of fluid in a tissue
plantar pertaining to the sole of the foot
prognosis forecast of the probable outcome and course of a disease
pyramidal referring to the pyramidal tract in the brain, an area that initiates voluntary skilled movements of skeletal muscles, especially the fingers
radical direct to the root or cause (treatment to eliminate disease), extensive
steroid drugs used to suppress inflammation and reduce oedema
temporal pertaining to the temple/temporal bone (the temple is the flat region on either side of the head)

- (c) meningioma
 (d) mass
 (e) glioma
 (f) oncologist
 (g) radiotherapist
 (h) chemotherapy

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to oncology:

Aden/o	gland
Blast/o	embryonic/germ cell
Cancer/o	cancer
Carcin/o	cancerous/malignant
Melan/o	pigment
Onc/o	tumour
Sarc/o	fleshy/connective tissue
Sarcomat/o	sarcoma/malignant tumour

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to oncology are listed below. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

BCC	basal cell carcinoma
BT	bone tumour
BX or Bx	biopsy
CA or Ca	cancer/carcinoma
CACX	cancer of the cervix
CF	cancer free
MEN	multiple endocrine neoplasia
Metas	metastasis
N & V	nausea and vomiting
SA	sarcoma
T	tumour
t	terminal

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) neoplasm
 (b) metastases



NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK





WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

ana-

meta-

neo-

Combining forms of word roots

aden/o

angi/o

blast/o

cancer/o

carcin/o

chem/o

chondr/o

cyt/o

gli/a/o

haem/o
(Am. hem/o)

leiomy/o

melan/o

meningi/o

onc/o

rhabdomy/o

sarc/o

sarcomat/o

Suffixes

-genic

-genesis

-ia

-ic

-ist

-logy

-lysis

-oma

-osis

-plasia

-plastic

-static

-therapy

-toxic

-tropic

> NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT <



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 19A

Prefixes, suffixes and combining forms of word roots

Match each word component in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) aden/o	_____	1. pertaining to
(b) ana-	_____	2. change position or form

Column A	Column B	Column C
(c) cancer/o	_____	3. pertaining to formation/originating in
(d) carcinoma	_____	4. membranes of CNS
(e) chondr/o	_____	5. striated muscle
(f) -genic	_____	6. condition of growth (increase of cells)
(g) -ic	_____	7. pertaining to stopping/controlling
(h) -ist	_____	8. pertaining to affinity for/acting on
(i) leiomy/o	_____	9. gland
(j) melan/o	_____	10. cancer (general term)
(k) meningi/o	_____	11. cancer/tumour (medical term)
(l) meta-	_____	12. cartilage
(m) neo-	_____	13. tumour/swelling (benign or malignant)
(n) -oma	_____	14. malignant tumour of epithelium
(o) onc/o	_____	15. malignant tumour of supporting tissue
(p) -plasia	_____	16. specialist
(q) rhabdomy/o	_____	17. smooth muscle
(r) sarcomat/o	_____	18. pigment
(s) -static	_____	19. new
(t) -tropic	_____	20. backward

Score

20

Test 19B

Write the meaning of:

- (a) fibrosarcoma (fibr/o – fibre/fibrous)
- (b) gastric adenocarcinoma (gastr/o – stomach)
- (c) hepatocellular carcinoma (hepat/o – liver)
- (d) anaplastic thyroid carcinoma (thyr/o – thyroid)
- (e) bronchogenic carcinoma (bronch/o – bronchus)

Score

5

Test 19C

Build words that mean:

- (a) malignant tumour of lymph (use sarc/o)
- (b) benign tumour of cartilage
- (c) a malignant tumour originating in bone (use sarc/o)
- (d) condition of a new growth of cells
- (e) the treatment of tumours

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

This page intentionally left blank

Anatomical position

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 20 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to the anatomical position
- build medical words relating to regions and positions in the body
- associate medical terms with their anatomical position
- understand medical abbreviations relating to anatomical positions
- visualize and name the planes of the body.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

epi-	above/upon/on
hypo-	below/under

Roots/Combining forms

bucc/o	cheek
cardi/o	heart
cephal/o	head
chondr/o	cartilage
cost/o	rib
crani/o	cranium/skull
derm/o	skin
faci/o	face
-ganglion	ganglion
gastr/o	stomach
hepat/o	liver
ili/o	hip/ilium/flank
mamm/o	breast/mammary gland
nas/o	nose
or/o	mouth
ot/o	ear
placent/o	placenta
stern/o	sternum
ven/o	vein
vertebr/o	vertebra/spine

Suffixes

-ac	pertaining to
-al	pertaining to
-ary	pertaining to
-iac	pertaining to
-ic	pertaining to
-ous	pertaining to/of the nature of
-ver(ted)	turned

Anatomical position

In this unit we will examine a selection of terms that refer to the position of organs and tissues within the body. Many of these terms are also used to indicate the position of injuries, pain, disease and surgical operations.

The **anatomical position** of the body (Fig. 90) is a reference system that all doctors and medical texts use when describing body components. We always refer to position in the patient's body as if he/she were standing upright with arms at the sides and palms of the hands facing forward, head erect and eyes looking forward.

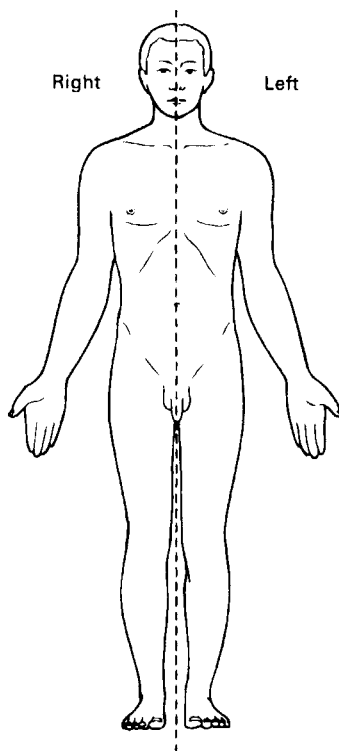


Figure 90 The anatomical position

With the body in the anatomical position we can draw an imaginary line down the middle of the body (Fig. 90). This is called the **midline** or **median line** and it bisects the body into right and left sides. Note that right and left refer to the sides of the patient in the anatomical position, not those of the observer.

Directions

We can now see how the imaginary midline can be used to indicate directions when a body is in the anatomical position. Parts that lie nearer to the median line of the body than other parts are described as **medial** to that part. Any part that lies further away is said to be **lateral** to the first part (Fig. 91). To summarize:

Medial	pertaining to towards the median line (or midline)
Lateral	pertaining to away from the median line (or midline)

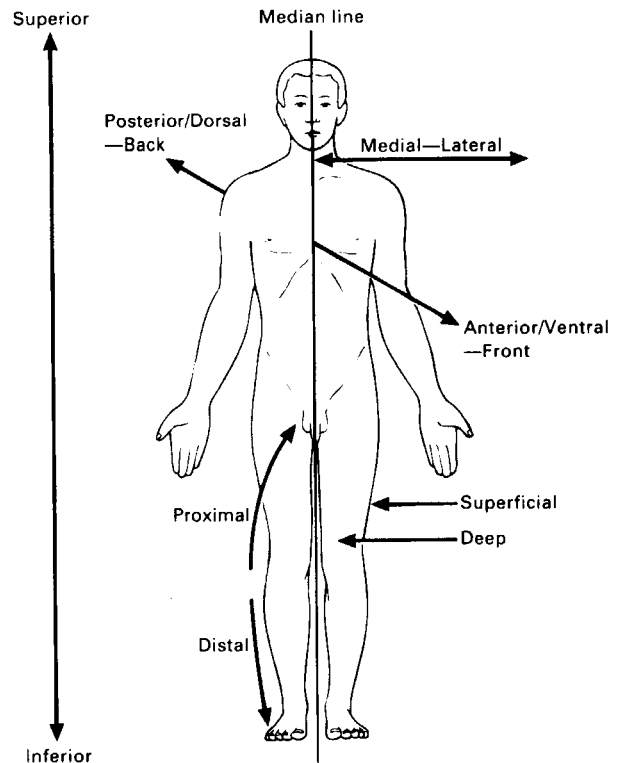


Figure 91 Anatomical directions

Other directions can also be seen in Figure 91.

Superior	towards the head, upper
Inferior	away from the head, lower
Anterior (ventral)	front
Posterior (dorsal)	back
Proximal	pertaining to near point of attachment or point of origin
Distal	pertaining to further from point of attachment or origin
Superficial	pertaining to near the surface of the body
Deep	away from the surface of the body



WORD EXERCISE 1

Using the information in Figure 91, complete the following sentences by deleting the incorrect word:

- The eyes are superior/inferior to the mouth.
- The mouth is superior/inferior to the nose.

- (c) The ear is medial/lateral to the eye
- (d) The nostril is medial/lateral to the eye.
- (e) The umbilicus lies on the anterior/posterior surface of the abdomen.
- (f) The vertebrae lie close to the dorsal/ventral surface of the body.
- (g) The wrist is proximal/distal to the elbow.
- (h) The ankles are proximal/distal to the toes.
- (i) The ribs are superficial/deep to the lungs.

These terms can also be applied to organ systems and tissues within the body. They too are described as if they are in the anatomical position, e.g. the digestive system (Fig. 92).

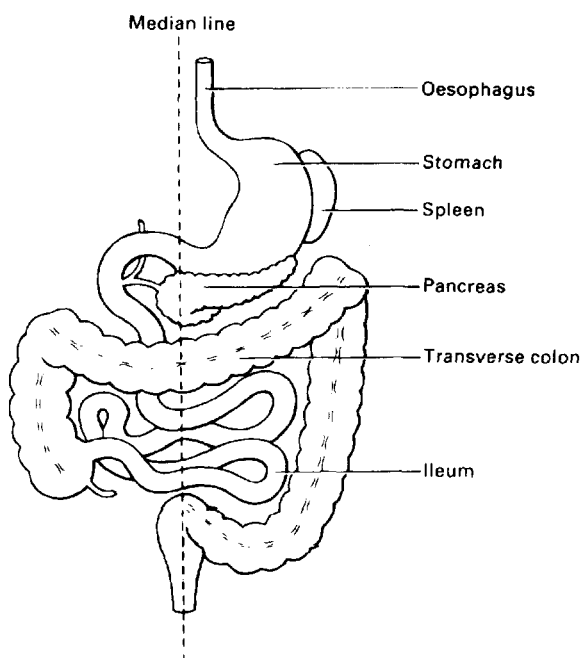


Figure 92 Digestive system position

- (d) The oesophagus is proximal/distal to the stomach.
- (e) The transverse colon is anterior/posterior to the ileum.
- (f) The ileum is dorsal/ventral to the transverse colon.

Regions

With the body in the anatomical position, it can be divided into the cephalic, thoracic, abdominal and pelvic regions (Fig. 93).

Each of these regions can be subdivided; the simplest example is perhaps the division of the abdominopelvic region into quadrants (Fig. 94).

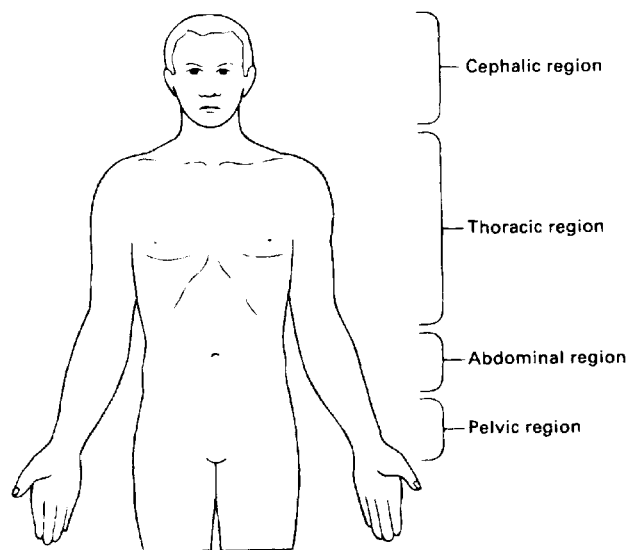


Figure 93 Regions of the trunk and head

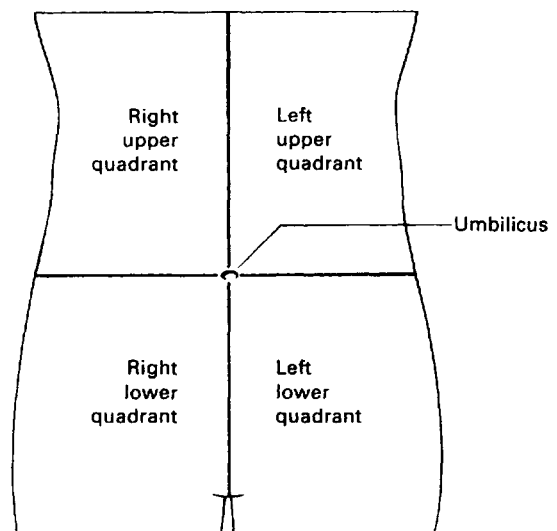


Figure 94 Abdominopelvic region (quadrants)



WORD EXERCISE 2

Using information from Figure 92, complete the following sentences by deleting the incorrect word:

- (a) The pancreas is superior/inferior to the stomach.
- (b) The oesophagus is superior/inferior to the stomach.
- (c) The stomach is medial/lateral to the spleen.

Doctors and health personnel often use this simple system to describe the position of abdominopelvic pain. The quadrants are formed by imaginary vertical and horizontal lines through the umbilicus. A more complex method is to divide the abdominopelvic region into nine regions (Fig. 95).

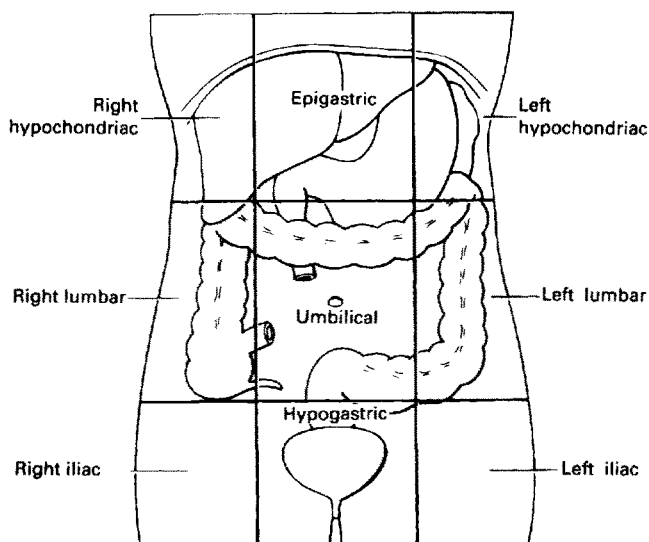


Figure 95 Abdominopelvic region (nine regions)



WORD EXERCISE 3

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (a) hypo/chondr/iac region
(The word refers to the cartilage of the rib-cage.)
- (b) epi/gastr/ic region
- (c) ili/ac region

The cephalic regions and the upper and lower extremities can also be subdivided into regions. These are examined in the next two exercises. Use your Exercise Guide to find the meaning of unfamiliar words.



WORD EXERCISE 4

Examine Figure 96 and match the regions listed in Column A with a number from the diagram:

Column A

Number

(a) cephalic region

(b) cranial region

(c) facial region

(d) otic region

(e) oral region

(f) mammary region

(g) nasal region

(h) buccal region

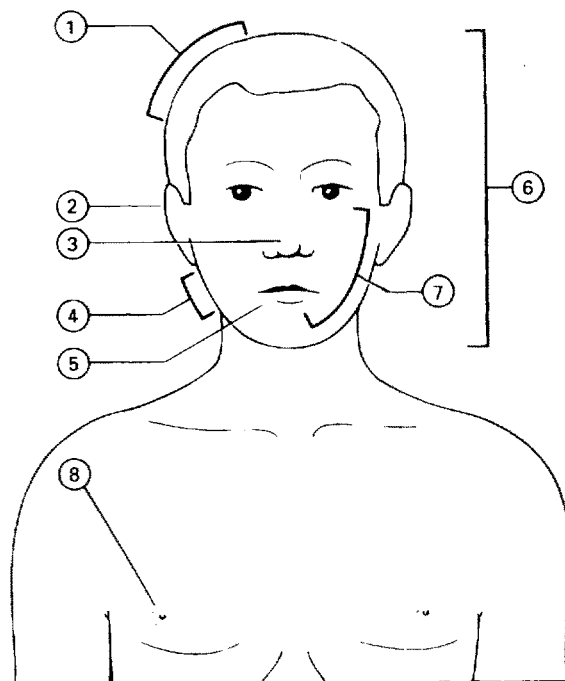


Figure 96 Regions of the head and thorax



WORD EXERCISE 5

Look at Figures 97 and 98 and label the regions of each limb by selecting an appropriate region from the list below. The first region has been labelled for you.

hallux region

great toe

crural region

leg

pedal region	foot
digital/phalangeal region	toes
patellar region	knee
femoral region	thigh
tarsal region	ankle
axillary region	armpit
palmar/volar region	palm
antebrachial region	forearm
digital/phalangeal region	fingers
brachial region	arm
pollex region	thumb
carpal region	wrist

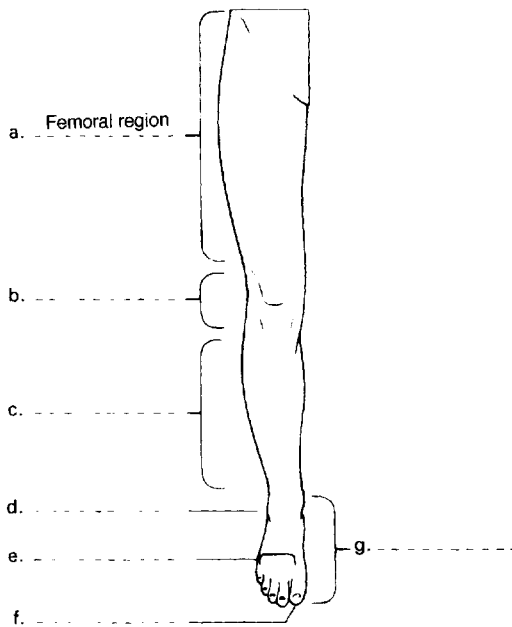


Figure 97 Leg regions

Planes

Planes are imaginary flat surfaces that form a reference system indicating the direction in which organs have been cut, drawn or photographed. When a body structure is studied, it is often viewed in section and the section is formed from a cut made in relation to one of the planes.

Imagine a vertical cut made along the midline from the front of the body to the back dividing it into right and

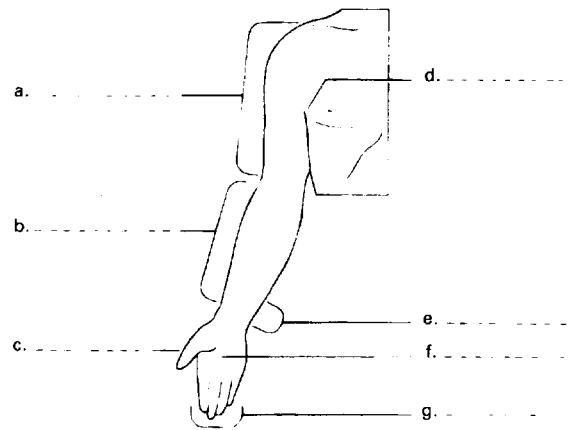


Figure 98 Arm regions

left halves. The flat surfaces formed in each cut half illustrate the **median** or **midsagittal plane**. Figure 99 shows the direction of the cut that forms the midsagittal plane. Figure 100 shows a midsagittal section through the brain when cut in this plane and viewed from the side.

Any plane parallel to the midsagittal or median plane is called a **parasagittal** or **paramedian plane** (*para* meaning besides) (Fig. 101).

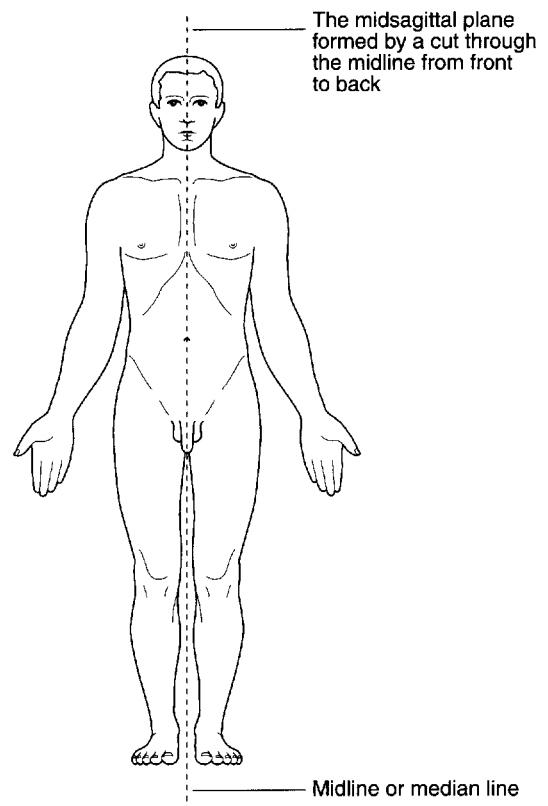


Figure 99 The midsagittal or median plane

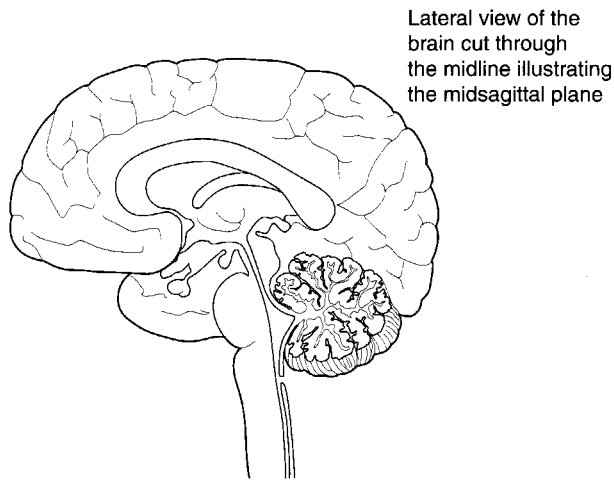


Figure 100 A midsagittal section through the brain

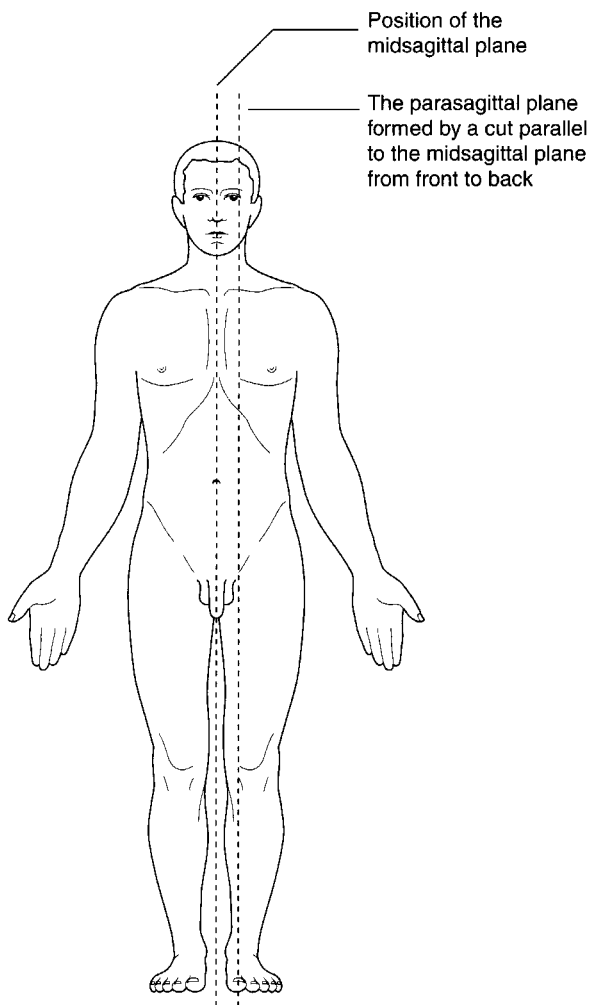


Figure 101 The parasagittal or paramedian plane

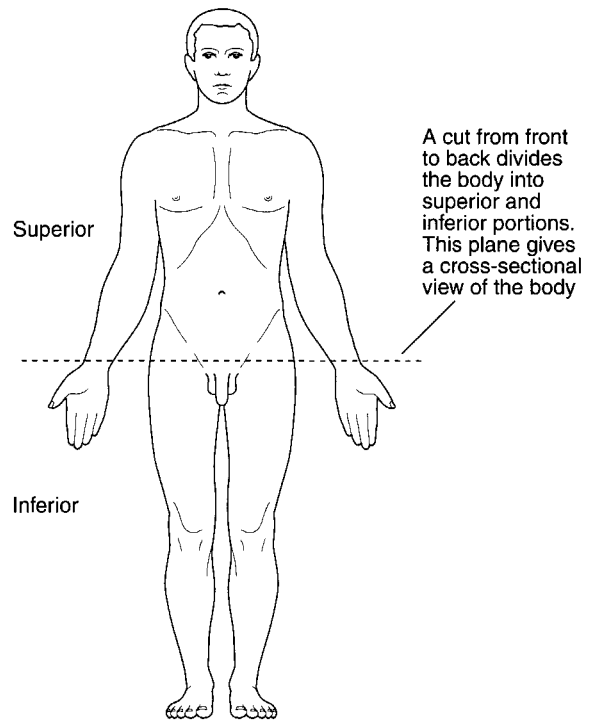


Figure 102 The horizontal or transverse plane

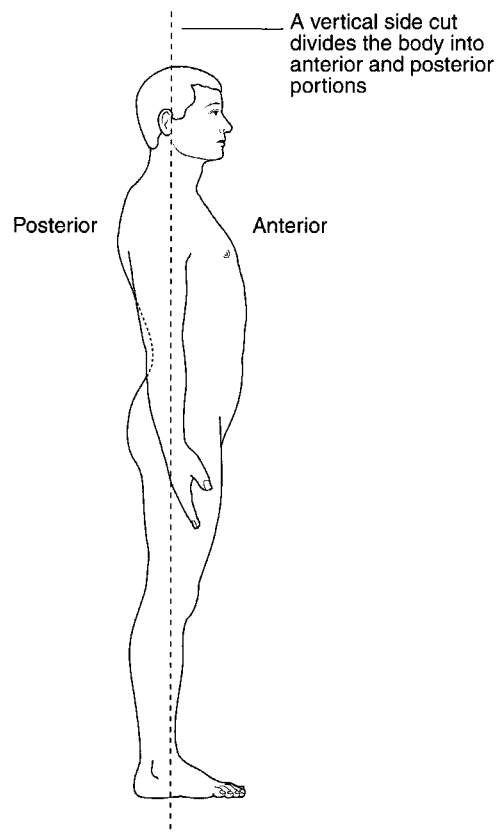


Figure 103 The frontal or coronal plane

Two other planes are shown in Figure 102 and Figure 103. A horizontal cut illustrates the **horizontal** or **transverse plane** (Fig. 102). This is the equivalent of a cross-section through the body dividing it into superior and inferior portions.

A vertical side cut divides the body into anterior and posterior portions at right angles to the sagittal plane and illustrates the **frontal** or **coronal plane** (Fig. 103).

Figure 104 summarizes the three main planes of the body.

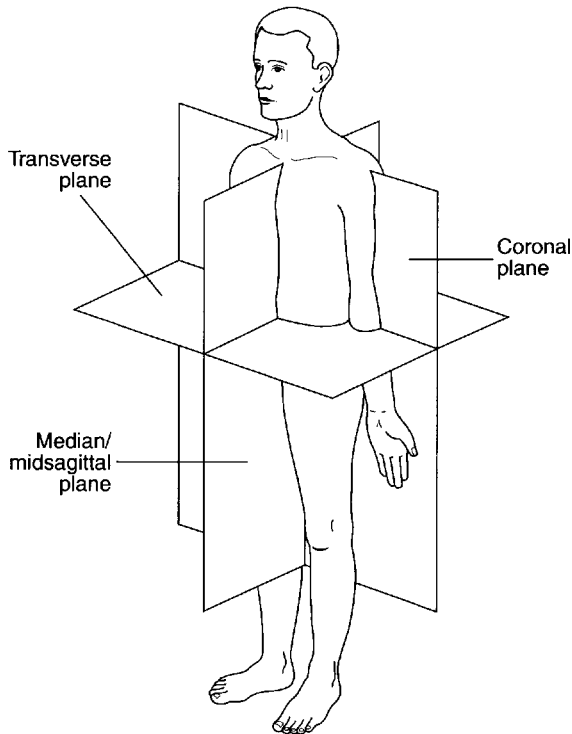


Figure 104 The planes of the body



WORD EXERCISE 6

Match a plane in Column A to a description in Column C by inserting a number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) midsagittal plane	1. divides the body into superior and inferior portions
(b) transverse plane	2. a plane parallel to the median plane
(c) frontal plane	3. divides the body into right and left halves
(d) parasagittal plane	4. divides the body into anterior and posterior portions

Locating parts of the body

There are a large number of locative prefixes that act as prepositions when placed in front of word roots. These tell us about the position of structures within the body. Use the list of locative prefixes below to complete the next two exercises.

Locative prefixes

Above	epi-, hyper-, super-, supra-
Across	trans-
After	dorso-, post-
Against	anti-, contra-
Around	circum-, peri-
Away	ab-, apo-, ef-
Back	dorsi-, dorso-, post-, re-, retro-
Backward	opistho-, retro (also means back/behind)
Before/front	ante-, pre-, pro-, ventri-
Below	hypo-, infra-, sub-
Behind/after	dorsi-, dorso-, post-
Beside	para-
Between	inter-
Down	de-
Front/in front	pro-, ventr/o
In/inside	em-, en-, endo-, in-, intra-
Left	laevo- (Am. levo-)
Middle	medi-, meso-
Out/outside	ec-, ect-, ef-, exo-, extra-
Right	dextro-
Side	later-
Through	dia-, per-
To/towards/near	ad-, af-
Under	infra-, sub-
Upon	epi-
Within	intra-



WORD EXERCISE 7

Use the locative prefix list to fill in each blank with an appropriate prefix:

- (a) The region beside the nose nasal region
- (b) Disc between vertebrae vertebral disc
- (c) Region upon the stomach gastric region
- (d) Pertaining to after a ganglion ganglionic

- (e) Condition of right _____ cardia
displacement of heart
- (f) Nerve below orbit of eye _____ orbital nerve



WORD EXERCISE 8

Use your Exercise Guide and the locative prefix list to find the meaning of:

- (a) peri/cardi/al _____
- (b) intra/ven/ous _____
- (c) inter/cost/al _____
- (d) retro/verted uterus _____
- (e) supra/hepat/ic _____
- (f) infra/stern/al _____
- (g) pre/ganglion/ic _____
- (h) extra/placent/al _____
- (i) sub/epiderm/al _____

Some of the locative prefixes we have listed are incorporated into words that indicate the direction of movement of parts of the body. Before noting some examples we need to describe the main actions of muscles.

Muscles that bend limbs by decreasing the angles between articulating bones are called **flexors** and those that increase the angles after they have flexed are called **extensors**. The action of flexors is known as **flexion** and that of extensors, **extension**. Examples of prefixes that indicate direction of movements at joints are shown in bold:

Dorsiflexion	the movement that bends the foot back (upwards) from the anatomical position (<i>dorsi-</i> meaning back)
Plantar flexion	the movement that bends the foot downwards from the anatomical position (<i>plantar</i> meaning pertaining to the sole of the foot)
Abduction	the movement of a part away from the midline (<i>ab-</i> meaning away from).
Adduction	the movement of a part towards the midline (<i>ad-</i> meaning to)
Inversion	the movement of the sole inward so the soles face each other (<i>in-</i> meaning in/inward)
Eversion	the movement of the sole in the outwards, so the soles face away from each other (<i>e-</i> meaning out from)

Circumduction	the movement in which the distal ends of a bone move in a circle (<i>circum-</i> meaning around)
Protraction	the movement of a part forward/in front e.g. the jaw (<i>pro-</i> meaning in front/before)
Retraction	the movement of a protracted part back (<i>re-</i> meaning back /contrary)
Elevation	the upward movement of a body part e.g. the jaw
Depression	the downward movement of a body part (<i>de-</i> meaning down/from)



CASE HISTORY 20

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history.

To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on an unusual fracture of the tibia; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

An unusual fracture of the tibia

A 13-year-old male was referred to the Orthopaedic Department after sustaining a hyperextension injury to his right knee during a school football match. He had immediate onset of pain and swelling during the first few hours following the injury. On admission he could not bear weight on the knee and flexion and extension exacerbated the pain. His medical record indicated no previous injury to his right lower extremity and he appeared to be in good health.

Examination of the right lower extremity revealed a knee effusion with soft tissue swelling and diffuse tenderness over the **proximal tibial** growth plate. There were **superficial** skin lacerations on the **anterior** and **medial** surface of his right thigh. He could not **dorsiflex** or **evert** his foot and sensation in the **lateral calf** and foot was reduced. Vascular insufficiency in the injured extremity was assessed; the popliteal, dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial pulses were palpable with good **distal** refilling.

Lateral and **anteroposterior radiographs** demonstrated a proximal tibial fracture classified as a Salter-Harris type III. The intra-articular fracture extended along the articular surface into the medial and lateral plateaus. The epiphyseal plate was anteriorly displaced on the metaphysis.

He underwent open reduction and internal fixation with a 3mm Steinmann pin; recovery was uneventful and his articular surface was preserved.

WORD HELP

- calf** fleshy back part of leg below the knee
- dorsalis pedis pulse** pulse on the dorsal foot (the upper part of the foot)
- effusion** a fluid discharge into a part/escape of fluid into an enclosed space
- flexion** decreasing the angle between two bones (here bending the leg)
- epiphyseal** pertaining to the epiphysis, the end of a long bone separated from the main shaft by a cartilage plate
- evert** turn the sole of the foot outward at the ankle joint
- extension** increasing the angle between two bones (here straightening the leg)
- exacerbated** increased severity of symptoms
- hyperextension** forcible over-extending of a limb (here extending the knee joint so far that the lower leg bends forwards)
- intra-articular** within a joint or inside the cavity of a joint
- laceration** a tear in a tissue
- lower extremity** a leg (hip, thigh, leg, ankle and foot taken as one structure)
- metaphysis** the wider part at the end of the main shaft of a long bone adjacent to the epiphysis
- open reduction** an operation that exposes bones for restoration of displaced tissue
- orthopaedic** pertaining to orthopaedics (study of the locomotor/movement system)
- palpable** able to be felt using light pressure with the fingers
- plateau** flat region (here the expanded end of the tibia that articulates with the femur)
- popliteal pulse** pertaining to the pulse behind the knee
- posterior tibial** pulse in the foot posterior to the lower end of the tibia
- radiograph** here meaning an X-ray picture/recording
- Salter-Harris type III** classification system for growth plate injuries
- tibial** pertaining to the tibia
- vascular** pertaining to blood vessels

(g) distal

(h) anteroposterior

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to anatomical parts and positions of the body:

Anter/o	front/anterior
Axill/o	armpit
Brachi/o	arm
Bucc/o	cheek
Carp/o	carpal/wrist bones
Cephal/o	head
Crani/o	cranium
Crur/o	leg
Digit/o	finger/toe
Faci/o	face
Femor/o	femur/thigh
Hallux	great toe
Ili/o	ilium/flank
Infer/o	towards the feet/inferior
Later/o	side
Mamm/o	breast/mammary gland
Nas/o	nose
Or/o	mouth
Ot/o	ear
Palm/o	palm
Patell/o	patella/knee cap
Ped/o	foot
Phalang/o	phalange/finger/toe
Pollex	thumb
Poster/o	back/posterior
Super/o	towards the head/superior
Tars/o	tarsus/ankle
Vol/o	palm

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case history without using your dictionary lists:

(a) proximal

(b) superficial

(c) anterior

(d) medial

(e) dorsiflex

(f) lateral

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to anatomical position are listed below. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

ant	anterior
inf	inferior

Abbreviations (Contd.)

lat	lateral
LLQ	left lower quadrant
LUQ	left upper quadrant
med	medial
pos	position
post	posterior
prox	proximal
RLQ	right lower quadrant
RUQ	right upper quadrant
sup	superior

NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK



WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

ab-	.....
ad-	.....
af-	.....
ante	.....
anti-	.....
apo-	.....
circum-	.....
contra-	.....
dextro-	.....
dia-	.....
dorso-	.....
ec-	.....
ect-	.....

ef-	.....
em-	.....
en-	.....
endo-	.....
exo-	.....
extra-	.....
in-	.....
infra-	.....
inter-	.....
intra-	.....
laevo- (Am. levo-)	.....
medi-	.....
meso-	.....
opistho-	.....
para-	.....
per-	.....
peri-	.....
pre-	.....
pro-	.....
retro-	.....
super-	.....
supra-	.....
trans-	.....
ventro-	.....

Combining forms of word roots

anter/o	.....
axill/o	.....
brachi/o	.....
bucc/o	.....

cardi/o _____

carp/o _____

cephal/o _____

chondr/o _____

cost/o _____

crani/o _____

crur/o _____

derm/o _____

digit/o _____

faci/o _____

femor/o _____

-ganglion _____

gastr/o _____

hallux _____

hepat/o _____

ili/o _____

infer/o _____

later/o _____

mamm/o _____

nas/o _____

or/o _____

ot/o _____

palm/o _____

patell/o _____

ped/o _____

phalang/o _____

placent/o _____

pollex _____

poster/o _____

stern/o _____

super/o _____

ven/o _____

tars/o _____

verteb/o _____

vol/o _____

Suffixes

-ac _____

-al _____

-ary _____

-ia _____

-iac _____

-ic _____

-ous _____

-ver(ted) _____

> NOW TRY THE SELF-ASSESSMENT <



SELF-ASSESSMENT

Test 20A

Combining forms relating to parts of body

Match each combining form in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) abdomin/o	_____	1. head
(b) axill/o	_____	2. leg
(c) brachi/o	_____	3. great toe
(d) carp/o	_____	4. ankle/tarsus
(e) cephal/o	_____	5. palm (i)

Column A	Column B	Column C	Column A	Column B	Column C
(f) crani/o	_____	6. palm (ii)	(f) ec-	_____	6. side
(g) crur/o	_____	7. knee	(g) en-	_____	7. around (i)
(h) digit/o	_____	8. finger/toe (i)	(h) epi-	_____	8. around (ii)
(i) femor/o	_____	9. finger/toe (ii)	(i) infra-	_____	9. away
(j) hallux	_____	10. pelvis	(j) inter-	_____	10. before/in front of
(k) ili/o	_____	11. thumb	(k) laevo- (Am. levo-)	_____	11. beside
(l) palm/o	_____	12. thigh/femur	(l) later-	_____	12. towards
(m) patell/o	_____	13. abdomen	(m) para-	_____	13. after/behind
(n) ped/o	_____	14. skull/cranium	(n) per-	_____	14. right
(o) pelv/i	_____	15. thorax	(o) peri-	_____	15. upon
(p) phalang/o	_____	16. foot	(p) post-	_____	16. in
(q) pollex	_____	17. arm	(q) pre-	_____	17. above
(r) tars/o	_____	18. armpit	(r) retro-	_____	18. left
(s) thorac/o	_____	19. ilium/flank	(s) supra-	_____	19. below
(t) vol/o	_____	20. wrist	(t) trans-	_____	20. out

Score

20

Score

20

Test 20B

Locative prefixes

Match each locative prefix from Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) ab-	_____	1. through (i)
(b) ad-	_____	2. through (ii)
(c) circum-	_____	3. backward/behind
(d) dextro-	_____	4. across
(e) dia-	_____	5. between

Test 20C

Write the meaning of:

- (a) interphalangeal _____
- (b) dextroversion _____
- (c) retrobuccal _____
- (d) supracostal _____
- (e) intranasal _____

Score

5

Test 20D

Build words that mean:

- (a) pertaining to the side
(b) a turning towards the left
(c) pertaining to after a ganglion
(d) pertaining to below the liver
(e) pertaining to across the skin

Score

5

Check answers to Self-Assessment Tests on page 299.

This page intentionally left blank

Pharmacology and microbiology

Objectives

Once you have completed Unit 21 you should be able to:

- understand the meaning of medical words relating to pharmacology and microbiology
- deduce the use or action of drugs from their classification
- understand medical abbreviations associated with pharmacology and microbiology.

Exercise Guide

Use this list of word components and their meanings to complete the word exercises in this unit.

Prefixes

a-	without
an-	without
anti-	against
dia-	through
neo-	new
oxy-	quick
retro	back/backward

Roots/Combining forms

acid/o	acid
aem-	blood
aesthet/o	sensation/sensitivity
anxi/o	anxiety
algēs/i/o	sense of pain
bacill/o	bacillus/bacilli
bacteri/o	bacterium/bacteria
bi/o	life/living
bronch/i/o	bronchus/bronchial tubes
cocc/o	coccus/cocci
cycl/o	ciliary body
cyt/o	cell
dynam/o	force/power (of movement)
epilept/o	epilepsy
esthet/o (Am.)	sensation/sensitivity
fibrin/o	fibrin (a protein that forms the fibres of blood clots)
fung/i/o	fungus
gonad/o	gonads/reproductive organs
haem/o	blood
hem/o (Am.)	blood
helminth/h/o	worms
hypn/o	sleep
immun/o	immune/immunity
kerat/o	epidermis/cornea

kinet/o	motion/movement
lact/i/o	milk
muc/o	mucus
oestr/o	oestrogen (a female sex-hormone)/oestrus
(Am. estr/o)	drug
pharmac/o	growth
plas/m/o	itching
prurit/o	mind
psych/o	rhythm
(r)rhythm/o	sepsis/infection
septic/o	staphylococcus/staphylococci
staphylococc/o	spasm
spasm/o/d	spirillum/spirilla
spirill/o	streptococcus/streptococci
streptococc/o	thyroid
thyroid/o	labour/birth
toc/o	poison/poisonous to
tox/ic/o	nourish/stimulate
troph/o	cough
tuss/i	urine
ur/o	virus/virion
vir/o	

Suffixes

-aemia	condition of blood
-al	pertaining to/type of drug
-ase	an enzyme
-cidal	pertaining to killing
-cide	agent that kills/killing
-form	having the form/structure of
-gen	precursor/agent that produces
-genic	pertaining to formation
-gnosis	process of judgment/knowledge
-ia	condition of
-ic	type of drug/pertaining to
-in	non-specific suffix indicating a chemical
-ine	substance thought to be derived from ammonia
-ist	specialist
-ite	end-product
-ity	state/condition
-ive	pertaining to/type of drug
-logist	specialist who studies
-logy	study of
-lytic	drug that breaks down .../pertaining to breakdown
-oid	resembling
-ose	carbohydrate/sugar/starch
-osis	abnormal condition/disease of
-plegic	drug that paralyses/condition of paralysis
-rrhea (Am.)	excessive discharge/flow
-rrhoea	excessive discharge/flow
-static	pertaining to stopping/agent that stops
-tic	pertaining to/type of drug
-uria	condition of urine
-y	process/condition

Pharmacology

Pharmacology is the science that deals with the study of drugs. By drugs we mean medicinal substances that can be used to treat, prevent or diagnose disease and illness. Research into the properties and potential use of substances showing physiological activity has enabled the pharmaceutical industry to market new and more effective drugs.

Root

Pharmac

(From a Greek word **pharmakon** meaning drug.)

Combining forms **Pharmac/o**



WORD EXERCISE 1

Without using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

- (a) **pharmacology** _____
- (b) **pharmacologist** _____
- (c) **pharmacopsychosis** _____

There are several specialisms related to pharmacology that are not completely understood from their name:

Pharmacognosy

the study of (*gnos-* knowledge of) crude drugs of vegetable and animal origin.

Pharmacokinetics

the study of the way drugs are absorbed, metabolized and excreted, i.e. what the body does to the drug and how it moves through the body.

Pharmacodynamics

the study of the action of drugs, i.e. what the drug does to the body.

Pharmacy

the study of the process of preparing and dispensing medicinal drugs or a place where drugs are compounded or dispensed.

Therapeutics

the branch of medicine that deals with the treatment of disease. Treatment can be **palliative** i.e. alleviates symptoms or **curative**. In common usage, therapeutics refers mainly to the use of drugs to treat disease.

Chemotherapy

the treatment of disease using chemical agents (a main type of treatment for cancer).

Toxicology

the study of poisons and other toxic substances and their effect on the body.

Naming drugs

Drugs are known by several different names.

The brand, trade or propriety name

Following extensive research and development, pharmaceutical companies assign brand names to their products for marketing purposes. Each drug and its name is the exclusive property of the company with patent rights to its manufacture. The patent will expire after a fixed time (usually 17 years) allowing time for development costs to be recouped. When the patent has expired the drug may be manufactured by other companies under different brand names or under the drug's generic name.

The generic name

Each drug has an official non-propriety or generic name. This name is assigned to it in its early stage of development and is often a description of its chemical composition or class. A generic drug may be manufactured by any number of companies under different brand names once the patent has expired.

A recent EEC directive requires the use of a recommended International Non-propriety Name (rINN) for medicinal substances. Many British Approved Names (BANs) have been changed or modified to comply with the rINN directive.

The chemical name

This name indicates a drug formula. It is used by a manufacturer or pharmacist when making up a formulation.

Authoritative information about the use, structure, manufacture and the dosage of medicinal drugs is documented in large reference texts known as a *pharmacopoeia*.



WORD EXERCISE 2

In pharmacology certain suffixes are used to denote types of substance:

Suffix	Meaning	Examples
-ose	a type of sugar	glucose/maltose
-ase	indicates an enzyme	amylase/sucrase

Suffix	Meaning	Examples
-ine	substance derived from ammonia	amine/alanine
-ite	end product	metabolite
-gen	precursor/agent that produces	trypsinogen
-in	non-specific suffix denoting a chemical agent	tristerin
-tic	denotes a type of medicinal drug	mucolytic

Match a biochemical name from Column A with a description in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) lip/ase	1. a sugar
(b) rib/ose	2. chemical that produces an action
(c) ser/ine	3. an enzyme
(d) progesto/gen	4. medicinal agent that dilates the pupil
(e) mydria/tic	5. chemical related to ammonia

Drug classification

Drugs can be classified by their therapeutic use or action. Exercises 3–14 list the classifications of drugs used to treat disorders associated with the body systems we have studied in this book.

Note. The suffixes -al, -ic, -ive and -tic are all used to mean *pertaining to* but they can all be used in pharmacology to indicate a type of drug.

The action of a drug can often be deduced from its classification. To do this we split the word classification into its components, find their meaning and then try to deduce an action or use. The technique can be practised in Word Exercises 3–14.



WORD EXERCISE 3

Many classifications have the prefix **anti-** meaning against. Using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

- (a) **anti**/bacteri/al
- (b) **anti**/bio/tic
- (c) **anti**/fung/al
- (d) **anti**/vir/al
- (e) **anti**/prurit/ic

In the following examples the *i* of the prefix **anti-** is dropped for roots beginning with a vowel or the letter h.

- (f) **ant**/acid
- (g) **ant**/helmint/ic



WORD EXERCISE 4

Several drug classifications have the prefix **an-** meaning without. Using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

- (a) **an**/algae/ic
- (b) **an**/aesthe/tic
(Am. an/esthe/tic)

Word Exercises 5–14 list many types of drug associated with systems studied in this book.

Drug classifications associated with the digestive system



WORD EXERCISE 5

Without using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

- (a) anti/diarrhoe/al
- (b) anti/spasmod/ic
(acts on intestines)

Others include:

laxatives

promote evacuation of the bowels

H₂-receptor antagonists

prevent the secretion of acid by the gastric mucosa (lining of the stomach) and promote the healing of ulcers

Drug classifications associated with the breathing system



WORD EXERCISE 6

Using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

- (a) muco/lytic
- (b) anti/tuss/ive
- (c) broncho/dilator
(dilate means to widen, not listed in the Exercise Guide)

Others include:

antihistamines

used to counteract the effects of histamine, a chemical released during allergic reactions such as asthma.

corticosteroids

used to reduce inflammation. Here they are used for prophylaxis in the treatment of asthma by reducing inflammation in the bronchial mucosa (lining).

decongestants

reduce the feeling of congestion in the nose.

diuretics

used to promote the excretion of urine, thereby relieving the oedema (Am. edema) of heart failure.

inotropics

used to increase or decrease the force of contraction of heart muscle (myocardium).

sympathomimetics

these drugs mimic the action of the sympathetic nervous system and are used to raise blood pressure.

Drug classifications associated with the urinary system

anti-diuretic hormone

a hormone that acts on the kidney stimulating reabsorption of water thereby reducing the formation of urine.

diuretics

promote the excretion of urine.

uricosurics

used to increase the excretion of uric acid in urine thereby relieving the symptoms of gout.

xanthine-oxidase inhibitors

used for the palliative treatment of gout.

Drug classifications associated with the cardiovascular system and blood



WORD EXERCISE 7

Using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

- (a) fibrino/lytic
- (b) anti/fibrino/lytic
- (c) anti/-a/rrhythm/ic
- (d) haemo/static
(Am. hemo/static)

Others include:

anticoagulants

used to prevent clotting/coagulation of blood.

antiplatelet drugs

decrease platelet aggregation in arteries, thereby inhibiting clot formation.

antihypertensives

used to treat hypertension (high blood pressure).

Drug classifications associated with the nervous system



WORD EXERCISE 8

Using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

- (a) hypno/tic
- (b) anxio/lytic
- (c) anti/epilep/tic
- (d) anti/psycho/tic

Others include:

antidepressants

used to prevent or relieve depression.

CNS stimulants

drugs that have limited use for treating narcolepsy (a recurrent, uncontrollable desire to sleep).

anti-emetics

used to prevent vomiting (emesis).

opioid analgesics

used to relieve moderate to severe pain particularly of visceral origin (opioid – refers to a synthetic narcotic resembling but not derived from opium).

Drug classifications associated with the eye**WORD EXERCISE 9**

Using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

(a) cyclo/plegic

Others include:

eye lotions

for irrigation of the eye.

topical anti-infective preparations

antibacterials, antifungals and antivirals applied directly to the eye.

topical corticosteroids

anti-inflammatory steroids applied directly to the eye.

mydriatics

used to dilate the pupil.

local anaesthetics (Am. anesthetics)

used to reduce sensation in the eye.

miotics

drugs used to treat glaucoma that narrow the pupil.

*Drug classifications associated with the ear***topical astringents**

drugs used to treat inflammation and dry up secretion of fluid.

topical anti-infective preparations

antibacterials and antifungals applied directly to the external ear for treatment of otitis externa.

*Drug classifications associated with the mouth and nose***oral antihistamines**

drugs that reduce the symptoms of histamine, here used for treatment of nasal allergy.

systemic nasal decongestants

drugs used for symptomatic relief in chronic nasal obstruction.

topical decongestants

drugs applied directly to the nose as drops or spray to relieve congestion.

Drug classifications associated with the skin**WORD EXERCISE 10**

Using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

(a) anti/prurit/ic

(b) kerato/lytic

Others include:

vehicles

inert substances added to drugs to give a suitable consistency for transfer into the body; vehicles do not possess therapeutic properties.

emollients

agents that soften or soothe the skin.

desloughing agents

agents that remove dead tissue from a wound.

*Drug classifications associated with the musculoskeletal system***non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)**

In full doses these have analgesic and anti-inflammatory effects. They are used to treat painful inflammatory conditions such as rheumatic disease; aspirin is a familiar example.

relaxants

drugs that block the neuromuscular junction and produce relaxation of muscles, they are widely used in anaesthesia.

uricosurics

drugs that promote the excretion of uric acid in the urine thereby relieving the symptoms of gout.

Drug classifications associated with the reproductive system**WORD EXERCISE 11**

Using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

(a) oxy/toc/ic

(b) gonado/troph/in

Without using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

(c) anti/-oestro/gen
(Am. anti/estro/gen)

Others include:

contraceptives

used to prevent conception i.e. the fertilization of an egg by a sperm. Family planning pills contain sex hormones that inhibit the release of eggs from the ovary thereby preventing a pregnancy.

prostaglandins

used to induce abortion, augment labour and to minimize blood loss from the placental site.

sex hormones

used for hormone replacement therapy (HRT). For example, menopausal symptoms are relieved by small doses of the female sex hormone oestrogen. The male sex hormones called androgens are used for replacement therapy in castrated males.

Drug classifications associated with the endocrine system

(This section deals with examples of drug classifications other than those that act on the reproductive system.)



WORD EXERCISE 12

Without using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

- (a) anti/thyroid _____

Others include:

antidiabetics

used for non-insulin dependent diabetes, act against diabetes by increasing insulin secretion.

insulins

insulin is a hormone that lowers blood glucose in patients with diabetes mellitus. Many different forms of insulin e.g. short, intermediate and long-acting are available for injection.

corticosteroids

steroids produced by the adrenal cortex or their synthetic equivalents used for replacement therapy when secretion by the adrenal glands is insufficient.

human growth hormones

growth hormone of human origin (somatotrophin) has been used to stimulate growth in patients of short stature. This has been replaced by somatotropin, a biosynthetic human growth hormone which has a similar effect.

Drug classifications associated with oncology

Drugs used in oncology aim to prevent the replication of cancer cells and destroy them by interfering with their metabolism. The process of using drugs in this way to destroy tumours is called **chemotherapy**.



WORD EXERCISE 13

Using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

- (a) cyto/tox/ic _____
- (b) anti/neo/plas/tic _____

Others include:

alkylating drugs

damage DNA (genes) and interfere with the replication of cancer cells.

antimetabolites

drugs that combine with and inhibit vital cell enzymes.

vinca alkaloids

drugs originally derived from the plant species *Vinca* that have the ability to directly interrupt the process of cell division.

Drug classifications associated with the immune system

These drugs are used to suppress rejection of transplanted organs in their recipients and treat autoimmune diseases (*auto-* meaning self, **autoimmunity** is an abnormal response of the immune system to the body's own tissues).



WORD EXERCISE 14

Without using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

- (a) immuno/suppressant
(suppress means prevent/stop) _____
- (b) cyto/tox/ic immuno/suppressant _____

Abbreviations

Some common abbreviations related to drug administration are listed below. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

bid.	twice a day
cap.	capsule
disp.	dispense
im.	intramuscular
iv.	intravenous
od	every day
OTC	over the counter (non-prescription drugs)
po	per os, by mouth, orally
prn	when required
qid.	four times a day
tab.	tablet
tid.	three times a day

Often the name of the genus is abbreviated if it is widely used, as in *E. coli* for *Escherichia coli* and *Staph. aureus* for *Staphylococcus aureus*.

The species name of microorganisms is sometimes formed from words that indicate:

their colour	e.g. <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> (from aurum, meaning gold)
the place where they are found	e.g. <i>Staphylococcus epidermidis</i> (the epidermis of the skin)
the disease they cause	e.g. <i>Bacillus anthracis</i> (causes anthrax)
the scientist who studied or named them	e.g. <i>Escherichia coli</i> (after Dr Escherich)

Bacteriology

Bacteria are small single-celled organisms that can only be seen with an optical microscope. There are thousands of different types classified according to their shape, group arrangement, colony characteristics, structure and chemical characteristics. The combining form **bacteri/o** is used to mean bacteria (from Greek *bakterion* meaning staff).

CLASSIFICATION OF BACTERIA USING THE GRAM STAINING REACTION

For more than a century bacteria have been classified using the **Gram** staining reaction named after Christian Gram who devised it in 1884. His method is based upon the ability of bacteria to retain the purple crystal violet-iodine complex when stained and treated with organic solvents:

Gram-positive bacteria (Gram +ve)
retain the stain and appear purple.

Gram-negative bacteria (Gram –ve)
cannot retain the purple dye complex and need to be stained with a red dye before they can be seen with an optical microscope.

CLASSIFICATION BY SHAPE AND GROUPING

Individual bacteria have one of three basic shapes: they are either spherical, cylindrical or spiral. Spherical cells are called **cocci** (singular **coccus**), cylindrical cells **bacilli** (singular **bacillus**) and helical or spiral cells **spirilla** (singular **spirillum**).

The coccus (plural – cocci)

The word coccus comes from a Greek word *kokkos* meaning berry. They are usually round but can be ovoid or flattened on one side when adhering to another cell. Cocci can grow in several different arrangements or groups depending on the plane of cell division and

Microbiology

Microbiology is the study of small organisms (*micro* – small, *bio* – life, *logy* – study of). In the field of health, pathogenic microorganisms such as bacteria, protozoa, fungi and viruses are responsible for infectious disease. Swabs, fluids and tissues taken from patients suspected of having an infection are sent to the microbiology laboratories for analysis. The microbiology laboratory is often part of the pathology department in a large hospital. This section examines words associated with microorganisms.

Microbiology is divided into the following specialities:

Bacteriology	study of bacteria
Mycology	study of fungi
Virology	study of viruses
Protozoology	the study of protozoa

Naming microorganisms

Species of microorganisms are given Latin names according to the binomial (two name) system. The first name denotes the group or **genus** to which the organism belongs and always begins with a capital letter. The second name is the **species** or specific name and this begins with a lower case letter for example:

<i>Salmonella typhi</i>	<i>Salmonella</i> is the genus, <i>typhi</i> the species
<i>Clostridium tetani</i>	<i>Clostridium</i> is the genus, <i>tetani</i> the species

whether the new cells remain together. Each arrangement is typical of a species and contributes to an organism's classification. When a coccus divides in one plane and the two new cells remain together the arrangement is called a **diplococcus**.

When cocci divide repeatedly in one plane and remain together to form a twisted row of cells they are called **streptococci** (*strepto-* from a Greek word meaning twisted, singular streptococcus). Others divide in three planes and remain together in irregular, grape-like patterns; these are called **staphylococci** (*staphylo-* from a Greek word meaning grapes, singular staphylococcus). See Figure 105 for examples:

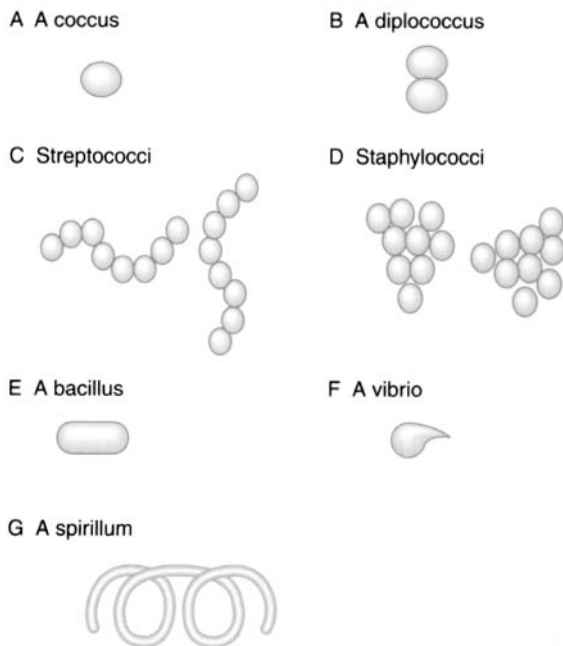


Figure 105 Shapes and group arrangements of bacteria

Some cocci are of great medical importance, for example:

Gram +ve

Streptococcus pneumoniae causes pneumonia and meningitis.

Staphylococcus aureus causes serious infection in hospitals (MRSA – methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*).

Gram –ve

Neisseria gonorrhoeae causes gonorrhoea.

Neisseria meningitidis causes meningitis.

(*Neisseria* are sometimes seen in pairs and are grouped as diplococci.)

The bacillus (plural – bacilli)

These are rod-shaped bacteria (*bacillus* is a Latin word meaning a stick or rod); they are also classified using the

Gram staining procedure (see Fig. 105E). There are large differences in the length and width of bacilli and their ends can be square, rounded or tapered.

Some bacilli are of medical importance, for example:

Gram +ve

Bacillus anthracis causes anthrax. It produces highly resistant spores that are difficult to destroy except at high temperatures.

Clostridium tetani found in soil, causes tetanus.

Gram –ve

Escherichia coli found in the human gut, certain strains are pathogenic.

Salmonella typhi causes typhoid.

Gram-negative bacilli that appear curved in shape (like a comma) are called vibrios (see Fig. 105F), for example:

Vibrio cholerae causes cholera, a water-borne infection.

The spirillum (plural – spirilla)

The spirilla are spiral or helical-shaped bacteria that look like tiny corkscrews (see Fig. 105G). Those that belong to the genus *Spirillum* consist of Gram –ve, non-flexuous (non-flexible) spiral-shaped filaments. Another group distinguished by their flexibility belong to the genus *Spirochaeta*. (Note: the use of this group is becoming obsolete and most of the bacteria assigned to this group have been transferred to other genera). Examples are:

Spirillum minus causes rat-bite fever in man.

Treponema pallidum a spirochaete (Am. spirochete) that belongs to the order Spirochaetales and causes syphilis.

It should be noted that the cells of a given species are rarely arranged in exactly the same pattern. It is the predominant arrangement that is important when studying bacteria.

Some terms denoting shape, for example bacillus, may be used as generic names as in *Bacillus anthracis*.

CULTURE AND SENSITIVITY TESTING

Infected swabs, fluids and tissues are sent to microbiology laboratories for **culture and sensitivity testing**. To culture an organism, it is placed at an optimum temperature in a special culture medium (broth or agar jelly) that contains all the nutrients required for growth. In ideal conditions the microorganism multiplies rapidly producing a huge clone of identical cells. Samples from the culture are then exposed to a range of different antibiotics. If an organism is sensitive to a particular antibiotic, it will be destroyed or its growth inhibited. Antibiotics that are found to destroy the cultured organisms are administered to the patient to try and rid them of the infection.



WORD EXERCISE 15

Match a description in Column A with a bacterium in Column C by inserting a number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) A bacterium that appears rod-shaped and purple following staining with the Gram staining procedure	1. diplococci
(b) A rod that appears comma-shaped and pink following staining with the Gram staining procedure	2. <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
(c) Cocci arranged into a twisted chain that infects the lungs	3. Gram -ve <i>Vibrio cholerae</i>
(d) Gold coloured cocci arranged into irregular grape-like groups that cause serious suppurative infections sometimes resistant to common antibiotics	4. Gram -ve <i>E. coli</i>
(e) Cocci belonging to the genus <i>Neisseria</i> that arrange themselves into pairs	5. Gram +ve <i>Bacillus anthracis</i>
(f) A helical bacterium that causes syphilis	6. <i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i>
(g) A bacterium that appears rod-shaped and pink following staining with the Gram staining procedure	7. <i>Treponema pallidum</i> (a spirochaete)



WORD EXERCISE 16

Using your Exercise Guide write the meaning of:

- bacterio**/logist
- streptococc**/al
- bacteri**/uria
- bacteri**/cid/al
- bacterio**/static
- bacterio**/lytic

(g) **bacill**/aemia
(Am. **bacill**/emia)

(h) **bacillo**/genic

(i) **streptococci**/cide

(j) **strepto**/septic/aemia
(Am. **strepto**/septic/emia)

(k) **spirill**/osis

Mycology

Fungi are non-green plants that act as decomposers in the environment, breaking down the dead bodies of plants and animals. The group includes the familiar mushrooms and toadstools and microscopic moulds and yeasts.

Certain types of moulds and yeasts are pathogenic and infect the body causing disease. When they infect the skin they are called **dermatophytes** (*dermat/o* meaning skin, *-phyte* meaning plant). A common condition is Athlete's foot caused by several species of fungi (e.g. *Trichophyton rubrum*) that infect skin between the toes. In warm, moist conditions the fungi grow and digest the skin causing it to itch and split. The fungal spores that generate the infection are usually picked up on changing room floors so the condition is common among sports enthusiasts. Athlete's foot is easily treated and harmless, unlike some fungal infections found in tropical climates.

When round, red patches of skin infected with fungi begin to heal they often take on a ring-like appearance and because of this the infection became inaccurately known as 'ringworm'. The medical name for Athlete's foot is **Tinea pedis** or ringworm of the foot (*Tinea* is a Latin word meaning gnawing worm, and *-pedis* means the foot). Other superficial fungal infections of the skin are named in a similar way: **Tinea capitis** (ringworm of the head), **Tinea corporis** (ringworm of the body).

Fungal infections are life-threatening in patients whose immune system is compromised; for example, *Candida albicans* can cause serious infections of the mouth, digestive system and reproductive systems in AIDS patients. This type of infection is known as Candidiasis (*-iasis* meaning abnormal condition).

Fungi are named according to the binomial system with a generic and specific name as in *Candida albicans*.

Root

Myc

(From a Greek word **mykes**, meaning fungus.)

Combining forms **Myc/o**



WORD EXERCISE 17

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **myc/osis**
- (b) **myco/tic**
- (c) **myco/tox/in**
- (d) **myco/toxic/osis**

Root

Fung

(From a Greek word **fungus**, meaning mushroom. Here it is used to mean fungus or fungal infection.)

Combining forms **Fung/i/o**



WORD EXERCISE 18

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **fungi/form**
- (b) **fungi/toxic**
- (c) **fungi/cide**
- (d) **fungi/static**

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

- (e) **fung/oid**
- (f) **fungos/ity**

Virology

A virus (virion) is an extremely small infectious particle that does not show the usual characteristics of life; for example, it does not move, respire, feed or respond to stimuli.

Viruses do reproduce but only within a specific host cell. (Note: a host is an organism that harbours a parasite.) When a virus comes into contact with a host cell, it inserts its genes. Once inside the viral genes alter the metabolism of the host cell and instruct it to make new viruses. The host cell fills with copies of the original

virus and may burst, releasing the new infectious particles into the surrounding environment.

Viruses have characteristic shapes, different chemical structures and different methods of replication. They can only be seen in an electron microscope that produces a large magnification and has the ability to resolve their fine detail. Characteristics of viruses and the conditions they cause are incorporated into their names. In the examples given below the words have been split to show their meaning.

Onco/rna/virus

type of virus that causes cancer (onc/o) and contains ribonucleic acid (-rna-).

Papo/va/virus

type of virus that causes vacuoles (va) inside host cells and the formation of papillomas/tumours (papo – papilloma).

Pico/rna/virus

type of virus that is very small (pico-) and contains ribonucleic acid (-rna-).

Retro/virus

type of virus that carries the enzyme reverse transcriptase (retro – back).

Rhino/virus

type of virus that infects the nose (rhin/o – nose).

Entero / virus

type of virus that infects the intestines.

Bacterio/phage

type of virus that uses a bacterium as a host.

Viruses may also be referred to by their genus and species name, for example *Herpes simplex*, a virus that causes cold sores around the mouth.

Root

Vir

(From a Greek word **virus**, meaning poison. Here it is used to mean virus, a minute infectious particle that replicates only within a living host cell. Each particle consists of viral genes enclosed in a protein coat.)

Combining forms **Vir/o/u**



WORD EXERCISE 19

Without using your Exercise Guide, write the meaning of:

- (a) **viru/cide**

(b) **viro**/logist

(c) anti/retro/**vir**/al

(d) **vir**/uria

Using your Exercise Guide, find the meaning of:

(e) **vir**/aemia

(Am. **vir**/emia)

(f) **viro**/lact/ia

Protozoology

This is a branch of medicine concerned with single-celled animals called protozoa. Some of these organisms are pathogenic and responsible for serious disease. Infection with protozoa is generally referred to as a **protozoiasis** (*-iasis* meaning abnormal condition/state of). Examples are given below:

Plasmodium falciparum

(a type of sporozoan) causes malaria

Trypanosoma gambiense

(a type of flagellate) causes African sleeping sickness

Entamoeba histolytica

(a type of amoeba) causes amoebic (Am. amebic) dysentery



CASE HISTORY 21

The object of this exercise is to understand words associated with a patient's medical history. To complete the exercise:

- read through the passage on HIV infection; unfamiliar words are underlined and you can find their meaning using the Word Help
- write the meaning of the medical terms shown in bold print.

HIV infection

Mr U, a 38-year-old homosexual man, presented to the Accident and Emergency Department with a fever, non-productive cough and dyspnoea. During the previous 7 days he had become increasingly short of breath and complained of an inability to sleep because he was hot and sweating profusely. He was a non-smoker and had no haemoptysis (Am. hemoptysis). Mr U informed the medical staff that he had been diagnosed

HIV positive 3 years earlier but had declined **antiretroviral** therapy.

On examination he appeared pale, and thin and he indicated that he had lost a considerable amount of weight over the past 2 months. He was pyrexial (Temp. 39.1°C), tachycardic (121 beats/min), and tachypnoeic (Am. tachypneic) (28 breaths/min).

Examination of his mouth revealed white patches with surrounding inflammation indicative of a severe **candidiasis**; swabs were taken and sent for analysis. He was short of breath with poor lung expansion and a chest X-ray showed diffuse bilateral shading. His serum biochemistry and liver function were normal.

Mr U was admitted to the ward with a clinical diagnosis of PCP or other atypical pneumonia and started on the **antibacterial** co-trimoxazole in two daily doses and the **antibiotic** erythromycin given as an infusion over 1 hour. He was also given an intravenous steroid methylprednisolone to reduce inflammation in his alveoli and improve gaseous exchange.

The next day a bronchoscopy was performed, and the washings sent to the **microbiology** laboratory for culture and sensitivity testing. The results confirmed the diagnosis of Pneumocystis carinii infection and haematology reported a CD4 count of less than 50 cells mm⁻³, indicating Mr U had developed **AIDS**. His mouth infection was confirmed as Candida albicans and he was prescribed the **antifungal** itraconazole.

Following administration of his high dose of co-trimoxazole Mr U developed severe nausea and was given the **anti-emetic** metoclopramide parenterally before his infusions.

Two weeks later he was clinically much improved, and a **pharmaceutical plan** was devised prior to his discharge. He was advised that he required antiretroviral therapy and counselled on the possibility of side-effects. He was given a discharge medication of sufficient oral co-trimoxazole to complete his initial course of treatment and instructed on a prophylactic dose regimen.

WORD HELP

AIDS acquired immune deficiency syndrome

atypical not conforming to the usual type/in microbiology applied to strains of unusual type

bilateral pertaining to both sides

bronchoscopy technique of viewing/examining the bronchial tree

Candida albicans a yeast-like fungus belonging to the genus *Candida* that infects the digestive and reproductive systems

CD4 cluster designation/cluster of differentiation. Refers to clusters of chemicals (cell surface markers)

WORD HELP (Contd.)

found on the surface of leucocytes (Am. leukocytes). CD4 molecules are found on T-cells (lymphocytes) and they act as the receptor molecules for HIV. The depletion of CD4 lymphocytes by HIV leads to the development of AIDS

culture and sensitivity testing growing microorganisms in the laboratory and testing them for sensitivity to antibiotics

dyspnoea difficult/laboured breathing

haemoptysis (Am. hemoptysis) spitting / coughing up of blood

infusion slow introduction of a therapeutic agent into a vein

non-productive not producing (sputum)

HIV positive presence of antibodies to the human immunodeficiency virus in the blood, it indicates the virus has infected the body

parenterally the word means pertaining to beyond the intestine but in practice it means administered by injection into the skin or muscle

PCP *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia

Pneumocystis carinii a protozoa-like organism that causes pneumonia, an opportunistic infection commonly seen in AIDS patients

prophylactic pertaining to preventative treatment

pyrexial having a fever/elevation of body temperature above normal

regimen regulated scheme (e.g. of taking drugs/medication)

tachycardic pertaining to fast heart beat

tachypnoeic pertaining to fast breathing

washing solution that has contacted a surface and is to be used for analysis

Quick Reference

Combining forms relating to the pharmacology and microbiology:

cocc/o	coccus (berry-shaped bacterium)
bacill/o	bacillus (rod-like bacterium)
bacteri/o	bacterium/bacteria
fung/i	fungus
helminth/h/o	worm
myc/o	fungus
pharmac/o	drug
spirill/o	spiral-shaped bacteria of genus <i>Spirillum</i>
staphylococc/o	staphylococcus/a bunch of cocci
streptococc/o	streptococcus/a chain of cocci
toxic/o	poison
vibri/o	comma-shaped bacterium of genus <i>Vibrio</i>
vir/o	virus/virion

Abbreviations

You should learn common abbreviations related to microbiology. Note, however, some are not standard and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. There is a more extensive list for reference on page 307.

ABX	antibiotics
AFB	acid-fast bacilli
BCG	bacille (bacillus) Calmette-Guérin (causes tuberculosis)
C+S	culture and sensitivity test
EBV	Epstein-Barr virus
HBV	Hepatitis B virus
HSV	<i>Herpes simplex</i> virus
Hib	<i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> type b
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
MRSA	multiple-resistant or methicillin resistant <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
NGU	non-gonococcal urethritis
PCN	penicillin

Now write the meaning of the following words from the case study without using your dictionary lists:

- (a) antiretroviral
- (b) candidiasis
- (c) antibacterial
- (d) antibiotic
- (e) microbiology
- (f) antifungal
- (g) anti-emetic
- (h) pharmaceutical plan

(Answers to the case history exercise are given in the Answers to Word Exercises beginning on page 275.)



NOW TRY THE WORD CHECK





WORD CHECK

This self-check exercise lists all the word components used in this unit. First write down the meaning of as many word components as you can. Then check your answers using the Exercise Guide and Quick Reference box or the Glossary of Word Components (pp. 319–341).

Prefixes

a- _____
 an- _____
 anti- _____
 auto- _____
 dia- _____
 neo- _____
 oxy- _____
 retro- _____

Roots/Combining forms

acid/o _____
 aesthet/o
 (Am. esthet/o) _____
 anxi/o _____
 alges/i/o _____
 bacill/o _____
 bacteri/o _____
 bi/o _____
 bronch/i/o _____
 cocc/o _____
 cycl/o _____
 cyt/o _____
 dynam/o _____

epilept/o _____
 fibrin/o _____
 fung/i _____
 gonad/o _____
 haem/o
 (Am. hem/o) _____
 helmint/h/o _____
 hypn/o _____
 immun/o _____
 kerat/o _____
 kinet/o _____
 lact/i/o _____
 muc/o _____
 oestr/o
 (Am. estr/o) _____
 pharmac/o _____
 plas/m/o _____
 prurit/o _____
 psych/o _____
 (r)rhythm/o _____
 septic/o _____
 spasm/o/d _____
 spirill/o _____
 staphylococc/o _____
 streptococc/o _____
 thyroid/o _____
 toc/o _____
 tox/ic/o _____
 troph/o _____

tuss/i

ur/o

vir/o

Suffixes-aemia
(Am. emia)

-al

-ase

-cid(e)

-form

-gen

-gnosy

-ia

-ic

-ite

-ive

-logist

-logy

-lytic

-oid

-ose

-osis

-plegia

-rrhoea
(Am. -rrhea)

-tic

-uria

-y

**SELF-ASSESSMENT****Test 21A***Prefixes and Suffixes*

Match each prefix or suffix in Column A with a meaning in Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) an-	1. quick
(b) anti-	2. knowledge/ process of judgment
(c) -ase	3. chemical derived from ammonia
(d) -gen	4. abnormal condition/ disease
(e) -gnosy	5. condition of rhythm
(f) -ose	6. process /condition
(g) -ine	7. study of
(h) -in	8. drug that breaks down .../ pertaining to breakdown
(i) -ic	9. without
(j) -ite	10. end-product
(k) -ive	11. excessive discharge/flow
(l) -logy	12. enzyme
(m) -logist	13. against
(n) -lytic	14. non-specific suffix indicating a chemical
(o) -osis	15. type of drug/ pertaining to (i)

Column A	Column B	Column C	Column A	Column B	Column C
(p) oxy	16. type of drug/ pertaining to (ii)	(n) pharmac/o	.....	14. force/power of movement
(q) -rrhoea (Am. rrhea)	17. type of drug/ pertaining to (iii)	(o) prurit/o	.....	15. virus/virion
(r) -rrhythmia	18. specialist who studies	(p) psych/o	.....	16. pain
(s) -tic	19. precursor/agent that produces	(q) toxic/o	.....	17. acid
(t) -y	20. sugar	(r) troph/o	.....	18. motion/ movement
Score			(s) tuss/i	.....	19. sleep
20			(t) vir/o	.....	20. mucus
			Score		
			20		

Test 21B

Combining forms of word roots

Match each combining form of a word root from Column A with a meaning from Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) acid/o	1. poison
(b) aesthet/o	2. worms
(c) alges/i/o	3. itching
(d) anxi/o	4. fungus (i)
(e) bacteri/o	5. fungus (ii)
(f) bi/o	6. bacteria
(g) dynam/o	7. drug
(h) fungi	8. life
(i) helmint/h/o	9. sensation
(j) hypn/o	10. mind
(k) kinet/o	11. nourish/stimulate
(l) muc/o	12. cough
(m) myc/o	13. anxiety

Test 21C

Write the meaning of:

- (a) toxicology
- (b) mycotoxicosis
- (c) pharmacist
- (d) chemotherapeutic agent
- (e) microbiologist

Score

5

Test 21D

Build words that mean:

- (a) specialist who studies bacteria
- (b) drug that acts against living things

- (c) the study of protozoa
- (d) agent that stops the growth of bacteria
- (e) pertaining to killing viruses

Score

5

Column A Column B Column C

- (l) acts to kill cancer cells 12. analgesic
- (m) reduces the immune response 13. hypnotic
- (n) used to treat glaucoma 14. antihypertensive
- (o) dilates the pupil for examination 15. contraceptive

- (p) promotes evacuation of the bowels 16. anticoagulant
- (q) prevents the effects of histamine 17. bronchodilator

- (r) used to induce sleep 18. diuretic
- (s) used to reduce high blood pressure 19. anaesthetic (Am. anesthetic)

- (t) used to reduce anxiety 20. antacid

- (u) used to prevent itching 21. mucolytic

- (v) used to prevent conception/pregnancy 22. mydriatic

- (w) stimulates/nourishes the reproductive organs 23. antidiabetic

- (x) prevents blood clotting 24. laxative

- (y) destroys bacteria and fungi 25. oxytocic

Score

25

Test 21E

Match each drug action from Column A with a drug classification from Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

- | Column A | Column B | Column C |
|--|----------|-----------------------|
| (a) acts against worms | | 1. immuno-suppressant |
| (b) acts to reduce pain | | 2. cytotoxic |
| (c) reduces sensation | | 3. miotic |
| (d) acts to reduce coughing | | 4. antipsychotic |
| (e) neutralises stomach acid | | 5. anxiolytic |
| (f) acts to break up mucus | | 6. antipruritic |
| (g) acts to promote the excretion of urine | | 7. anthelmintic |
| (h) acts to dilate bronchi | | 8. antihistamine |
| (i) used to treat schizophrenia | | 9. antitussive |
| (j) used to induce labour | | 10. antibiotic |
| (k) acts to lower blood sugar of non-insulin dependent diabetics | | 11. gonadotrophin |

Test 21F

Match each description from Column A with the name of an organism from Column C by inserting the appropriate number in Column B.

Column A	Column B	Column C
(a) a round, berry-like bacterium	1. staphylococci
(b) a rod-like bacterium	2. spirillum
(c) a comma-shaped bacterium	3. rhinovirus
(d) a spiral-shaped bacterium	4. bacillus
(e) a cancer forming virus that contains RNA	5. streptococci
(f) a plant (fungus) that infects the skin	6. diplococci
(g) round berry-like bacteria that occur in chains	7. a bacteriophage
(h) round berry-like bacteria that occur in bunches	8. coccus
(i) virus that infects the nose	9. vibrio
(j) berry-like bacteria that group in pairs	10. dermatophyte
(k) single-celled animal that causes malaria	11. a protozoan <i>Plasmodium</i>
(l) a virus that infects bacteria	12. oncornavirus

Score

12

This page intentionally left blank

Abbreviations

The abbreviations listed here have been extracted from recent health care publications and the medical records of patients. Students should be aware that whilst certain abbreviations are standard, others are not and their meaning may vary from one health care setting to another. Abbreviations with several meanings should be carefully interpreted to avoid confusion.

A	anaemia (Am. anemia)
AAA	abdominal aortic aneurysm/acute anxiety attack
AAAAA	aphasia, agnosia, agraphia, alexia and apraxia
AAFB	acid alcohol fast bacilli
AB1	one abortion
Ab, ab	abortion/antibody
ABC	airway, breathing, circulation
Abdo	abdomen
ABE	acute bacterial endocarditis
ABG	arterial blood gases
abor	abortion
ABX	antibiotics
AC	air conduction
ac	ante cibum (before meals/food)
ACBS	aortocoronary bypass surgery
Accom	accommodation of eye
ACE	angiotensin converting enzyme
ACh	acetyl choline
ACS	acute confused state
ACTH	adrenocorticotrophic hormone
ACU	acute care unit
AD or ad	Alzheimer's disease/auris dextra (right ear)
ADA	adenosine deaminase
ADC	AIDS dementia complex
ADD	attention deficit disorder
ADH	antidiuretic hormone
ADL	aids to daily living
ADR	adverse drug reaction
ADU	acute duodenal ulcer
A&E	accident and emergency
AED	anti-epileptic drug
AEM	ambulatory electrocardiogram monitoring
AF	amniotic fluid/atrial fibrillation
AFB	acid-fast bacilli
AFP	alphafeto protein
A/G	albumin/globulin ratio
Ag	antigen
AGA	appropriate for gestational age
AGL	acute granulocytic leukaemia (Am. leukemia)

AGN	acute glomerulonephritis
AI	aortic incompetence/aortic insufficiency/artificial insemination
AID	artificial insemination by donor
AIDS	acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
AIH	artificial insemination by husband
A/K	above knee (amputation)
ALD	alcoholic liver disease
ALG	anti-lymphocyte immunoglobulin
ALL	acute lymphocytic leukaemia (Am. leukemia)
ALS	amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
ALs	activities of living
ALT	alanine aminotransferase/alanine transaminase
amb	ambulant/ambulatory
AMI	acute myocardial infarction
AML	acute myeloid leukaemia (Am. leukemia)
ANC	absolute neutrophil count
ANF	antinuclear factor
ANS	autonomic nervous system
ANT or ant	anterior
antib	antibiotic
A&O	alert and orientated
AOB	alcohol on breath
AP	antepartum/anteroposterior/appendectomy/auscultation and percussion
APB	atrial premature beat
APH	antepartum haemorrhage (Am. hemorrhage)
APPY	appendectomy
APSAC	acylated plasminogen streptokinase
APTT	activator complex (anistreplase)
A-R	activated partial thromboplastin time
ARC	apical-radial (pulse)
ARD	aids related complex
ARDS	acute respiratory disease
ARF	adult respiratory distress syndrome
AS	acute renal failure
A-S	alimentary system/aortic stenosis/auris sinistra (left ear)
5-ASA	Adams-Stokes attack
ASC	5-aminosalicylic acid
ASCVD	altered state of consciousness
ASD	arteriosclerotic cardiovascular disease
ASHD	atrial septal defect
ASO	arteriosclerotic heart disease
ASOM	antistreptolysin O
AST	acute suppurative otitis media
	aspartate transaminase

Astigm	astigmatism of eye	BT	bedtime/bone tumour/brain
ASX	asymptomatic		tumour/breast tumour
ATG	anti-thymocyte immunoglobulin	BTS	blood transfusion service
ATN	acute tubular necrosis	BUN	blood urea nitrogen
ATP	adenosine triphosphate	BW	body weight
ATS	antitetanus serum	BX, Bx or bx.	biopsy
aud	audiology		
aur dextr	to the right ear	C	Celsius
AV	arteriovenous/atrioventricular bundle/atrioventricular node/aortic valve	c	with
		C 1–7	cervical vertebra
AVM	arteriovenous malformation	CA, Ca or ca.	cancer/carcinoma/cardiac arrest/coronary artery
AVP	vasopressin	CABG	coronary artery bypass grafting
AVR	aortic valve replacement	CACX	cancer of the cervix
A&W	alive and well	CAD	coronary artery disease
AXR	abdominal X-ray	CAG	closed angle glaucoma
AZT	azidothymidine	CAH	chronic active hepatitis/congenital adrenal hyperplasia
Ba	barium	CAL	computer assisted learning
BaE	barium enema	CAPD	continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis
BAL	blood alcohol level		
BBA	born before arrival	CAT	computer assisted tomography/computerized axial tomography
BBB	blood brain barrier/bundle branch block		
BBBB	bilateral bundle branch block	CAVH	continuous arteriovenous haemofiltration (Am. hemofiltration)
BBT	basal body temperature		
BBx	breast biopsy	CAVHD	continuous arteriovenous haemodialysis (Am. hemodialysis)
BC	birth control/bone conduction		
BCC	basal cell carcinoma	CBC	complete blood count
BCG	bacille Calmette–Guérin	CBE	clinical breast examination
BD or b.d.	bis diurnal (twice a day)	CBF	cerebral blood flow
BDA	British Diabetic Association	CCCC	closed-chest cardiac compression
BE	bacterial endocarditis/barium enema	CCF	chronic cardiac failure/congestive cardiac failure
BI	bone injury		
BID	brought in dead	CCIE	counter current immuno electrophoresis
bid	bis in die (twice daily)		
B/KA	below knee (amputation)	CCU	coronary care unit
BM	bowel movement	CD	Crohn's disease/cluster designation
BMI	body mass index	CDH	congenital dislocation of the hip joint
BMR	basal metabolic rate	CEA	carcino embryonic antigen
BM (T)	bone marrow (trephine)	CF	cancer free/cardiac failure/cystic fibrosis
BMT	bone marrow transplant		
BNF	British National Formulary	CFT	complement fixation test
BNO	bowels not open	CFTR	cystic fibrosis transmembrane regulator
BOR	bowels open regularly		
BP	blood pressure/British Pharmacopoeia/bypass	CGL	chronic granulocytic leukaemia
		CGN	chronic glomerulonephritis
BPD	bronchopulmonary dysplasia	CH	cholesterol
BPH	benign prostatic hypertrophy	CHD	coronary heart disease
BPM	beats per minute	CHF	congestive heart failure
BRO	bronchoscopy	CHI	creatinine height index
BS	blood sugar/bowel sounds/breath sounds	CHOP	cyclophosphamide, hydroxydaunorubicin, oncovin and prednisolone
BSA	body surface area	CHR	chronic
BSE	bovine spongiform encephalopathy/breast self- examination	CI	cardiac index/cerebral infarction
		CIBD	chronic inflammatory bowel disease/disorder
BSS	blood sugar series		

CIN	cervical intraepithelial neoplasia	CVVH	continuous venovenous haemofiltration (Am. hemofiltration)
CJD	Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease	CVVHD	continuous venovenous haemodialysis (Am. hemodialysis)
CK	creatine kinase	Cx	cervical/cervix
CL	clubbing	CXR	chest X-ray
CLD	chronic liver disease/chronic lung disease	Cy	cyanosis
CLL	chronic lymphocytic leukaemia (Am. leukemia)	cyclic AMP	cyclic adenosine monophosphate
CMF	cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil	Cysto	cystoscopy
CML	chronic myeloid leukaemia (Am. leukemia)		
CMV	cytomegalovirus	D	diagnosis
CN	cranial nerve	db	decibel
CNS	central nervous system	DBP	diastolic blood pressure
CO	carbon monoxide/cardiac output/complaints of	D&C	dilatation and curettage
COAD	chronic obstructive airways disease	DC or d/c	decrease/direct
COD	cause of death	DCCT	diabetes control and complications trial
COLD	chronic obstructive lung disease	DD	differential diagnosis
COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease	DDA	Dangerous Drugs Act
COP	colloid osmotic pressure	DDAVP	desmopressin (synthetic vasopressin)
C&P	cystoscopy and pyelogram	ddC/DDC	dideoxycytidine/zalcitabine
CP	cor pulmonale/cerebral palsy	ddI/DDI	didanosine/dideoxyinosine
CPA	cardiopulmonary arrest	DDx	differential diagnosis
CPAP	continuous positive airways pressure	D&E	dilatation and evacuation
CPK	creatinine phosphokinase	Derm, dermat	dermatology
CPN	community psychiatric nurse	DES	diethylstilbestrol
CPPV	continuous positive pressure ventilation	DH	delayed hypersensitivity/drug history
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation	DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation
CrCl	creatinine clearance	DIDMOAD	diabetes insipidus, diabetes mellitus, optic atrophy and deafness
CRD	chronic renal disease	Diff	differential blood count (of cell types)
CRF	chronic renal failure	DIMS	disorders of initiating and maintaining sleep
CRH	corticotrophin-releasing hormone	DIOS	distal intestinal obstruction syndrome
C + S	culture and sensitivity (test)	DIP	distal interphalangeal
C-sect, or c/sect	caesarean section (Am. cesarean)	DJK	degenerative joint disease
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid	DKA	diabetics ketoacidosis
CSH	chronic subdural haematoma (Am. hematoma)	DLE	discoid lupus
CSM	cerebrospinal meningitis		erythematosus/disseminated lupus erythematosus
CSOM	chronic suppurative otitis media	DM	diabetes mellitus/diastolic murmur
CSR	Cheyne–Stokes respiration/correct sedimentation rate	DMD	Duchenne muscular dystrophy
CSU	catheter specimen of urine	dmft	decayed missing and filled teeth (deciduous)
CT	cerebral tumour/clotting time/computerized tomography/continue treatment/coronary thrombosis	DMFT	decayed missing and filled teeth (permanent)
CUG	cystourethrogram	D/N	day/night (frequency of urine)
CV	cardiovascular/cerebrovascular	DNA	deoxyribose nucleic acid/did not attend
CVA	cerebrovascular accident (stroke)/costovertebral angle	DOA	dead on arrival
CVD	cardiovascular disease	DOB	date of birth
CVP	central venous pressure	DOD	date of death
CVS	cardiovascular system/chorionic villus sampling	DOE	dyspnoea on exertion (Am. dyspnea)
		DOES	disorders of excessive somnolence
		DS	Down's syndrome

D/S	dextrose and saline	ET CPAP	endotracheal continuous positive
DSA	digital subtraction angiography		airways pressure
DTP	diphtheria, tetanus and pertussis (vaccine)	ETF	Eustachian tube function
		ETT	endotracheal tube/exercise tolerance test
DTR	deep tendon reflex		
DTs	delerium tremens	EUA	examination under anaesthesia (Am. anesthesia)
DU	duodenal ulcer		
DUB	dysfunctional uterine bleeding	EX	examination
D&V	diarrhoea and vomiting	EXP	expansion
DVT	deep venous thrombosis	Ez	eczema
Dx	diagnosis		
DXT	deep X-ray therapy	F	Fahrenheit
DXRT	deep X-ray radiotherapy	FA	folic acid
		FAS	fetal alcohol syndrome
		FB	fasting blood sugar/finger breadth/foreign body
EBM	expressed breast milk		
EBV	Epstein-Barr virus	FBC	full blood count
ECF	extracellular fluid	FBE	full blood examination
ECFV	extracellular fluid volume	FBS	fasting blood sugar
ECG	electrocardiogram	FDIU	fetal death in utero
ECHO	echocardiogram	FET	forced expiratory technique
ECSL	extra corporeal shockwave lithotripsy	FEV	forced expiratory volume
ECT	electroconvulsive therapy	FEV ₁	forced expiratory volume in 1 sec
EDC	expected date of confinement	FFA	free fatty acids
EDD	expected date of delivery	FFP	fresh frozen plasma
EDV	end-diastolic volume	FH	family history
EEG	electroencephalography/gram	FLP	fasting lipid profile
EENT	eyes, ears, nose and throat	FMH	family medical history
EFM	electronic fetal monitoring	FNAB	fine needle aspiration biopsy
ELBW	extremely low birth weight	FOB	faecal occult blood (Am. fecal)
ELISA	enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay	FOBT	faecal occult blood testing (Am. fecal)
Em	emmetropia (good vision)	FP	false positive
EMD	electromechanical dissociation	FRC	functional reserve capacity/functional residual capacity
EMG	electromyogram/electromyography		
EMI	elderly mentally infirm/etoposide- methotrexate-ifosfamide	FROM	full range of movement
		FSH	follicle stimulating hormone
EMU	early morning urine	FSHRH	follicle stimulating hormone releasing hormone
EN	erythema nodosum		
ENG	electronystagmogram	FT	full term
ENT	ear, nose and throat	FT ₄	free thyroxine
EOG	electrooculogram	FTI	free thyroxine index
EOM	extraocular movement	FTND	full term, normal delivery
EP	ectopic pregnancy	FUO	fever of unknown origin
EPSP	excitatory postsynaptic potential	FVC	forced vital capacity
ERCP	endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography	FX, Fx or fx.	fracture
ERT	estrogen replacement therapy (Am.)		
ERV	expiratory reserve volume	g	gauge
ESM	ejection systolic murmur	GI and GII	gravida I and gravida II (first and second pregnancy)
ESN	educationally subnormal		
ESP	end-systolic pressure	GA	general anaesthesia (Am. anesthesia)/general appearance
ESR	erythrocyte sedimentation rate		
ESRD	end-stage renal disease	GABA	gamma-aminobutyric acid
ESRF	end-stage renal failure	GB	gall bladder/Guillain-Barré (syndrome)
ESV	end-systolic volume		
ESWL	extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy	GC	gonococci
		GCSF	granulocyte colony stimulating factor
ET	embryo transfer/endotracheal/ endotracheal tube	GE	gastroenterology
		GF	glomerular filtration/gluten-free

GFR	glomerular filtration rate	HGP	human genome project
GGTP	gamma glutamyl transpeptidase	HHNK	hyperglycaemic (Am. hyperglycemic)
γGT	gamma glutamyl transferase		hyperosmolar nonketonic
GH	growth hormone	HHV	human herpes virus
GHIH	growth hormone inhibiting hormone	Hib	<i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> type b
		Hist.	histology (lab)
GHRH	growth hormone releasing hormone	HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
GHRIH	growth hormone release-inhibiting hormone	HIVD	herniated intervertebral disc
		H&L	heart and lungs
GI	gastrointestinal	HLA	human leucocyte antigen (Am. leukocyte)
GIFT	gamete intrafallopian transfer	HMG(hMG)	human menopausal gonadotrophin
ging	gingiva (gum)	HOCM	hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy
GIS	gastrointestinal system		
GIT	gastrointestinal tract	HO	house officer
GKI	glucose/potassium/insulin	H&P	history and physical
GM	grand mal seizure	HPC	history of present condition
GN	glomerulonephritis	HPEN	home parenteral and enteral nutrition
GNDC	Gram-negative diplococci	hpf	high power field
GnRH	gonadotrophin releasing hormone	HPI	history of present illness
GP	general practitioner	HR	heart rate
GR1	one pregnancy	HRM	human resource management
grav	gravid (pregnant)	HRT	hormone replacement therapy
GS	general surgery/genital system	HSA	human serum albumin
G&S/XM	group and save/cross match	HSV	<i>Herpes simplex</i> virus
GTN	glyceryl trinitrate	5-HT	5-hydroxytryptamine
gtt	guttae (drops)	HT	hypertension
GTT	glucose tolerance test	HTLV	human T-cell leukaemia-lymphoma virus (Am. leukemia)
GU	gastric ulcer/genitourinary/gonococcal urethritis		
		HTN	hypertension
GUS	genitourinary system	HTVD	hypertensive vascular disease
GVHD	graft versus host disease	HUS	haemolytic uraemic syndrome (Am. hemolytic uremic syndrome)
Gyn	gynaecology (Am. gynecology)		
		HVD	hypertensive vascular disease
H	hypodermic	Hx	history
HAV	hepatitis A virus		
HB	heart block	IABP	intra-aortic balloon pump
Hb	haemoglobin (Am. hemoglobin)	IBC	iron binding capacity
HBAg	hepatitis B antigen	IBD	inflammatory bowel disease
HBGM	home blood glucose monitoring	IBS	irritable bowel syndrome
HBO	hyperbaric oxygenation	IC	intercostal/intracerebral/intracranial
HBP	high blood pressure	ICA	islet cell antibody
HBsAg	hepatitis B surface antigen	ICF	intracellular fluid
HBV	hepatitis B virus	ICH	intracerebral haemorrhage (Am. hemorrhage)
HC	head circumference		
HCG(hCG)	human chorionic gonadotrophin	ICM	intracostal margin
H/ct or /h.ct	haematocrit (Am. hematocrit)	ICP	intracranial pressure
HCV	hepatitis C virus	ICS	intercostal space
HCVD	hypertensive cardiovascular disease	ICSH	interstitial cell stimulating hormone
HD	haemodialysis (Am. hemodialysis)/Hodgkin's disease/Huntington's disease	ICU	intensive care unit
		ID or id	identity/intradermal
HDLs	high density lipoproteins	I&D	incision and drainage
HDN	haemolytic disease of newborn (Am. hemolytic)	IDDM	insulin dependent diabetes mellitus
		IDL	intermediate-density lipoprotein
HDV	hepatitis delta virus	IFN	interferon
HEENT	head, eyes, ears, nose and throat	Ig	immunoglobulin (e.g. IgA, IgG)
HF	heart failure	IGT	impaired glucose tolerance
HGH or hGH	human growth hormone	IHD	ischaemic heart disease (Am. ischemic)

IHR	intrinsic heart rate	IVU	intravenous urography
i.m.	intramuscular		
IM	infectious	J	jaundice
	mononucleosis/intramuscular	JVD	jugular venous distension
IMHP	intramuscular high potency	JVP	jugular vein pressure/jugular venous pressure
IMI	inferior myocardial infarction		
IMP	impression	KA	ketoacidosis
IMV	intermittent mandatory ventilation	KCCT	kaolin-cephalin clotting time
IN	internist (Am.)	KCO	transfer factor for carbon monoxide
inf	inferior	KJ	knee jerk
inf.MI	inferior myocardial infarction	KLS	kidney, liver, spleen
INR	international normalized ratio	KO	keep open
int	between/inter	KS	Karposi's sarcoma
I&O	intake and output	KUB	kidney, ureters and bladder
IOFB	intraocular foreign body	KVO	keep vein open
IOL	intraocular lens		
IOP	intraocular pressure	L	lymphadenopathy
in utero	within uterus	(L)	left/lower
i.p.	intraperitoneal	L 1–5	lumbar vertebrae
IPA	immunosuppressive acid protein	L&A	light and accommodation
IPD	idiopathic Parkinson's disease	LA	left arm/left atrium/local anaesthetic (Am. anesthetic)
IPF	idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis	La	labial (lips)
IPPA	inspection, palpation, percussion, auscultation	LAD	left axis deviation
IPPB	intermittent positive pressure breathing	LaG	labia and gingiva (lips and gums)
IPPV	intermittent positive pressure ventilation	LAS	lymphadenopathy syndrome
IQ	intelligence quotient	LAT or lat.	lateral
IRDS	idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome	LBBB	left bundle branch block
IRV	inspiratory reserve volume	LBM	lean body mass
ISQ	idem status quo (i.e. unchanged)	LBW	low birth weight
IT	intrathecal	LCCS	low cervical caesarean section (Am. cesarean)
ITCP	idiopathic thrombocytopenia purpura	LD	lethal dose/loading dose
ITP	idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura	LDH	lactic dehydrogenase
ITT	insulin tolerance test	LDL	low density lipoprotein
ITU	intensive therapy unit	LE	lupus erythematosus
IU	international units	LFT	liver function test
IUC	idiopathic ulcerative colitis	LGA	large for gestational age
IUCD	intrauterine contraceptive device	LH	luteinizing hormone
IUD	intrauterine death/intrauterine device	LHRH	luteinizing hormone releasing hormone
IUFB	intrauterine foreign body	LIF	left iliac fossa
IUGR	intrauterine growth retardation	LIH	left inguinal hernia
IV or i.v.	intravenous	LKKS	liver, kidney, kidney, spleen
IVC	inferior vena cava/intravenous cholecystogram	LL	left leg/left lower/lower lobe
IVD	intervertebral disc	LLETZ	large loop excision of the transformation zone
IVF	in vitro fertilization/in vivo fertilization	LLL	left lower lid (eye)/left lower lobe (lung)
IVH	intraventricular haemorrhage (Am. hemorrhage)	LLQ	left lower quadrant
IVHP	intravenous high potency	LMN	lower motor neuron
IVI	intravenous infusion	LMP	last menstrual period
IVP	intravenous pyelogram/intravenous pyelography	LN	lymph node
IVSD	interventricular septal defect	LNMP	last normal menstrual period
IVT	intravenous transfusion	LOC	level of consciousness
		LOM	limitation of movement
		LP	lumbar puncture

LPA	left pulmonary artery	MFT	muscle function test
LPN	licensed practical nurse (Am.)	MG	myasthenia gravis
LRI	lower respiratory infection	MGN	membranous glomerulonephritis
LS	left side/liver and spleen/lumbosacral/lymphosarcoma	MH	medical history/menstrual history
LSB	long stay bed (geriatric)	MHC	major histocompatibility complex
LSCS	lower section caesarean section	MHz	megahertz (megacycles per second)
LSD	lysergic acid diethylamide	MI	mitral incompetence/mitral insufficiency/myocardial infarction
LSK	liver, spleen, kidneys	MIBG	meta-iodobenzyl guanidine
LSM	late systolic murmur	MIC	minimum inhibitory concentration
LTC	long term care	MID	multi-infarct dementia
LTOT	long term oxygen therapy	ML	middle lobe/midline
L&U	lower and upper	MLT	medical laboratory technician/technologist
LUL	left upper lobe	mm ³	cubic millimetre
LUQ	left upper quadrant	mmHg	millimetres of mercury
LV	left ventricle	MMM	mitozantrone, methotrexate, mitomycin C
LVDP	left ventricular diastolic pressure	mmol	millimole
LVE	left ventricular enlargement	MNJ	myoneural junction
LVEDP	left ventricular end-diastolic pressure	MODY	maturity onset diabetes of the young
LVEDV	left ventricular end-diastolic volume	MOFS	multiple organ failure syndrome
LVET	left ventricular ejection time	MOPP	mustine, oncovin (vincristine), procarbazine, prednisolone
LVF	left ventricular failure	MPJ	metacarpophalangeal joint
LVH	left ventricular hypertrophy	MPQ	McGill Pain Questionnaire
LVP	left ventricular pressure	MR	mitral regurgitation
L&W	living and well	MRDM	malnutrition-related diabetes mellitus
Lymphos	lymphocytes	MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
M	male/married/murmur	mRNA	messenger ribonucleic acid
MAB	monoclonal antibody	MRSA	methicillin resistant <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
MABP	mean arterial blood pressure	MS	mitral stenosis/multiple sclerosis/muscle shortening/muscle strength/musculoskeletal/musculo- skeletal system
MAC	mid-arm circumference/ <i>Mycobacterium avium</i> complex	MSAFP	maternal serum alphafetoprotein
MAMC	mid-arm muscle circumference	MSE	mental state examination
mane	in the morning	MSH	melanocyte-stimulating hormone
MAOI	mono-amine oxidase inhibitor	MSL	midsternal line
MAP	mean arterial pressure/muscle action potential	MSOF	multisystem organ failure
MCH	mean corpuscular (red cell) haemoglobin (Am. hemoglobin)	MSSU	midstream specimen of urine
MCHC	mean corpuscular haemoglobin concentration (Am. hemoglobin)	MSU	midstream urine
MCL	mid clavicular line	MTA	mid-thigh amputation
MCP	metacarpophalangeal	MTP	metatarsophalangeal
MCV	mean corpuscular (cell) volume	MV	mitral valve
MD	maintenance dose/mitral disease/muscular dystrophy	MVP	mitral valve prolapse
MDI	metered dose inhaler	MVR	minute volume of respiration/mitral valve replacement
MDM	mid diastolic murmur	My, my	myopia
MDRTB	multidrug resistant tuberculosis	N	normal
ME	myalgic encephalopathy	NAD	nothing abnormal discovered/no acute distress/normal axis deviation
med	medial	NAG	narrow angle glaucoma
MEN	multiple endocrine neoplasia	NANB	non A, non B viruses
meQ	milliequivalent	NAP	neutrophil alkaline phosphatase
mEq/l	milliequivalent per litre	NAS, nas	nasal/no added salt
Metas	metastasis		
MF	mycoses fungoides/myocardial fibrosis		

NBM	nil (nothing) by mouth	OPA	outpatient appointment
NCVs	nerve conduction velocities	OPD	outpatient department
NEC	necrotizing enterocolitis	Ophth	ophthalmology
NFTD	normal full term delivery	OPT	orthopantomogram
NG	nasogastric	OR	operating room
NGU	non-gonococcal urethritis	ORT	operating room technician
NHL	non-Hodgkin's lymphoma	Ortho	orthopaedics (Am. orthopedics)
NHS	national health service	Orthop	orthopnoea (Am. orthopnea)
NIDDM	non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus	OS	oculus sinister (left eye), oculo sinistro (in left eye)
NK	natural killer (cells)	Os	mouth
NMR	nuclear magnetic resonance	osteo	osteomyelitis
NO	nitric oxide	OT	occupational therapy/old tuberculin/oxytocin
#NOF	fractured neck of femur	OTC	over the counter (remedies)
NP	nasopharynx	oto	otology
NPN	non-protein nitrogen	OU	oculus unitas (both eyes together)/oculus uterque (for each eye)/oculus utro (in each eye)
NPO, npo	non per os/nothing by mouth		
NREM	non-rapid eye movement (sleep)		
NRS	numerical rating scale		
NS	nephrotic syndrome/nervous system/no specimen	P	pressure
NSAIDs	non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs	PA	pernicious anaemia (Am. anemia)/posteroanterior/pulmonary artery
NSFTD	normal spontaneous full-term delivery		
NSR	normal sinus rhythm	P&A	percussion and auscultation
NST	non-shivering thermogenesis	PABA	para-aminobenzoic acid
NSU	nonspecific urethritis	PACG	primary angle closure glaucoma
NT	nasotracheal/nasotracheal tube	PADP	pulmonary artery diastolic pressure
N&T	nose and throat	PAH	pulmonary artery hypertension
NTP	normal temperature and pressure	PAP	primary atypical pneumonia
N&V	nausea and vomiting	Pap.	Papanicolaou smear test
NVD	nausea, vomiting and diarrhoea	PAS	p-aminosalicylic acid
		PAT	paroxysmal atrial tachycardia
O	oedema (Am. edema)	PAWP	pulmonary artery wedge pressure
O&A	observation and assessment	PBC	primary biliary cirrhosis
OA	on admission/osteoarthritis	PBI	protein bound iodine
OAD	obstructive airway disease	pc	post cibum (after meals/food)
OAG	open angle glaucoma	PCA	patient controlled analgesia
OB	occult blood	PCAS	patient controlled analgesia system
Ob-Gyn	obstetrics and gynaecology (Am. gynecology)	PCN	penicillin
Obst-Gyn	obstetrics and gynaecology (Am. gynecology)	PCNL	percutaneous nephrolithotomy
OC	oral cholecystogram/oral contraceptive	PCO ₂	partial pressure carbon dioxide
OCP	oral contraceptive pill	PCP	<i>Pneumocystis carinii</i> pneumonia
OD	oculus dexter (right eye), oculo dextro (in the right eye)/overdose	PCT	prothrombin clotting time
od	every day	PCV	packed cell volume
Odont	odontology	PCWP	pulmonary capillary wedge pressure
ODQ	on direct questioning	PD	Parkinson's disease/peritoneal dialysis
OE	on examination/otitis externa	PDA	patent ductus arteriosus
OGD	oesophago-gastro-duodenoscopy	PE	physical examination/pleural effusion/pulmonary embolism
OGTT	oral glucose tolerance test	PEC	pneumoencephalogram
OH	occupational history	PED	paediatrics (Am. pediatrics)
OHS	open heart surgery	PEEP	positive end expiratory pressure
OM	olim mane (once daily in the morning)/otitis media	PEF	peak expiratory flow
OOB	out of bed	PEFR	peak expiratory flow rate
		PEG	percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy/pneumoencephalogram

PEJ	percutaneous endoscopic jejunostomy	p.r. or PR	per rectum/plantar reflex
PEM	protein-energy malnutrition	PRH	prolactin releasing hormone
PERLAC	pupils equal, react to light, accommodation consensual	PRL	prolactin
PERRLA	pupils equal, round, react to light, accommodation consensual	PRN or p.r.n.	pro re nata (as required)
PET	positron emission tomography/pre-eclamptic toxæmia (Am. toxemia)	PROG	progesterone
PF	peak flow	PROM	premature rupture of membranes
PFT	peak flow rate	PRV	polycythaemia rubra vera (Am. polycythemia)
PFTs	pulmonary function tests	pros	prostate
PG	prostaglandin	prox	proximal
PGL	persistent generalized lymphadenopathy	PS	pulmonary stenosis/pyloric stenosis
PH	past history/patient history/prostatic hypertrophy/pulmonary hypertension	PSA	prostate specific antigen
pH	hydrogen-ion concentration	PSCT	pain and symptom control team
PID	pelvic inflammatory disease/prolapsed intervertebral disc	PSD	personal and social development
PIH	prolactin inhibiting hormone	PSG	presystolic gallop
PIP	proximal interphalangeal	PSVT	paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia
PIVD	protruded intervertebral disc	pt or PT	patient/physical therapy/prothrombin time/physical therapist (Am.)
PKU	phenylketonuria	PTA	prior to admission
PM	post mortem	PTC	percutaneous transhepatic cholangiogram/graphy
PMB	post menopausal bleeding	PTCA	percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty
PMH	past medical history	PTD	permanent and total disability
PMI	past medical history/point of maximum impulse	PTH	parathormone/parathyroid hormone
PML	progressive multifocal leucoencephalopathy (Am. leucoencephalopathy)	PTR	prothrombin ratio
PMN	polymorphonuclear leucocytes (Am. leukocyte)	PTT	partial thromboplastin time
PMS	premenstrual syndrome	PTX	pneumothorax
PMT	premenstrual tension	PU	peptic ulcer/per urethra
PMV	prolapsed mitral valve	PUO	pyrexia of unknown origin
PN	percussion note/peripheral nerve/peripheral neuropathy	PUVA	psoralen + ultraviolet light A
PND	paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea (Am. dyspnea)/post nasal drip	PV	per vagina
PNS	peripheral nervous system	P&V	pyloroplasty and vagotomy
PO or po	per os/by mouth	PVC	premature ventricular contraction
PO ₂	partial pressure oxygen	PVD	peripheral vascular disease
POAG	primary open angle glaucoma	PVP	pulmonary venous pressure
POLY	polymorphonuclear leucocytes (Am. leukocytes)	PVT	paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia
POP	plaster of Paris	PX	physical examination
pos	position	Px	past history/prognosis
post	posterior	QDS or qds	quater diurnale summensum (four times a day)
PPAM	pneumatic post-amputation mobility	qid	quater in die (four times a day)
PPD	packs per day/purified protein derivative (of tuberculin)	(R)	right
PPE	personal protective equipment	RA	rheumatoid arthritis/right auricle/atrium
PPH	postpartum haemorrhage (Am. hemorrhage)	Ra	radium
PPS	plasma protein solution	RAD	radiation absorbed dose/right axis deviation
PPT	partial prothrombin time	rad	radical
PPV	positive-pressure ventilation	RAS	reticular activating system
		RAST	radio-allergosorbent test
		RBBB	right bundle branch block
		RBC	red blood cell/red blood (cell) count
		RBS	random blood sugar

RCC	red cell concentrate/red cell count	SBE	subacute bacterial endocarditis
RDA	recommended dietary allowance	SBO	small bowel obstruction
rDNA	recombinant deoxyribose nucleic acid	SBP	systolic blood pressure
RDS	respiratory distress syndrome	s.c.	subclavian/subcutaneous
RE	rectal examination	SCA	sickle-cell anaemia
REM	rapid eye movement (in sleep)	SCC	squamous cell carcinoma
RES	reticulo endothelial system	SCD	sequential pneumatic compression device/sudden cardiac death
RF	renal failure/rheumatoid factor/rheumatic fever	SCID	severe combined immunodeficiency syndrome
RFLA	rheumatoid factor-like activity	SDH	subdural haematoma (Am. hematoma)
RFT	respiratory function tests	SDS	same day surgery
Rh	Rhesus	SED	skin erythema dose
RHD	rheumatic heart disease	SEM	systolic ejection murmur
RHL	right hepatic lobe	SG	skin graft/specific gravity
RIA	radioimmunoassay	SGA	small for gestational age
RIF	right iliac fossa	SGOT	serum glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase now serum aspartate transferase
RK	radial keratotomy/right kidney		
RL	right leg/right lung	SGPT	serum glutamic pyruvic transaminase
RLC	residual lung capacity	SF	synovial fluid
RLD	related living donor	SH	social history
RLE	right lower extremity	SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone
RLL	right lower lobe	SIDS	sudden infant death syndrome
RLQ	right lower quadrant	SIG	sigmoidoscope/sigmoidoscopy
RM	radical mastectomy	SIMV	synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation
RN	registered nurse		
RNA	ribose nucleic acid	s.l.	sublingual
R/O	rule out	SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
ROM	range of movement (exercises)	SLS	social and life skills
ROS	review of symptoms	SMD	senile macular degeneration
RP	radial pulse	SNS	somatic nervous system
RPE	retinal pigment epithelial (cells, layer)	SOA	swelling of ankles
RQ	respiratory quotient	SOB	short of breath/stools for occult blood
RR	recovery room/respiratory rate	SOBOE	short of breath on exertion
RR&E	round regular and equal	SOS	swelling of sacrum
RRR	regular rate and rhythm	SP	systolic pressure
RS	respiratory system/Reye's syndrome	SPF	sun protection factor
RSI	repetitive strain injury	SPP	suprapubic prostatectomy
RSV	respiratory syncytial virus	SR	sedimentation rate/sinus rhythm
RT	radiologic technologist (Am.)/radiotherapy	SS S/S	saline solution/signs and symptoms
RTA	renal tubular acidosis/road traffic accident	ST	sinus tachycardia/skin test
RUL	right upper lobe	STD	sexually transmitted disease/skin test dose
RUQ	right upper quadrant	STS	serological tests for syphilis
RV	residual volume/right ventricle	STU	skin test unit
RVF	right ventricular failure	Subcu	subcutaneous
RVH	right ventricular hypertrophy	subling	sublingual/under the tongue
s	without	sup	superior
S1	first heart sound	SV	stroke volume
S2	second heart sound	SVC	superior vena cava
SA	sarcoma/sinoatrial (node)/sinus arrhythmia/Stokes-Adams (attacks)	SVI	stroke volume index
SACD	subacute combined degeneration	SVR	systemic venous resistance
SAD	seasonal affective disorder	SVT	supraventricular tachycardia
SAH	subarachnoid haemorrhage (Am. hemorrhage)	SWS	slow wave sleep
SB	seen by	Sx	symptoms
		syph.	syphilis

T	temperature/tumour	TUIP	transurethral incision of the prostate
t	terminal	TUR	transurethral resection (of prostate)
T 1–12	thoracic vertebrae	TURB	transurethral resection of bladder
T ₃ , T ₄	triiodothyronine, tetraiodothyronine (thyroid hormones)	TURP	transurethral resection of the prostate
T&A	tonsils and adenoids or tonsillectomy/adenoidectomy	TURT	transurethral resection of tumour
T.A.	toxin-antitoxin	TV	tidal volume
TAH	total abdominal hysterectomy	Tx	therapy/transfusion/treatment
Tb or TB	tuberculosis (tubercle bacillus)	T&X	type and crossmatch
TBA	to be arranged	U	unit
TBG	thyroid binding globulin	UA	uric acid/urinalysis
TBI	total body irradiation	UAC	umbilical artery catheter
TBW	total body water/total body weight	UC	ulcerative colitis
T&C	type and crossmatch	UDO	undetermined origin
TCP	thrombocytopenia	U&E	urea and electrolytes
TD	thymus dependent cells	UG	urogenital
TDM	therapeutic drug monitoring	UGH	uveitis + glaucoma + hyphaema syndrome (Am. hyphema)
TDS	ter diurnale summensum (three times a day)	UGI	upper gastrointestinal
TED	thromboembolic deterrent (stockings)	UIBC	unsaturated iron-binding capacity
TENS	transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation	ung	ointment (unguentum)
TH	thyroid hormone (thyroxine)	URI	upper respiratory (tract) infection
THR	total hip replacement	URT	upper respiratory tract
TI	thymus independent cells	URTI	upper respiratory tract infection
TIA	transient ischaemic attack (Am. ischemic)	US	ultrasonography/ultrasound/urinary system
TIBC	total iron-binding capacity	USS	ultrasound scan
t.i.d.	ter in die (three times daily)	UTI	urinary tract infection
TIP	terminal interphalangeal	UVA	ultra violet light A
TIPS	transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunting	UVB	ultra violet light B
TJ	triceps jerk	UVC	ultra violet light C
TKVO	to keep vein open	VA	visual acuity
TLC	tender loving care/total lung capacity	VAC	vincristine, adriamycin, cyclophosphamide
TLD	thoracic lymph duct	VAS	visual analogue scale
TM	tympanic membrane	VC	vital capacity/vulvovaginal candidiasis
TMJ	temporomandibular joint	VD	venereal disease
TMR	transmyocardial revascularization	VDRL	venereal disease research laboratory (test)
TNF	tumour necrosis factor	VE	vaginal examination
TNM	tumour, node, metastases	VF	ventricular fibrillation/visual field
TOP	termination of pregnancy	VHD	valvular heart disease
tPA	recombinant tissue-type plasminogen activator	VLBW	very low birth weight
TPHI	<i>Treponema pallidum</i> haemagglutination inhibition (Am. hemagglutination)	VLDL	very low density lipoprotein
TPI	<i>Treponema pallidum</i> immobilization	VMA	vanillyl-mandelic acid
TPN	total parenteral nutrition	VP	venous pressure
TPR	temperature, pulse, respiration	VPC	ventricular premature contraction
TRH	thyrotrophin-releasing hormone	VRS	verbal rating scale
TSA	tumour specific antigen	VS	vital signs
TSF	triceps skinfold thickness	VSD	ventricular septal defect
TSH	thyroid stimulating hormone	VT	ventricular tachycardia
TSS	toxic shock syndrome	VUR	vesicoureteric reflux
TT	tetanus toxoid/thrombin clotting time	VWF	von Willebrand factor
TTA	transtracheal aspiration	VV	varicose veins/vulva and vagina
TTO	to take out (to home)		

WBC	white blood (cell) count/white blood cell	Symbols	
WCC	white cell count	♂	male
WNL	within normal limits	♀	female
WPW	Wolff-Parkinson-White (syndrome)	*	birth
WR	Wasserman reaction (test for syphilis)	α	alpha
		β	beta
		γ	gamma
X-match	cross-match	Δ	delta/diagnosis
XR	X-ray	ΔΔ	differential diagnosis
XRT	X-ray therapy	#	fracture
		†	dead
ZE	Zollinger-Ellison (syndrome)		
ZN	Ziel-Nielsen Stain		

Glossary

The glossary contains a list of prefixes, suffixes and combining forms used in common medical terms. The meaning of each word component is given with an example of its use in a medical term. Use the list to decipher the meaning of unfamiliar words. Note, a dash is added to indicate whether the component usually precedes or follows the other elements of a compound word; for example, ante- precedes a word root as in **antenatal** whilst -stomy follows the root as in **colostomy**. Some terms are composed of one or more roots with a prefix or suffix; for example **-algia** contains the root **alg** meaning pain and the suffix **-ia** meaning condition of. The vowels of combining forms are used or dropped by the application of 'rules' described in the introduction of this book. Some roots are listed with more than one combining vowel, for example, **ren/i/o**. Both vowels may be used as in **renipelvic** and **renography**.

	Meaning	Medical Term
a-	without, not (n is added before words beginning with a vowel)	aphasia
-a	noun ending/a name	bursa
ab-	away from	abduct
abdomin/o	abdomen	abdominopelvic
-able	capable of/having ability to	palpable
ac-	pertaining to/to/toward/near	accretion
acanth/o	spiny	acanthosis
acarin/o	mites of the order Acarina	acarinosis
acar/i/o	mites of the order Acarina	acaricide
acetabul/o	acetabulum	acetabuloplasty
acet/o	vinegar	<i>Acetobacter</i>
acetone-	ketones/acetone	acetonaemia (Am. acetonemia)
achill/o	Achilles tendon	achillotomy
acid/o	acid	acidophil
acin/i	sac-like dilatation	acinus
acne/o	acne/point/peak	acnegenic
acou-	hear/hearing	acoumetric
-acousia	condition of hearing	dysacousia
acoust/o	hear/hearing/sound	acoustic
acro-	extremities, point	acromegaly
acromi/o	acromion (point of the shoulder)	acromioclavicular
act-	do, drive, act	action
actin/o	rays e.g. of sun/ultraviolet radiation	actinotherapy
acu-	hear/hearing/severe/sudden	acute
-acusia	condition/sense of hearing	dysacousia
ad-	to/toward/in the direction of the midline	adduct
adamant/o	dental enamel	adamantine
aden/o	gland	adenoid
adenoid/o	adenoid	adenoidectomy
adip/o	adipose tissue/fat	adiposity
adnex/o	bound to/conjoined	adnexa
adrenal/o	adrenal gland	adrenalectomy
adren/o	adrenal gland	adrenogenital
adrenocortic/o	adrenal cortex	adrenocortical
-aem-	blood (Am. -em-)	anaemia
-aemia	condition of blood (Am. -emia)	leukaemia
aer/o	air/gas	aerophagia
aesthe/s/i/o	sensation/sensitivity (Am. esthe/s/i/o)	anaesthesiology
aeti/o	cause (Am. eti/o)	aetiology
af-	to/towards/near	afferent
ag-	to/towards/near	agglutinate

agglutin/o	sticking/clumping together	agglutination
-ago	abnormal condition/disease	lumbago
-agogic	pertaining to inducing/stimulating	dacryagogic
-agogue	inducing/promoting	lactagogue
agora-	market place open space	agoraphobia
-agra	seizure/sudden pain	podagra
-aise	comfort/ease	malaise
-al ¹	pertaining to	bronchial
-al ²	used in pharmacology to mean a drug or drug action	antifungal
albin/o	white	albinism
alb/i/o	white	albus
album-	white	albumin
albumin/o	albumin/albumen	albuminuria
-algesia	condition of pain	analgesia
alges/i/o	sense of pain	algesiometer
-algia	pain	neuralgia
alg/e/i/o	pain	algaesthesia
aliment/o	to nourish	alimentary
all/o	other/different from normal	allogenic
alve/o	trough/channel/cavity	alveus
alveol/o	alveoli (of lungs)	alveolitis
ambi-	on both sides	ambilateral
ambyl/o	dull/dim	ambylopia
ameb/o (Am.)	ameba, a type of protozoan	amebiasis
amel/o	dental enamel	ameloblast
-amine	nitrogen containing compound	catecholamine
amni/o	amnion/fetal membrane	amniocentesis
amnion/o	amnion/fetal membrane	amnionic
amoeb/o	amoeba a type of protozoan (Am. ameb/o)	amoebiasis
amph/i	both/doubly/both sides	amphigonadism
amyl/o	starch	amyloid
an-	without/not	anencephalic
-an	pertaining to/characteristic of	ovarian
ana-	backward/apart/up/again	anaplastic
ancyl/o	crooked /stiffening/fusing/bent	ancylostomiasis
andr/o	male	andrology
aneurysm/o	aneurysm	aneurysmoplasty
angi/o	vessel	angioplasty
aniso-	unequal/dissimilar	anisocoria
ankyl/o	crooked /stiffening/fusing/bent	ankylosis
an/o	anus	anorectal
-ant	having the characteristic of	stimulant
ante-	before in time or place/in front	antenatal
anter/o	front/in front of/anterior to	anterolateral
anthrac/o	coal dust	anthracosis
anthrop/o	man/human	anthropometry
anti-	against	antifungal
antr/o	antrum/maxillary sinus	antrotomy
anxi/o	anxiety	anxiolytic
aort/o	aorta	aortorrhaphy
ap-	to/toward/near	apposition
-aph-	touch	hyperaphia
-apheresis	removal	leukapheresis
aphth/o	ulcer	aphthous
apic/o	apex	apical
ap/o	away from/detached/derived from	apophysis
aponeur/o	aponeurosis (flat tendon)	aponeurorrhaphy
append/ic/o	appendix	appendectomy
aqu/a/e/o	water	aqueous

-ar	pertaining to	lobar
arachn/o	spider	arachnophobia
arc/o	arch/bow-shaped	arcus
-arch/e-	beginning	menarch
arrhen/o	male/masculine	arrhenoblastoma
arter/i/o	artery	arteriosclerosis
arteriol/o	arteriole	arteriolonecrosis
arthr/o	joint	arthrodesis
articul/o	joint	articulate
-ary	pertaining to/connected with	pulmonary
as-	to/towards/near	association
-ase	an enzyme	amylase
-asia	state or condition	euthanasia
-asis	state or condition	elephantiasis
-asthenia	condition of weakness	myasthenia
asthen/o	weakness	asthenocoria
astr/o	star-shaped/star	astrocyte
at-	to/towards/near	attraction
-ate	use/subject to	stimulate
atel/o	imperfect/incomplete	atelocardia
ather/o	porridge-like plaque lining blood vessel	atherosclerosis
-ation	action/condition	ejaculation
-atresia	condition of occlusion/closure/absence of opening	anal atresia
atret/o	closure of a normal opening/imperforation	atretometria
atri/o	atrium	atrioventricular
audi/o	hearing/sense of hearing	audiometry
audit/o	hearing/sense of hearing	auditory
-aural	pertaining to the ear	monaural
auricul/o	ear/pinna	auriculoplasty
aur/i/o	ear/hearing	auriscope
auto-	self	autolysis
aux/i	increase	auxiliary
-axis	increase	onychauxis
aux/o	increase	auxocardia
-ax	noun ending/a name	thorax
axill/o	armpit	axillary
ax/i/o	axis	axipetal
axon/o	axis/axon of neurone	axonal
azot/o	urea/nitrogen	azotaemia (Am. azotemia)
ba-	go/walk/stand	hypnobia
bacill/o	bacillus/a rod-shaped bacterium	bacilluria
bacter/i/o	baterium/bacteria	bacteriophage
balan/o	glans penis	balanitis
ball-	throw/movement	ballistocardiograph
bar/o	weight/pressure	barotrauma
bartholin/o	Bartholin's glands of vagina	bartholinitis
basi-	base/basic/alkaline	basichromatin
baso-	base/basic/alkaline	basophil
bathy-	deep	bathypnoea
bi-	two/twice/life	bipedal
bili-	bile	biliary
bin-	two each/double	binocular
bio-	life/living	biology
-blast	germ cell/embryonic/immature growing thing	osteoblast
blast/o	early/growth/germ/development	retinoblastoma
blenn/o	mucus	blennoid
blephar/o	eyelid	blepharoptosis
bol-	ball	bolus

brachi/o	arm	brachial
brachy-	short	brachygnathia
brady-	slow	bradycardia
brev/i	short	breviflexor
bromidr/o	stench/smell of sweat	bromidrosis
bronch/i/o	bronchus/bronchial tube/windpipe	bronchoscopy
bronchiol/o	bronchiole	bronchiolitis
bront/o	thunder	brontophobia
bucca-	cheek	buccal
bucc/o	cheek	buccopharyngeal
burs/o	bursa (fluid filled sac)	bursitis
byssin/o	cotton dust	byssinosis
cac/o	bad/ill/abnormal	cacocholia
caec/o	caecum (Am. cecum)	caecocele
calcane/o	calcaneus/heel bone	calcaneopplantar
calc/i/o	calcium/lime/heel	calcipenia
calcin/o	calcium	calcinosis
calcul/o	stone/little stone	calculus
cali/o	calyx/cup-shaped organ or cavity (Am. calix)	caliorrhaphy
calor/i	heat	calorimetry
cancer/o	cancer (general term)	cancerophobia
canth/o	canthus	canthoplasty
capill/o	hair/blood capillary	capillary
capit-	head	capitate
-capnia	condition of carbon dioxide	hypercapnia
caps-	container	capsitis
capsul/o	capsule	capsular
carb/o	carbon/bicarbonate	carbohydrate
carcin/o	cancerous/malignant	carcinoma
-cardia	condition of heart	tachycardia
cardi/o	heart	cardiologist
cari/o	rot/decay (of teeth)	cariogenesis
carp/o	carpal/wrist bones	carpopothesis
cary/o	nucleus	eucaryotic
cat/a	down/negative	catabolic
caud/o	tail/towards the tail/lower part of body	caudal
caus-	burn/corrosive	caustic
caut-	burn	cautery
cav-	hollow	cavity
cec/o (Am.)	cecum	cecocele
-cele	swelling/protrusion/hernia	vesicocoele
celi/o	hollow/abdomen	celioscope
cell-	cell	cellular
cel/o (Am.)	hollow/abdomen/celom	celoschisis
cen/o	new/empty/common	cenogenesis
-centesis	surgical puncture to remove fluid	amniocentesis
centi-	hundred/one hundredth	centigrade
centr/i/o	centre/central location	centrilobular
cephal/o	head	hydrocephalic
cerat/o	horny/epidermis/cornea (syn: kerat/o)	ceratocricoid
cerebell/o	cerebellum	cerebellar
cerebr/i/o	cerebrum/brain	cerebroma
cer/o	wax	ceroma
cerumin/o	cerumen/ear wax	ceruminous
cervic/o	cervix	cervical
-chalasis	slackening/loosening	blepharochalasis
chancr-	chancre, a destructive sore	chancroid
cheil/o	lip	cheiloplasty

cheir/o	hand	cheiromegaly
chem/i/c/o	chemical	chemoreceptor
chil/o	lip	chiloplasty
chir/o	hand	chiropody
chlor/o	green/chlorine	chloroma
cholangi/o	bile vessel/bile duct	cholangiogram
cholecyst/o	gall bladder	cholecystolithiasis
choledoch/o	common bile duct	choledocholithiasis
chol/e/o	bile	choluria
cholester/o	cholesterol	cholesterosis
chondr/i/o	cartilage	chondrosarcoma
chord/o	string/cord	chordotomy
chore/o	dance/jerky movement	chorea
chori/o	chorion/outer fetal membrane	chorioallantois
choroid/o	choroid layer of eye	choroiditis
chromat/o	colour	chromatopsia
-chromia	condition of haemoglobin/colour (Am. hemoglobin)	hypochromia
chrom/o	colour	chromocystoscopy
chron/o	time	chronic
chrys/o	gold	chrysoderma
chyl/e/o	chyle-lymphatic fluid formed by lacteals in intestine/product of digestion	chylothorax
chym/o	chyme, creamy material produced by digestion of food/to pour	chymopoiesis
-cidal	pertaining to killing	bacteriocidal
-cide	agent that kills/killing	acaricide
cili/o	cilia/ciliary body of eye/eyelash	ciliectomy
cinemat/o	movement/motion (picture)	cinematography
cine/o	movement/motion	cineangiography
circum-	around	circumcision
cirr/h/o	yellow	cirrhosis
cirs/o	varicose vein/varix	cirsectomy
cis-	on the near side/this side	cis position
-cis-	cut/kill	excision
cistern/o	cistern/enclosed space (sub arachnoid space)	cisternography
-clasia	condition of breaking	osteoclasia
-clasis	breaking	osteoclasia
-clast	a cell which breaks	osteoclast
claustr/o	barrier/enclosed	claustrophobia
clavic/o	clavicle	clavicotomy
clavicul/o	clavicle	clavicular
-cle	small	vesicle
cleid/o	clavicle	cleidotomy
clin/o	bend/incline	clinodactyly
clitor/i/o	clitoris	clitorism
-clonus	violent action	myoclonus
-clysis	infusion/injection/irrigation	venoclysis
co-	with/together	cofactor
coccid/i	type of parasitic protozoa of order coccidia	coccidiosis
cocc/i/o	berry-shaped bacterium	coccogenous
-coccus	berry-shaped bacterium	streptococcus
coccyg/o	coccyx	coccygeal
cochle/o	cochlea	cochleovestibular
-coel(e)	hollow/abdomen	blastocoel(e)
coel/o	hollow/abdomen/celom (Am. celom)	coelom
col-	with/together	collateral
col/o	colon	colostomy
colon/o	colon	colonic
colp/o	vagina	colpohysterectomy

com-	with/together	commensal
con-	with/together	concentric
coni/o	dust	coniosis
conjunctiv/o	conjunctiva	conjunctivitis
contra-	against/opposite	contraception
-conus	cone-like protrusion	keratoconus
copr/o	faeces (Am. feces)	coprolith
cor-	with/together	corrosive
cord/o	a cord	cordotomy
cor/e/o	pupil	coreomorphosis
-coria	condition of the pupils	anisocoria
corne/o	cornea/horny (consisting of keratin)	corneoblepharon
coron/o-	crown-like projection/encircling/coronary vessels of heart	
corpor/o	body	coronary
-cortex-	outer part/bark	corporal
cortic/o	cortex/outer region	adrenal cortex
cost/o	rib	corticotrophic
cox/o	hip/hip joint	intercostal
crani/o	skull	coxo-femoral
cren/o	crenated	craniotomy
-crescent	grow/crescent	crenocytes
-crine	secrete	epithelial crescent
crin/o	secrete	exocrine
-crit	separate/device for measuring cells	endocrinology
crur/o	leg	haematocrit (Am. hematocrit)
cry/o	relating to cold	crural
crypt/o	hidden	cryostat
cubit/o	elbow	cryptorchism
culd/o	cul-de sac/rectouterine pouch	cubitus
-cule	small	culdoscope
cult-	cultivate	animal cul
cune/i	wedge (shape)	culture
cutane/o	skin	cuneiform
cut/i	skin	cutaneous
cyan/o	blue	cuticle
cycl/o	ciliary body/circle	cyanosis
cyes/i/o	pregnancy	cyclotomy
-cyesis	pregnancy	cyesiology
cyst/i/o	bladder	pseudocyesis
-cyte	cell	cystostomy
cyt/o	cell	melanocyte
-cytosis	abnormal increase/condition of cells	cytology
		thrombocytosis
dacry/o	tear/lacrimal apparatus	dacryolith
dacryocyst/o	lacrimal sac	dacryocystotomy
dactyl/o	digits/fingers or toes	dactylomegaly
de-	down/away from/loss of/reversing	decalcification
deca-	ten	decagram
deci-	one tenth	decilitre
demi-	half	demifacet
dendr/i/o	tree/tree-like (dendrite of neurone)	dendritic
dentin/o	dentine of tooth (Am. dentin)	dentinogenesis
dent/i/o	tooth	dentist
derm/a/o	skin	dermabrasion
dermat/o	skin	dermatology
descemet/o	Descemet's membrane (of cornea)	descemetocoele
-desis	fixation/to bind together by surgery/sticking together	arthrodesis
desm/o	band/ligament	desmopathy

dextro-	right	dextrocardia
di-	two/double	dicoria
dia-	through/apart/across/between	diaphysis
-dialysis	separate	haemodialysis (Am. hemodialysis)
diaphor/o	sweating (excessive)	diaphoresis
diaphragmat/o	diaphragm	diaphragmatalgia
didym-	twin	epididymis
digit/o	finger/toe	digitopltar
dipl/o-	double	diplopia
dips/o	thirst	polydipsia
dis-	reversal/separation/duplication	dislocation
disc/o	intervertebral disc	discography
disk/o (Am.)	intervertebral disc	disectomy
dist/o	far from point of origin	distal
diverticul/o	diverticulum	diverticulitis
doch/o	duct/to receive	choledochitis
dolich/o	long	dolichocranial
dolor/i/o	pain (dol – unit of pain)	dolorogenic
-dorsal	pertaining to back (of body)	ventrodorsal
dors/i/o	back (of body)	dorsoventral
-drome	a course/conduction/flowing	syndrome
drom/o	a course/conduction/flowing	dromotropic
-duct-	lead (to or away from)	oviduct
duoden/o	duodenum	duodenostomy
dur/o	dura mater/hard	epidural
dynam/o	force/power (of movement)	dynamic
-dynia	condition of pain	pleurodynia
dys-	difficult/disordered/painful/bad	dysphasia
e-	out from/outside/without	emasculatlon
-e	noun ending/a name	trigone
-eal	pertaining to	oesophageal
ec-	out/outside/away from	eccyesis
ech/o	reflected sound/echo	echolalia
ect-	out/outside/outer part	ectethmoid
ecto-	out/outside/outer part	ectoderm
ectopia-	condition of displacement	ectopia lentis
ectop/o	displaced away from normal position	ectopic
-ectasis	dilatation, stretching	bronchiectasis
-ectomy	removal, excision	appendicectomy
ectro-	congenital absence/miscarriage	ectrodactylia
edema- (Am.)	swelling due to fluid	edematous
ef-	out/away from	efferent
eikon/o	icon	eikonometer
elae/o	oil	elaeopathia
electro-	electrical	electrocardiograph
ellipto-	shaped like an ellipse	elliptocytosis
em-	in	empathy
-ema (Am.)	swelling/distension	myxedema
embol/o	embolus/plug/blockage	embolism
embry/o	embryo	embryogenesis
-emesis	vomiting	haematemesls (Am. hematemesls)
emet/o	vomiting	emetic
-emia (Am.)	condition of blood	anemia
emmetr/o	in due measure/normally proportioned	emmetropia
-emphraxis	blocking/stopping up	salpingemphraxis
en-	within/in	ensheathed

encephal/o	brain	encephalitis
endo-	within, inside	endoscope
endocrin/o	endocrine (gland)	endocrinologist
endometri/o	endometrium of uterus (lining)	endometriosis
enter/o	intestine	enteritis
-ent	person/agent	diluent
ento-	within, inside	entocranial
eosin/o	red/dawn coloured/like eosin, a red acid dye	eosinophil
ep-	above/upon/on	eparterial
epi-	above/upon/on	epidermis
epididym/o	epididymis	epididymovasectomy
epiglott/o	epiglottis	epiglottitis
epilept/i/o	epilepsy	epileptiform
episi/o	vulva	episiotomy
epitheli/o	epithelium	epithelial
-er	one who/person/agent	radiographer
erg/o/n/o	work	ergonometer
-erysis	drag/draw/suck out	phacoerysis
erythr/o	red	erythrocyte
-esis	abnormal state/condition	uresis
es/o (Am.)	within/inwards	esodeviation
esophag/o (Am.)	esophagus/gullet	esophagostomy
esthesi/o (Am.)	sensation	anesthesiology
estr/o (Am.)	estrogen/female/estrus	estrogenic
ethm/o	ethmoid bone	ethmoidonasal
eti/o (Am.)	causation	etiology
eu-	good/normal/easily	eutocia
eury-	wide/broad	eurycephalic
ex-	out/out of/away from	exophthalmos
exo-	out/away from/outside	exogastic
-externa	external	otitis externa
extr/a/o	outside of/beyond	extrahepatic
faci/o	face	faciomaxillary
falc/i	falx/sickle shaped structure	falciform
fasci/o	fascia/fibrous tissue e.g. covering muscles	fasciotomy
febr/o	fever	febrile
fec/o (Am.)	feces/waste	fecal
femor/o	femur/thigh	femoral
-ferent	carrying/to carry/to bear	efferent
fer/o	to carry/to bear	uriniferous
ferr/o	iron	ferroprotein
fet/i/o (Am.)	fetus	fetometry
fibrill/o	muscular twitching	fibrillation
fibrin/o	fibrinogen	fibrinolytic
fimbri/o	fringe	fimbriate
fibr/o	fibre	fibrosis
fibul/o	fibula	fibulocalcaneal
fil/o	thread	filopressure
fissur-	split/cleft	fissural
fistul/o	tube/pipe	fistula
flagell/o	flagellum/whip	flagellosis
flav/o	yellow	flavoprotein
-flect	bend	reflect
-flex-	bend	flexion
fluor/o	fluorescent/luminous/flow	fluoroscopy
foet/o	foetus (Am. fet/o)	foetal
follicul/o	small sac/follicle	folliculitis
fore-	before/in front of	forebrain

-form	having form/structure of	epileptiform
foss/o	depression	fossa
fove/o	pit	fovea
fraen/o	fraenum or fraenulum/restraining structure e.g. fraenulum of the lip	
fren/o (Am.)	frenum or frenulum/restraining structure e.g. frenulum of the lip	fraenal
front/o	front/forehead	frenoplasty
-fuge	agent that suppresses/gets rid of	frontotemporal
fund/o	bottom/base (of an organ)	lactifuge
fung/i	fungus	fundus
furc/o	branching	fungicide
		bifurcation
galact/o	milk	galactopoiesis
gamet/o	gametes/sperm or eggs	gametogenesis
gangli/o	ganglion/swelling/plexus	gangliform
ganglion/o	ganglion/swelling/plexus	ganglionectomy
gastr/o	stomach	gastropathy
-gen	agent that produces/precursor	pepsinogen
-genesis	capable of causing/pertaining to formation	spermatogenesis
-genic	pertaining to formation/originating in	oestrogenic
genicul/o	knee	genicular
geni/o	chin	genioglossal
genit/o	genitals/reproductive organs/produced by birth	genital
gen/o	cause/produce/originate	genophobia
-genous	arising from/produced by/producing	androgenous
ger/i/o	old age/the aged	geriatric
geront/o	old age/the aged	gerontology
gingiv/o	gum	gingivitis
gli/a/o	glue-like (pertains to neuroglial supporting cells of CNS)	glioma
-globin	protein	myoglobin
-globulin	protein	immunoglobulin
glomerul/o	glomerulus of kidney	glomerulitis
gloss/o	tongue	glossectomy
gluc/o	sugar/sweet	gluconeogenesis
glyc/o	sugar/sweet	glycoprotein
glycogen/o	glycogen, a polysaccharide	glycogenesis
glycos-	sugar (obsolete variant of glucose)	glycosuria
gnath/o	jaw	gnathoplasty
-gnomy	science or means of judging	pathognomy
-gnos-	to know/known or knowledge/judgment	gnosia
-gnosia	condition of knowing /receiving/recognizing	hypergnosia
-gnosis	to know/known or knowledge/judgment	prognosis
gonad/o	gonads (ovaries or testes)	gonadotrophin
gonecyst/o	seminal vesicle	gonecystolith
goni/o	angle/corner	gonioscopy
gon/o	seed/semen/knee	gonococcus
gony/o	knee	gonyoncus
-grade	to go	retrograde
-gram	X-ray/tracing/recording/one thousandth of a kilogram (g)	
granul/o	granule/granular	mammogram
-graph	usually recording instrument /a recording/X-ray/ mathematical curve representing data	granuloma
-graphy	technique of recording/making X-ray	electrocardiograph
-gravida	pregnancy/pregnant woman	electrocardiography
gravid/o	pregnancy	primigravida
gyn-	woman	gravidocardiac
gynaec/o	woman (Am. gynec/o)	gynandrisms
		gynaecology

gynec- woman
 gynec/o (Am.) woman
 gyn/o woman
 -gyric pertaining to circular motion

haem/a/o blood (Am. hem/a)
 haemat/o blood (Am. hemat/o)
 haemoglobin/o haemoglobin (Am. hemoglobin)
 halit/o breath
 hallux great toe
 hapl/o single/simple
 hapt/o touch
 hecto- one hundred
 helc/o ulcer
 heli/o sun
 helic/o helix/spiral form
 helmint/h/o worms
 hem/a/o (Am.) blood
 hemat/o (Am.) blood
 hemi- half/on one side
 hepatic/o hepatic bile duct
 hepat/o liver
 hept/a seven
 herni/o hernia
 heter/o other/another/different
 hex- six/hold/being
 hidr/o sweat/perspiration
 histi/o type of macrophage (histiocyte)
 hist/o tissue
 hol/o entire/whole
 homeo- alike/resembling/unchanging/constant
 homo- the same
 humer/o humerus
 hyal/o glass-like
 hydatid/i/o hydatid cyst
 hydr/a/o water
 hygri/o moisture
 hymen/o hymen
 hy/o hyoid bone
 hyp(h)- under
 hyper- above normal/excessive/over
 hypn/o sleep
 hypo- below normal/under
 hyster/o uterus/womb

-ia condition of/abnormal condition/disease
 -ial pertaining to
 -ian specialist
 -iasis abnormal condition/process or condition resulting from/disease
 -iatics medical specialty
 iatr/o medical treatment/doctor
 -iatry treatment by a doctor/specialty (of doctor)
 -ible capable of/able
 -ic¹ pertaining to
 -ic² used in pharmacology to mean a drug or drug action
 -ical pertaining to/dealing with
 ichthy/o dry/scaly/fish like
 -ician person associated with/specialist

gynecoid
gynecological
gynopathy
oculogyric

haemadynamometer
haematology
haemoglobinuria
halitosis
hallux rigidus
haplopia
haptometer
hectogram
helcosis
heliosis
helicoid
anthelminthic
hemocytoblast
hematology
hemiplegia
hepaticostomy
hepatocyte
heptachromic
herniorrhaphy
heterosexual
hexose
hidrosis
histiocytosis
histology
holocrine
homeostasis
homozygous
humero-radial
hyaloid
hydatidosis
hydronephrosis
hygroblepharic
hymenotomy
hyomandibular
hyphidrosis
hyperchromia
hypnotic
hypothyroidism
hysterectomy

polyuria
bronchial
physician

lithiasis
paediatrics (Am. **pediatrics**)
iatrogenic
psychiatry
flexible
gastric
diuretic
cytological
ichthyosis
technician

-ics	art or science of	genetics
-ictal	pertaining to seizure/attack	preictal
icter/o	jaundice	icterogenic
-ide	binary chemical compound	glycoside
idi/o	self/one's own/peculiar to an organism	idiopathic
-igo	attack/abnormal condition	vertigo
il-	in /none	illegitimate
-ile	capable of / able	contractile
ile/o	ileum	ileocolitis
ili/o	ilium/flank	iliofemoral
im-	in/none/not	impotence
immun/o	immune/immunity	immunology
in-	in/none/not	incision
-in	used as suffix for various chemicals	glycerin
incud/o	anvil/incus (ear ossicle)	incudomalleal
-ine	pertaining to/also used as suffix for chemicals	amine
	derived or thought to be derived from ammonia	
infer/o	inferior/below/beneath	inferolateral
infra-	below/inferior to	inframammary
inguin/o	groin	inguinal
insulin/o	insulin	insulinogenesis
inter-	between	intercostal
-interna	internal	otitis interna
intestin/o	intestine	intestinal
intra-	within/inside	intranasal
intro-	into/within/inwards	introflexion
intus-	in/into	intussusception
iod/o	iodine	iodism
-ion	action/condition resulting from action	ablation
-ior	pertaining to	posterior
ips/e/i/o	the same/self	ipsilateral
ir-	in/none/not	irreducible
irid/i/o	iris	iridoplegia
ir/o	iris	iritis
ischi/o	ischium	ischiococcygeal
isch/o	condition of holding back/reducing/suppress	ischaemia (Am. ischemia)
-ism	process/state or condition	prostatism
-ismus	process/state or condition	strabismus
is/o-	same/equal	isograft
-ist	specialist	optometrist
-ite	end product	metabolite
-itis	inflammation	tonsillitis
-ity	state/condition	severity
-ium	metallic elements	calcium
-ive ¹	pertaining to/tendency	adhesive
-ive ²	used in pharmacology to mean a drug or drug action	antitussive
-ize	use/subject to/to make	neutralize
-ject	throw	projectile
jejun/o	jejunum	jejunostomy
juxta-	adjoining/near	juxtaposition
kal/i	potassium	kaliuresis
kary/o	nucleus	karyogram
kerat/o	horny/epidermis/cornea	keratoplasty
keratin/o	keratin (a protein present in skin, hair and nails)	keratinous
ket/o/n	ketones/carbonyl group	ketonuria
kin/e/o	motion/movement	kinesis
kinesi/o	motion/movement	kinesiology

-kinesis	a motion/movement	iridokinesis
kinet/o	motion/movement	kinetocardiography
kilo-	one thousand	kilocalorie
-kymia	condition of involuntary twitching of muscle/ a wave of contraction in a muscle	myokymia
kyph/o	crooked/hump	kyphosis
labi/o	lip	labioplasty
labyrinth/o	labyrinth of ear	labyrinthitis
lachrym/o	tear/tear ducts/lacrimal apparatus	lachrymal
lacrim/o	tear/tear ducts/lacrimal apparatus	lacrimonasal
lact/i/o	milk	lactiferous
laevo-	left (Am. levo-)	laevocardia
-lalia	condition of talking	dyslalia
lamell/a	thin leaf or plate	lamellar
lamin/o	lamina/thin plate/part of vertebral arch	laminectomy
lapar/o	abdomen/flank	laparotomy
-lapaxy	empty/wash out/evacuate	litholapaxy
laryng/o	larynx	laryngectomy
later/o	side	laterotorsion
lei/o	smooth	leioderma
leiomy/o	smooth muscle	leiomyoma
lent/i	lens	lenticonus
-lepsy	seizure/fit	epilepsy
lept/o	thin/fine/slender	leptomeningitis
leuc/o	white	leucocyte (Am. leukocyte)
leuk/o	white	leukoblast
levo- (Am.)	left	levocardia
-lexia	condition of speech/words	dyslexia
lien/o	spleen	lienocoele
-ligation	tying off of a vessel with a suture	vasoligation
lingu/a/o	tongue/tongue-shape	linguogingival
lip/o	fat/fatty tissue	lipoma
-listhesis	splitting	spondylolisthesis
-lith	stone	ureterolith
-lithiasis	abnormal condition of stones	ureterolithiasis
lith/o	stone	lithotrite
lob/o	lobe	lobar
lochi/o	vaginal discharge (lochia)	lochiorrhagia
loc/o	place	locus
logad-	white of the eye	logadectomy
-logist	specialist who studies	cardiologist
log/o	words/speech/study/thought	logophasia
-logy	study of	laryngology
loph/o	ridge/tuft	lophodont
lord/o	bend forward	lordosis
lumb/o	loin/lower back	lumbocostal
lump-	lump/swelling	lumpectomy
lute/o	yellow/corpus luteum of ovary	luteotrophic
lymph/a/o	lymph	lymphoma
lymphaden/o	lymph node (aden/o – gland)	lymphadenitis
lymphangi/o	lymph vessel	lymphangiography
lyo-	water soluble/solvent/dissolve	lyophil
-lys/o	break down/disintegration/dissolve	lysin
-lysis	break down/disintegration/dissolve	autolysis
-lytic	pertaining to break down/disintegration	haemolytic (Am. hemolytic)
macro-	large	macrophage
macul/o	spot/blotch	maculopapular

mal-	bad/diseased or impaired	malnutrition
-malacia	condition of softening	myomalacia
malac/o	softening	malacic
malign-	bad/harmful	malignant
malle/o	hammer/malleus (ear ossicle)	malleotomy
mamill/i/o	nipple	mamilliplasty
mamm/a/o	breast/mammary gland	mammography
mammill/i/o	nipple	mammillitis
mandibul/o	mandible	mandibuloplasty
man/o	pressure	manometry
manus-	hand	manus extensa
mast/o	breast/mammary gland	mastalgia
mastoid/o	nipple shaped/mastoid process of the temporal bone	mastoidectomy
maxill/o	maxilla	maxillofacial
meat/o	meatus/opening/external orifice e.g. of the urethra	meatotomy
medi/o	middle/midline	medial
-media	middle	otitis media
medull/o	inner part/medulla	adrenal medulla
mega-	abnormally large	megacolon
megal/o	abnormally large	megaloglossia
-megaly	enlargement	acromegaly
melan/o	melanin/dark pigment	melanoma
melit/o	sugar/honey	melituria
mel/o	limb/cheek	melagra
melon/o	cheek	melonoplasty
mening/i/o	membranes (of CNS)	meningitis
menisc/o	meniscus/crescent-shaped	meniscocyte
men/o	menses/menstruation/monthly flow	menorrhagia
ment/o	chin/mind	mentoplasty
mes/o	middle/intermediate	mesoderm
meta-	change in form/position/after	metaplasia
metacarp/o	metacarpus	metacarpal
metatars/o	metatarsal	metatarsalgia
-meter	measuring instrument/a measure	audiometer
metr/a/i/o	uterus/womb	endometriosis
-metrist	person who measures	audiometrist
-metry	process of measuring	audiometry
micro-	small/one millionth	microglia
mid-	middle	midbrain
-mileusis	to carve	keratomileusis
milli-	one thousandth	millilitre
mi/o	make smaller/less	miopia
mito-	thread-like/mitosis	mitotic
mono-	one/single	monosomy
-morph	shape/form	ectomorph
morph/o	shape/form	morphogenesis
mort/o	death	mortal
-motor-	moving/action/set in motion	oculomotor
muc/o	mucus	mucous
multi-	many	multigravida
muscul/o	muscle	musculocutaneous
my-	(from myein) to close/squint	myopia
mycet/o	fungus	mycetoid
myc/o	fungus	bronchomycosis
myel/o	bone marrow/spinal cord	myeloma
myelomat/o	bone marrow/spinal cord	myelomatosis
my/o	muscle	myoglobin
myocardi/o	myocardium (heart muscle)	myocardiopathy
myom/at/o	muscle tumour	myomatosis

myos/o	muscle	myositis
myring/o	eardrum/tympanic membrane	myringotome
myx/o	mucus	myxadenitis
nano-	one billionth (10^{-9})	nanometre
narc/o	stupor/numbness	narcotic
nas/o	nose	nasopharyngitis
-natal	pertaining to birth	antenatal
nat/o	birth	neonatology
natr/i	sodium	natriuresis
necr/o	death/dead tissue	necrosis
neo-	new	neoplasia
nephr/o	kidney	nephritis
neur/o	nerve (rarely tendon)	neurology
neutr/o	neutral	neutrophil
noc/i	harm	nociceptor
noct/i	night/darkness	nocturia
nod/o	knot/swelling	nodule
nom/o	distribute/law/custom	nomotopic
non-	without/no	non compos mentis
normo-	normal	normocytosis
nos/o	disease	nosology
not/o	back	notochord
nucle/o	nucleus	nucleoprotein
nulli-	none	nullipara
nyctal/o	night/darkness	nyctalopia
nyct/o	night/darkness	nyctalgia
-nyxis	perforation/pricking/puncture	keratonyxis
obstetric-	pertaining to midwifery	obstetrician
occipit/o	occiput, posterior region of the skull	occipitocervical
occlus/o	shut/close up	occlusion
octa/i/o-	eight	octigravida
ocul/o	eye	binocular
odont/o	tooth/teeth	orthodontics
-oedema	swelling due to fluid (Am. edema)	myxoedema
oes/o	within (Am. es/o)	oesogastritis
oesophag/o	oesophagus/gullet (Am. esophago)	oesophagostomy
oestr/o	oestrogen (a female sex-hormone)/oestrus (Am. estr/o)	oestrogenic
-oid	resembling	lipoid
-ola	small	arteriola
-ole	small	arteriole
olecran/o	elbow/olecranon (bony projection of ulna)	olecranarthropathy
ole/o	oil	oleogranuloma
olfact/o	sense of smell/smell	olfactory
olig/o	deficiency/few/little	oliguria
-olisthesis	slipping	spondylolisthesis
-oma	tumour/swelling	sarcoma
oment/o	omentum (peritoneal fold of stomach)	omentoplasty
om/o	shoulder	omoclavicular
omphal/o	umbilicus/navel	omphalogenesis
onc/o	tumour/mass	oncology
-one	hormone	progesterone
onych/o	nail	onychodystrophy
oo-	egg	oocyte
oophor/o	ovary	oophorectomy
-op-	seeing/looking at	presbyopia
ophthalm/o	eye	ophthalmoscope
-ophthalmos	eye	exophthalmos

-opia	condition of vision/defective vision	amblyopia
opistho-	backward	opisthognathism
-opsia	condition of vision/defective vision	hemiachromatopsia
-opsy	to view/process of viewing	biopsy
optic/o	vision/eye/optic nerve	optical
opt/o	vision/eye	optometry
orbit/o	orbit (bony cavity) of eye	orbitonasal
-or	person or agent	donor
orchid/o	testis	orchidopathy
orch/i/o	testis	orchioplasty
-orexia	condition of appetite	anorexia
organ/o	organ	organogenesis
or/o	mouth	oral
orth/o-	straight	orthoptics
-ory	pertaining to	sensory
os-	bone/a mouth/orifice	os uteri
osche/o	scrotum	oscheoplasty
-ose	carbohydrate/sugars/starches/full of/pertaining to	glucose
-osis	abnormal condition/disease of/abnormal increase	leucocytosis
		(Am. leukocytosis)
osm/o	odour/smell/osmosis	osmodysphoria
osse/o	bone	osseous
oss/i	bone	ossicle
ossicul/o	ear ossicles/bones	ossiculectomy
ost/e/o	bone	osteoarthritis
ot/o	ear	otology
oul/o	scar/gum	oulectomy
-ous	pertaining to	uriniferous
ovari/o	ovary	ovariotomy
ov/i/o	egg/ovum	oviduct
-oxia	condition of oxygen	hypoxia
ox/i/o	oxygen	oximetry
oxy-	oxygen /sharp /quick	oxytocic
pachy-	thick	pachydermia
paed/o	child (Am. ped/o)	paediatric
palae/o	old/primitive (Am. pale/o)	palaeocortex
palat/o	palate	palatoplasty
pale/o (Am.)	old/primitive	paleocortex
palm/o	palm	palmar
palpebr/a	eyelid	palpebritis
pan-	all	pancarditis
pancreatic/o	pancreatic duct	pancreaticoenterostomy
pancreat/o	pancreas	pancreatolysis
pannicul/o	fatty layer e.g. of abdomen	panniculitis
pant/o	all/entire	pantatroph
papill/i/o	nipple like/optic disc	papilloretinitis
para-	beside/near	paranephric
-para(re)	to bear/bring forth offspring (woman who has borne viable young)	primipara
parathyr/o	parathyroid gland	parathyrotrophic
parathyroid/o	parathyroid gland	parathyroidectomy
-paresis	slight paralysis	juvenile paresis
parotid/o	parotid gland	parotitis
-parous	pertaining to production of live young	nulliparous
-partum	birth/labour	post partum
patell/o	patella/knee cap	patellofemoral
-pathia	condition of disease	psychopathia
pathic	pertaining to disease	idiopathic

path/o	disease	pathologist
-pathy	disease/emotion	gastro pathy
-pause	stopping	meno pause
pect-	chest/breast/thorax	pectus
pector/o	chest/breast/thorax	pectoral
pedicul/o	lice	pediculosis
ped/i/o (Am.)	foot/(child)	pediatrics
pell-	skin/hide	pellicle
pelv/i/o	pelvis	pelvimeter
-penia	lack of/condition of deficiency	erythro penia
pen/i	penis	penitis
pepsin/o	digestion/pepsin	pepsinogen
pept-	digestion/pepsin	peptic
per-	through/completely/excessive	percutaneous
peri-	around	pericorneal
pericardi/o	pericardium	pericarditis
perine/o	perineum	perineorrhaphy
periton/e/o	peritoneum	peritonitis
petr/o	stone/rock	osteopetrosis
-pexis	surgical fixation/fix in place/storing	glycop exis
-pexy	surgical fixation/fix in place/storing	arthrop exy
phac/o	lens	phacoscopy
phae/o	dusky/dark (Am. phe/o)	phaeochromocyte
-phagia	condition of eating/swallowing	poly phagia
phag/o	eating/consuming	phagocyte
-phagy	eating or swallowing	copro phagy
phak/o	lens	phakitis
phalang/o	phalange/finger/toe	phalangeal
phall/o	penis	phallic
phaner/o	visible/manifesting	phanerogenic
pharm/ac/o	drug/medicine	pharmacology
pharyng/o	pharynx	pharyngitis
-phasia	condition of speaking/speech	dys phasia
phas/i/o	speech	aphasiology
phe/o	dusky/dark	pheochromocyte (Am.)
-phil	love/affinity for/cell type with affinity for	neutro phil
-philia	condition of love / affinity for	haemo philia
		(Am. hemophilia)
-phily	condition of love / affinity for	necro phily
phleb/o	vein	phlebectomy
-phobia	condition of fear	hydro phobia
-phonia	condition of having voice	aphonia
phon/o	sound/voice	phonocardiograph
-phore	a carrier	chromato phore
-phoresis	movement in a specified way/bearing/ carrying/driving ions	electro phoresis
-phoria	condition of mental state/feeling/bearing/ deviation of the eyes	euphoria
phor/o	mental state/bearing/carrier (e.g. of disease)	phorology
phosph/o	phosphate/phosphorus/phosphoric acid	phospholipid
phot/o	light	photosensitive
phrenic/o	diaphragm/mind/phrenic nerve	phrenicectomy
phren/i/o	diaphragm/mind/phrenic nerve	phrenogastric
-phthisis	wasting away	neuro phthisis
-phyma	tumour/boil/swelling	rhino phyma
phys/i/o	nature/physical things/physiology	physiotherapy
-physis	growth	hypo physis
-phyt/e/o	plant/fungus	dermato phyte
pico-	small/a quantity multiplied by 10 ⁻¹²	picogram

pil/i/o	hair	pilosebaceous
pineal/o	pineal gland	pinealocyte
pituitar-	pituitary gland	hypopituitarism
placent/o	placenta	placentography
-plakia	condition of broad/flat (patch)	leukoplakia
-plania	condition of wandering e.g. a cell moving position	leucocytoplania (Am. leukocytoplania)
plan/o	flat	planocellular
plant/i	sole of foot	plantar
-plasia	condition of growth/formation (increase in number of cells)	hyperplasia
-plasm	formative substance	cytoplasm
plasma-	plasma cell/fluid of blood	plasmatherapy
plasm/o	anything moulded, shaped or formed/ formative substance/growth	plasmocyte
-plastic	pertaining to formation	neoplastic
-plasty	surgical repair/reconstruction	keratoplasty
platy-	flat	platyonychia
-plegia	condition of paralysis/stroke	paraplegia
pleo-	more	pleocytosis
plethysm/o	volume	plethysmograph
pleur/o	pleural membranes/rib/side	pleurodynia
plex/o	network of nerves, blood or lymph vessels	plexus
-plexy	strike/paralyze	apoplexy
-ploid(y)	chromosome sets in a cell	diploid
pluri-	several/more	pluriglandular
-pnea (Am.)	breathing	apnea
pneum/a/o	gas/air, also lung/breath	pneumothorax
pneumat/o	gas/air/breath	pneumatometry
pneumon/o	lung/air	pneumectomy
-pnoea	breathing (Am. pnea)	dyspnoea
pod/o	foot	podiatry
pogon/o	beard	pogoniasis
-poiesis	formation	erythropoiesis
poikil/o	varied/irregular	poikilocyte
polio-	grey matter (of CNS)	poliomyelitis
pollex	thumb	pollex flexus
poly-	many/too much	polyuria
polyp/o	polyp/small growth	polypectomy
pont/o	pons (part of metencephalon of brain)	pontocerebellar
por/o	passage/pore	osteoporosis
port/o	portal vein	portography
post-	after/behind	post-ganglionic
poster/o	back of body/behind/posterior to	posterosuperior
posth/o	prepuce/foreskin	balanoposthitis
-prandial	meal	postprandial
-praxia	condition of purposeful movement/conduct	apraxia
pre-	before/in front of	pretracheal
preputi/o	prepuce/foreskin	preputiotomy
presby/o	old man/old age	presbyopia
primi-	first	primigravida
pro-	before/favouring/in front of	prodrome
proct/o	rectum/anus	proctalgia
progest/o	progesterone	progestogen
prostat/o	prostate gland	prostatism
prosth/o	adding (replacement part)	prosthodontics
proto-	first	protodiastole
protoz/o	protozoa	protozoiasis
proxim/o	near	proximal

prurit/o	itching	pruritic
pseudo-	false	pseudoplegia
psych/o	mind	psychosis
-ptosis	falling/displacement/prolapse	blepharoptosis
-ptotic	pertaining to falling/displacement/prolapse/ affected with a ptosis	nephroptotic
ptyal/o	saliva	ptyalography
-ptysis	spitting/coughing up	pyoptysis
pub/o	pubis	pubovesical
puerper/o	puerperium/time of childbirth	puerperal
pulm/o	lung	pulmo-aortic
pulmon/o	lung	pulmonary
pupill/o	pupil	pupillometry
purul/o	pus-filled	puruloid
pustul/o	infected pimple/pustule	pustulosis
pyel/o	pelvis/trough of kidney	pyelolithotomy
pyle/o	portal (vein)	pylephlebitis
pylor/o	pylorus	pyloric
py/o	pus	pyogenic
pyret/o	heat/fire/burning/fever	pyretic
pyr/o	heat/fire/burning/fever	pyrogen
quadr/i/u-	four	quadriplegia
quinque-	five	quinguecuspis
quint-	five	quintan
rachi/o	spine	rachiorrhaphy
radic/o	nerve root	radicotomy
radicul/o	nerve root	radiculitis
radi/o	radiation/X-ray/radius	radiotherapy
re-	back/contrary/again	reposition
rect/o	rectum	rectosigmoid
ren/i/o	kidney	renography
reticul/o	net like/reticulum	reticulocytosis
retin/o	retina	retinoblastoma
retro-	backwards/behind	retroverted
rhabd/o	rod/rod-shaped	rhabdoid
rhabdomy/o	striated muscle	rhabdomyoma
rhe/o	electric current/flow of fluid	rheology
rheumat/o	rheumatism	rheumatism
rhin/o	nose	rhinoplasty
rhiz/o	root/nerve root	rhizotomy
rhod/o	red	rhodopsin
rhytid/o	wrinkle	rhytidoplasty
roentgen/o	X-ray/Roentgen rays	roentgenography
rostr/i	superior/a rostrum/beak	rostral
-rrhage	bursting forth/excessive flow	haemorrhage (Am. hemorrhage)
-rrhagia	condition of bursting forth/excessive flow	otorrhagia
-rrhaphy	suture/suturing/stitching	tenorrhaphy
-rrhea (Am.)	excessive discharge/flow	rhinorrhea
-rrhexis	breaking/rupturing	ovariorrhexis
-rrhoea	excessive discharge/flow (Am. -rrhea)	rhinorrhoea
(r)rhythm/o	rhythm	arrhythmia
rubr-	red	rubor
rug/o	wrinkle/fold/ridge	ruga
sacchar/o	sugar/sweet	saccharolytic
sacr/o	sacrum	sacrococcygeal

salping/o	Eustachian (auditory) tube/Fallopian tube	salpingostomy
sanguin/o	blood/bloody	sanguinolent
sapr/o	decay/decayed matter	saprodontia
sarc/o	fleshy/connective tissue	sarcoid
-sarcoma	malignant (fleshy) tumour	Karposi's sarcoma
sarcomat/o	sarcoma (malignant fleshy tumour e.g. of connective tissues)	sarcomatosis
scapul/o	scapula	scapuloclavicular
scat/o	faeces/faecal matter (Am. feces)	scatology
-schisis	cleaving/splitting/parting	palatoschisis
schist/o	cleaving/splitting/parting	schistocephalus
schistosom/o	parasitic worm of genus Schistosoma	schistosomiasis
schiz/o	split/cleft/divided	schizotrichia
scint/i	spark/flash of light	scintiscan
scirrh/o	hard	scirrhus
scler/o	hard/sclera (white of eye)	sclerotome
-sclerosis	hardening	arteriosclerosis
scoli/o	crooked/twisted	scoliosis
-scope	instrument to view/examine	endoscope
-scopist	specialist who uses viewing instrument	endoscopist
-scopy	visual examination/examination	endoscopy
scot/o	darkness	scotopia
scotom/o	scotoma/blind spot	scotomagraph
scrot/o	scrotum	scrotocele
seb/o	sebum/sebaceous gland	sebolith
-sect(ion)	cut	caesarean section
secundi-	second	secundigravida
semi-	half/partly	semicomatose
semin/i	semen	seminoma
sen/i	old	senile
sens/o	sense	sensomotor
sensor/i	sense/sensation	sensorium
-sepsis	infection	asepsis
septi-	seven	septipara
septic/o	sepsis/infection/putrefaction	septicaemia (Am. septicemia)
sept/o	septum e.g. nasal septum	septotomy
sequestr-	sequestrum, a portion of dead bone	sequestrectomy
ser/o	serum	seropositive
sex/i	six	sexidigital
sialaden/o	salivary glands	sialadenitis
sial/o	saliva/salivary glands	sialography
sider/o	iron	sideropenia
sigmoid/o	sigmoid colon	sigmoidoscopy
silic/o	glass/silica	silicosis
sinistr/o	left/left side	sinistocardia
sin/o	sinus	sinoatrial
sinus-	sinus	sinus venosus
sinus/o	sinus	sinusitis
-sis	abnormal condition/state of	symbiosis
sit/o	food	sitophobia
somatic/o	body	somaticosplanchnic
somat/o	body	somatotrophic
somn/i/o	sleep	somnial
son/o	sound	ultrasonography
-spadia(s)	condition of drawing out	hypospadia
-spasm	involuntary contraction of muscle	blepharospasm
spasm/o	spasm	spasmodyspnoea
spermat/o	sperm	spermatogenesis
sperm/i/o	sperm	spermicidal

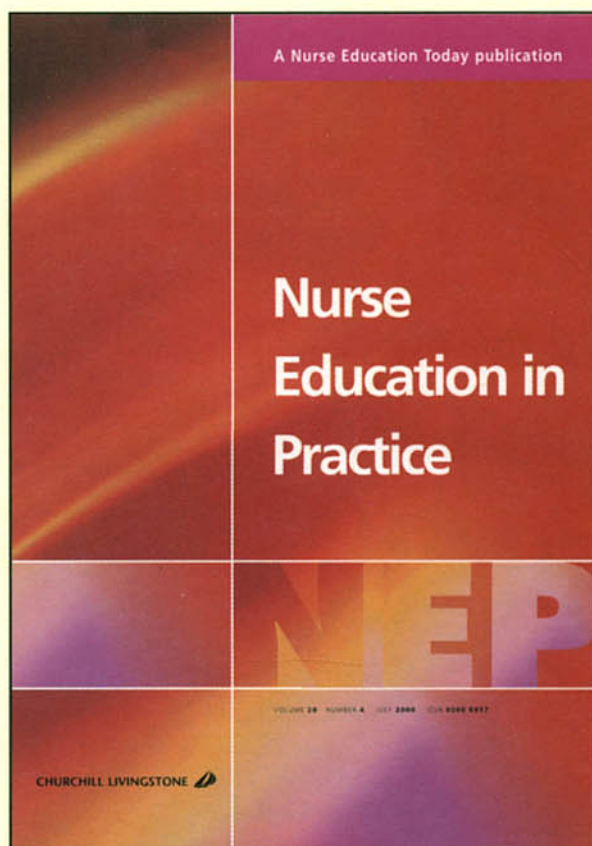
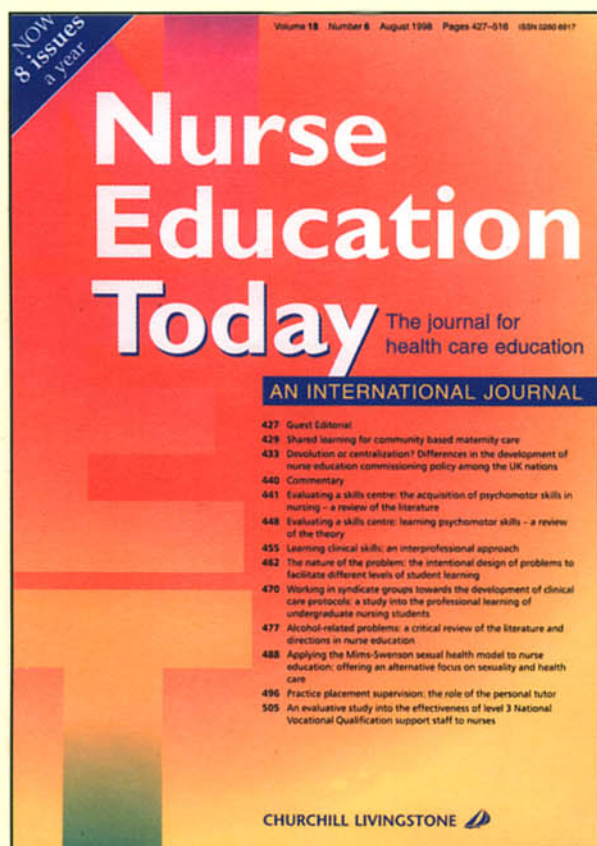
sphen/o	sphenoid bone/wedge shaped	sphenomandibular
spher/o	sphere-shaped/round	spherophakia
sphincter/o	sphincter/ring-like muscle	sphincteroplasty
sphygm/o	pulse	sphygmomanometer
-sphyx-	pulsing	asphyxia
spirill/o	spiral-shaped bacteria of genus <i>Spirillum</i>	Spirillum minus
spir/o	to breathe	spirometry
spirochaet/o	spirochaete (a spiral-shaped bacterium)	spirochaete
spirochet/o (Am.)	spirochete (a spiral-shaped bacterium)	spirochete
splanchn/i/o	viscera/splanchnic nerve	splanchnic
splen/o	spleen	splenectomy
spondyl/o	vertebra/vertebrae/spinal column	spondylitis
spongi/o	sponge	spongiform
spor/o	spore	sporomycosis
squam/o	scale/scale-like	squamous
-stalsis	contraction	peristalsis
stapedi/o	stirrup/stapes (ear ossicle)	stapediotenotomy
staphyl/o	resembling bunch of grapes/clusters/uvula	staphylococci
-stasis	stopping/controlling/cessation of movement	haemostasis (Am. hemostasis)
-stat	agent/device that prevents change/stops	cryostat
-static	pertaining to stopping/controlling/standing	haemostatic (Am. hemostatic)
-staxis	dripping/a dropping e.g. of blood	epistaxis
stear/i/o	fat	steariform
steat/o	fat	steatoma
sten/o	narrow/constricted	stenocoriasis
-stenosis	abnormal narrowing	urethrostenosis
sterc/o	faeces (Am. feces)	stercolith
ster/e/o	solid/three dimensional	stereoscopic
stern/o	sternum	sternocostal
steth/o	chest/breast	stethoscope
-sthenia	condition of strength/full power	myasthenia
sthen/o	strength/full power	asthenic
stomat/o	mouth	stomatitis
stom/o	mouth/mouth-like opening	stomal
-stomy	to form a new opening or outlet/communication/ an opening	colostomy
strab/o	squinting	strabismus
strat/i	layer	stratiform
strept/o	twisted chain	streptococci
striat/o	mark/stripe	striated
styl/o	stake/styloid process (of temporal bone)	styломastoid
sub-	under	subcutaneous
sud/or/i	sweat/perspiration	sudoresis
super/o	superior/above/excess	superolateral
supra-	above/over/excess	suprahepatic
sy-	with/together	systole
sym-	with/together	symmelia
sympathic/o	sympathetic nervous system/nerves	sympathicotropic
symphysi/o	symphysis (fibro-cartilaginous joint) e.g. symphysis pubis	symphysiotomy
syn-	together/in association	synchronous
syndesm/o	ligament/connective tissue	syndesmectomy
syndrom/o	running together	syndromic
-synechia	condition of adhering together	blepharosynechia
synovi/o	synovial fluid/membranes	synovial
syphil/o	syphilis	syphiloma
syring/o	tube/cavity	syringomyelia
system/o	system	systemic

tachy-	fast	tachycardia
tact-	touch	tactile
tal/o	ankle/ankle bone	talar
tars/o	tarsus/ankle/eyelid edge	tarsalgia
-taxia	condition of ordered movement	ataxia
tax/o	ordered movement/arrangement/classification	taxonomy
tectori/o	covering/roof-like	tectorial
tel-	tela or web	telangiectasis
tele-	far away/operating at a distance	telecardiography
telo-	end	telophase
tendin/o	tendon	tendinoplasty
tend/o	tendon	tendotome
ten/o	tendon	tenorrhaphy
tenont/o	tendon	tenonophyma
ter-	three	tervalent
terat/o	monster/deformed fetus	teratogenic
testicul/o	testicle/testis	testicular
test/o	testicle/testis	testosterone
tetra-	four	tetraploid
thalam/o	thalamus (part of cerebral cortex)	thalamotomy
than/at/o	death	thanatophobia
thec/o	sheath	thecal
thel/e/o	nipple	theleplasty
-therapy	treatment	physiotherapy
-thermia	condition of heat	hypothermia
therm/o	heat	thermography
-thermy	heat	cystodiathermy
thio-	sulphur	thiocyanate
thoracico-	thorax	thoracico-abdominal
thorac/o	thorax	thoracotomy
-thorax	thorax/chest	pneumothorax
thromb/o	thrombus/clot	thrombosis
thrombocyt/o	platelet	thrombocytopenia
thymic/o	thymus gland	thymicolymphatic
thym/o	thymus gland	thymic
thyr/o	thyroid gland	thyrotrophic
thyroid/o	thyroid gland	hypothyroidism
tibi/o	tibia	tibiofibular
-tic ¹	pertaining to	necrotic
-tic ²	used in pharmacology to mean a drug or drug action	antiepileptic
tine/o	gnawing worm/ringworm	<i>Tinea pedis</i>
-tion	state or condition/process	resection
-tocia	condition of birth/labour	eutocia
toc/o	labour/birth	tocology
-tome	cutting instrument	myringotome
tom/o	slice/section	tomography
-tomy	incision into	laparotomy
-tonia	condition of tension/tone	atonia
ton/o	stretching/tension/tone	tonometer
tonsill/o	tonsil	tonsillectomy
top/o	place/particular area	topology
tort/i	twisted	torticollis
-toxic	pertaining to poisoning	nephrotoxic
toxic/o	poison	toxicology
tox/i/o	poison	toxic
trabecul/o	trabecula/anchoring strand of connective tissue/ trabecular meshwork of the eye	trabeculectomy
trachel/o	neck/uterine cervix	tracheloplasty

trache/o	trachea	tracheostomy
trans-	across	transurethral
-trauma	injury/wound	barotrauma
-tresia	condition of an opening/perforation	atresia
tri-	three	tricuspid
trichin/o	<i>Trichinella spiralis</i> (parasitic nematode worm)	trichiniasis
trich/o	hair	trichosis
trigon/o	trigone/triangular space e.g. at the base of the bladder	trigonitis
-tripsy	act of crushing	lithotripsy
-triptor	instrument designed to crush or fragment e.g. using shock waves	lithotripter
-trite	instrument designed to crush or fragment	lithotrite
-trophic	pertaining to nourishment/stimulation	adrenotrophic
troph/o	nourishment/food/stimulation	trophoblast
-trophy	nourishment/development/increase in cell size	atrophy
-tropia	condition of turning/deviation	hypertropia
-tropic	affinity for/stimulating/changing in response to a stimulus/turning towards	thyrotropic
-tubal	pertaining to a tube	ovariotubal
turbin/o	top-shaped/turbinate bone (nasal concha)	turbinectomy
tuss/i	cough	antitussive
tympan/o	tympanic membrane/middle ear	tympanoplasty
typhl/o	caecum (Am. cecum)	typhlocele
-ula	small/little	lingula
ulcer/o	ulcer/sore/local defect in a surface	ulcerogenic
-ule	small	venule
uln/o	ulna	ulnoradial
ul/o/e	scar/gingiva (gums)	uloid
ultra-	beyond	ultrasonography
-ulum	small	coagulum
-ulus	small	sacculus
-um	thing/structure/noun ending/a name	ovum
un-	not/opposite of/release from	undifferentiated
ungu/o	nail	ungual
uni-	one	unilateral
uran/o	palate	uranorrhaphy
urat/o	urates/salt of uric acid (found in calculi)	uraturia
urea-	urea	ureapoiesis
ur/e/o	urine/urinary tract	urology
-uresis	excrete in urine/urinate	lithuresis
ureter/o	ureter	ureterostenosis
urethr/o	urethra	urethroscopy
-uria	condition of urine/urination	polyuria
urin/a/o	urine	urinometer
urticar/i	nettle rash/hives	urticaria
-us	thing/structure/noun ending/a name	bronchus
uter/o	uterus	uterotubal
uve/o	uvea (pigmented parts of eye)	uveitis
uvul/o	uvula	uvuloptosis
vagin/o	vagina	vaginitis
vag/o	vagus nerve	vagotomy
valv/o	valve	valvotomy
valvul/o	valve	valvulotome
varic/o	dilated veins/varicose vein	varicophlebitis
vascul/o	vessel	vascular
vas/o	vessel/vas deferens	vasectomy

venacav/o	vena cava/great vein	venacavography
ven/e/i/o	vein	venesection
vener/o	sexual intercourse	venereal
ventricul/o	ventricle of heart or brain	ventriculography
ventr/i/o-	belly side of body	ventrodorsal
verm/i	worm	vermicide
-version	turning	retroversion
vertebr/o	vertebra	vertebral
vesic/o	bladder/blister	vesicoprostatic
vesicul/o	seminal vesicle	vesiculitis
vestibul/o	vestibule/space leading to the entrance of a canal e.g. in the ear	vestibulotomy
vibri/o	comma-shaped bacterium of genus <i>Vibrio</i>	vibriocidal
vibr/o	vibration	vibrocardiogram
vir/o/u	virus/virion	virolactia
viscer/o	viscera/internal organs (esp. abdomen)	visceroperitoneal
vit/o	life	vital
vitre/o	glass/vitreous body of eye	vitreoretinal
viv/i	life	vivisection
vol/o	palm	volar
vulv/o	vulva	vulvitis
xanth/o	yellow	xanthoma
xen/o	strange/foreign	xenograft
xer/o	dry	xerophthalmia
xiph/i/o	xiphoid process	xiphicostal
-y	process/condition/noun ending/a name	apoplexy
-yl-	substance	butylene
zo/o	animal	zooid
zyg/o	joined	zygodactyly
zygomatic/o	zygomatic arch	zygomaticotemporal
-zyme	fermentation/enzyme	lysozyme
zym/o	fermentation/enzyme	zymosis

Journals of related interest



Journals Marketing Department, Elsevier Science
32 Jamestown Road, London NW1 7BY, UK
Tel: +44 (0) 208 308 5790 Fax: +44 (0) 207 424 4258
Call toll free in the US: 1-877-839-7126
Email: journals@elsevierhealth.com



Subscribe online at: **www.elsevierhealth.com/journals**